

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Slav 940.8(1)



HARVARD
COLLEGE
LIBRARY

THE

HISTORY

OF THE

LIFE and REIGN

OF THE

Empreſs CATHARINE:

CONTAINING

A ſhort HISTORY of the RUSSIAN Empire, from its firſt FOUNDATION to the Time of the Death of that PRINCESS.

VOL. I.

By JOHN MOTTLEY, Eſq;

947
M92
v.1

LONDON:

Printed for WILLIAM MEADOWS, Bookſeller in *Cornhill*; and M. READ, in *White-Fryars*.

MDCCXLIV.

~~Slav 1002.10 (1)~~

Slav 940.8 (1)

HARVARD
UNIVERSITY
LIBRARY
JUN 4 1965



The Empress Catharine,
in the Habit in which She appeared at the Head of her own Regiment.

Reproduced by

DUOPAGE PROCESS

in the

U.S. of America

Micro Photo Division
Bell & Howell Company
Cleveland 12, Ohio

DP # 1667

34-1
M92
v.1



a.c.a.



To the Right Honourable

THE

Earl of *LINCOLN.*

My Lord,

ALTHO' I very much fear, that the Preſent, which I now take the Liberty to lay at your Lordſhip's Feet, may not have ſuffi-

ſufficient Merit to make it worthy your Acceptance; yet, if the honeſt Intention of the Giver, and the Sincerity of the Profeſſion he makes of his high Reſpect and Eſteem, be what alone ſtamp a Value on the Offering, how mean ſo ever in itſelf, then no Addition can be needful to mine.

Your Lordſhip's great and moſt amiable Talents, and the Hereditary Endowments, which you inherit from an illuſtrious Father, whoſe more than *Roman* Virtue will render his Name always ſacred

cred to every true *Briton*, as wel as thoſe, which, by the Side of your Mother, you derive from the noble Houſes of *Holles* and *Pelham*, are what make every *Engliſhman* look up to the Earl of *Lincoln*, as to one, from whom his Country may hope for every Advantage, that can be brought to her by one *Great Man*, in ſupport of her Glory and Happineſs, both by his Counſels and Example.

That your Lordſhip may (if poſſible) out-ſtrip, in all their Excellencies

cellencies and Virtues, your renowned Anceſtors, is the moſt ardent Wiſh of,

My LORD,

With the moſt profound Reſpect,

Your Lordſhip's

Moſt obedient,

And obliged,

Humble Servant,

JOHN MOTTLEY.

THE HISTORY OF *RUSSIA*,

To the End of the REIGN of the

Empreſs CATHARINE.

BOOK I.

The CONTENTS.

A ſhort HISTORY *of the firſt Sovereigns of* RUSSIA, *to the Death of* Theodore, *the laſt Prince of the Line of* Rurick.

ALL the Annals of *Ruſſia* ſpeak of a Nation called * *Waragi*, or *Waragians*, who gave the firſt Sovereigns to this Kingdom. It is very probable, that theſe People inhabited the Country on the Coaſts of the *Baltick* Sea, which the *Ruſſians* ſtill call *Waretſkoie-Morie*;

B

* *Theſe People being very great Pirates, had the Name of* Warg, *or* Waragi, *given them, which, in the* Gothic *Language, ſignifies Wolves.*

Morie; perhaps they were *Vandals*. Be that as it may, a certain Man named *Goſtomiſles*, who was a Citizen of *Novogorod*, and whoſe Prudence had given him ſome Authority among his Countrymen, then divided and in Arms againſt c . another about the Choice of a Leader, pointed out to them three Brothers, among the *Waragians*, very capable of governing them. It is likely, that he engaged them in the Choice of theſe Strangers, becauſe they would not ſubmit to any of their own Countrymen, eſteeming themſelves all on an Equality.

RURICK ſurviving his Brothers, whoſe Names were *Sinaus* and *Truvor*, thereby became Lord of the whole Nation: The Epoch of theſe three Brothers being called to the Government of the *Ruſſians*, is placed, according to their Manner of Reckoning, in the Year of the World 6370, and of Chriſt 860.

RURICK, the firſt Prince. A. D. 860.

RURICK being ſole Maſter of the Provinces, that had belonged to his Brothers, which were thoſe of *Pleſkow* and *Biela-Ozero*, divided the Lands among his principal Followers. His own Province was towards the Lake *Ladoga*. The Situation of theſe three Provinces ſeems to favour the Conjecture, that the *Waragians* were the ſame People who, at preſent, are called *Ingrians*, and their Country *Ingria* or *Ingermania*; the *Ruſſians* call them *Wotſchoi*: And thoſe who apply themſelves to the boundleſs Science of Etymology, will find no great Diſagreement between this Word and thoſe of *Waretſkoie* and *Waragi*. It is farther to be obſerved, that they give a Name with the ſame Termination to five different People who

inhabit between the *Onega*, the *Ladoga*, the *Pepuys*, the *Biela-Ozero*, and the Sources of the *Wolga* and the *Dwina*, which are the *Oboneeſchi-petin*, the *Wotſchoi-petin*, the *Selonſchi-petin*, the *Doretſchoi-petin*, and the *Beſetſchi-petin*; which makes it believed, that theſe five People compoſed the firſt State of which *Rurick* was the Sovereign.

IGOR ſucceeded his Father *Rurick*, under the Tutelage of one of his Relations, after whoſe Death he marry'd a Lady of *Pleſkow*, named *Olha* *. He was forced into a War with his Neighbours, whom he vanquiſhed, and then put the Prince of *Kiow* to Death: Being Maſter of all the Country along the Eaſtern Borders of the *Boryſthenes*, or *Dnieper*, he carry'd his Arms as far as *Thrace*; but at his Return, the Chief of the † *Drewlians*, the ſame who are now called the *Donſki-Tartars*, prepared an Ambuſcade for him near § *Coreſch*, where *Igor* periſhed with a great Number of his Men. IGOR. A. D. 880.

HE left but one Son, named *Swatoſlas* or *Spendoſtablos*, who was too young to mount the Throne; therefore *Olha*, his Mother, reigned in his ſtead, and was a great Princeſs. Her firſt Care was to revenge herſelf on the Chief of the *Drewlians* for his Perfidy: This Prince having ſent twenty Ambaſſadors to her, SWATOSLAS. A. D. 943.

* *Some ſay ſhe was the Daughter of* Goſtomiſles, *before mentioned.*

† *So called from the Word* Drew, *or* Derew, *which ſignifies a* Wood *or* Foreſt, *becauſe theſe People, it is ſaid, dwelt formerly in great Woods, on the Rivers* Deſna *and* Semm *in the* Ukraine.

§ *This Place is* 360 *Werſts diſtant from* Kiow, *towards the Source of the* Semm.

with Propoſitions of Marriage, ſhe began her Vengeance by cauſing them to be burnt alive, and gave that Nation to underſtand, that, if they would have her for their Sovereign, they muſt ſend to her a greater Number of the principal Men among them; theſe likewiſe ſhe cauſed to be ſtrangled in a Bath, and then ſent Word to the *Drewlians*, that ſhe was ſetting out, and ordered them to prepare Hydromel, and every thing elſe that was neceſſary to ſacrifice to the Manes of *Igor*, and for her own Nuptials.

AT her Arrival at *Coreſch* ſhe pay'd the higheſt Honours to the Memory of her deceaſed Huſband, and making the *Drewlians* drunk, ſhe cauſed five thouſand of the chief Perſons among them to be maſſacred, and then returned by the Way of *Kiow*, whither ſhe conducted her Army, and ſurpriſed that People, of whom ſhe made ſo eaſy a Conqueſt, that ſhe impoſed what Tribute ſhe pleaſed upon them.

OLHA afterwards took a Journey to *Conſtantinople*, where ſhe embraced the Chriſtian Religion according to the Rites of the *Greek* Church, being baptized by the Patriarch *Photius*, and took the Name of *Helena:* This was in the Reign of *John Zemiſces*, Emperor of the Eaſt, who would have marry'd her; but ſhe refuſed his Offer with great Civility. This magnanimous Princeſs lived to a great Age, being in her 80th Year when ſhe died, which was fourteen Years after her being baptized. The *Ruſſians* celebrate her Memory annually on the 11th of *July*, and compare her to the Sun, as ſhe was the firſt who brought forth the Light of the Goſpel

Goſpel among them; but ſhe could not perſuade her Son to eſpouſe the ſame Faith.

SHE had trained him up to Arms, which he bore all his Life with Honour; after he had ſubdued his Neighbours, he entered into *Bulgaria*, anciently called *Thrace*; and then, quitting *Kiow*, eſtabliſhed the Seat of his Empire at *Pereſlaw*, as the Centre of his Dominions, and where he might beſt maintain the Commerce he carry'd on with *Greece*, *Hungary*, and other Places.

SWATOSLAS, after a long and glorious Reign, was treacherouſly ſlain by the Prince of the *Peucingians* or *Hunns*, who made a drinking Cup of his Skull. He left three Sons, *Jewpalch*, to whom he had given *Kiow* and its Dependencies; *Olegas*, whom he had made Chief of the *Drewlians*; and *Wolodimir*, whom he had by a Concubine of *Novogorod*, much beloved by him; to this third Son he gave the Northern Part of his Dominions, compriſing *Novogorod*, *Pleſkow*, &c. but this Diviſion laſted not long, for *Jewpalch* laying an Ambuſcade for *Olegas*, ſoon deſtroyed him, and *Wolodimir* dreading the ſame Fate, fled for Shelter to the *Waragians*. *Jewpalch* immediately ſeized on *Novogorod*, and put a Governor in it: But *Wolodimir* obtained ſuch powerful Succours from the *Waragians* that he preſently drove him out again, and, at the ſame Time, declared War with this cruel Brother, whom he beſieged in *Kiow*, and, having artfully drawn him out of the Town, put him to Death.

WOLODIMIR, Maſter of all the Country that his Father had inherited and conquered,

with Propositions of Marriage, she began her Vengeance by causing them to be burnt alive, and gave that Nation to understand, that, if they would have her for their Sovereign, they must send to her a greater Number of the principal Men among them; these likewise she caused to be strangled in a Bath, and then sent Word to the *Drewlians*, that she was setting out, and ordered them to prepare Hydromel, and every thing else that was necessary to sacrifice to the Manes of *Igor*, and for her own Nuptials.

At her Arrival at *Coresch* she pay'd the highest Honours to the Memory of her deceased Husband, and making the *Drewlians* drunk, she caused five thousand of the chief Persons among them to be massacred, and then returned by the Way of *Kiow*, whither she conducted her Army, and surprised that People, of whom she made so easy a Conquest, that she imposed what Tribute she pleased upon them.

She afterwards took a Journey to *Constantinople*, where she embraced the Christian Religion according to the Rites of the *Greek* Church, was baptized by the Patriarch *Photius*, and took the Name of *Helena*: This was in the Reign of [illegible] Emperor of the East, who would have marry'd her; but she refused his [illegible] great Civility. This magnanimous [illegible] lived to a great Age, being [illegible] when she died, which [illegible] Constantine her being baptized [illegible] celebrate her Memory [illegible] and compose [illegible] the brave

Gulph among them; but he could not prevail upon him to embrace the same Faith.

She had taken him to a Feast, which he made all his Life with Ceremony, after he had subdued the Novogorods. He entered into Jaropolk, ancient called Zaroue; and there, resolving there, established the Seat of his Empire at Jaropolk, as the Center of his Dominions, and where he might best maintain the Commerce he had with Sweden, Hungary, and other Parts.

Sometimes after a long and glorious Reign, and triumphing both in the Love of his Subjects and Terror of his Enemies, and having a growing Care of his Sons. For all these Sons, Jaropolk, to whom he had given Kiow and its Dependencies; Oleg, whom he had made Chief of the Drevlians; and Wladimir, whom he had of a Concubine of Novogorod, which account of him, it did then not be given the Northern Part of his Dominions, comprising Novogorod, Pleskow, &c. but the Division affected not long, for Jaropolk laying an Ambuscade for Oleg, slew delivered him, and Wladimir dreading the same Fate, fled for Shelter to the Varagians. Jaropolk immediately seized on Novogorod, and put a Governor [illegible] obtained such power [illegible] Varagians that he [illegible] and, at the [illegible] cruel [illegible] and, [illegible] down,

[illegible] country WOLODIMIR. [illegible] ered, A.D. 980. gave

gave himſelf up to a Life of Eaſe and Luxury; having ſeveral Wives of different Nations, beſides ſix hundred Concubines: But he was powerful enough, notwithſtanding his Indolence, to draw about him an infinite Number of Prieſts, who inſinuated into him the Neceſſity of eſtabliſhing ſome certain Worſhip in his Dominions, each boaſting, with ſacerdotal Pride and Obſtinacy, of the particular Dogmas of his own Sect.

MALUSCHA, his Mother, who had been an Attendant on *Olha*, determined him in favour of Chriſtianity; and prevailing upon him to be baptized, he took the Name of *Baſile*, and broke the Idols * *Perun*, *Uſlad*, *Corſa*, *Daſwa*, *Simaergla*, *Macoſch*, and others, which he had erected himſelf in *Kiow*. He afterwards ſent an Embaſſy to *Conſtantinople* to demand the Siſter of the Emperor *Baſile*, whom he obtained in Marriage, and lived with her three and twenty Years. He built the City *Wolodimir*, upon the *Cliſma*, between the *Occa* and the *Wolga*; inſtituted the Feaſt of the Princeſs *Olha*; and was himſelf, after his Death, placed among the Number of the Saints, as the Apoſtle of his Country.

JEROSLAWS. A. D. 1020. THE Death of *Wolodimir-Baſile* occaſioned terrible Diſorders in the State, he left ten Sons, by different Wives, who entered into a deſperate War with one another, ſo that there were nothing but Murders, Treaſons and Battles,

* PERUN *was the God of Fire, the Word* Perun *ſignifying* Fire *in the* Muſcovite *Language. This Idol was repreſented with a Thunderbolt in his Hand, and had a conſtant Fire of Oak kept near him, which was not to go out, but at the Peril of the Lives of thoſe who were ſet to watch it.*

Battles, till *Jeroſlaws* had vanquiſhed all the reſt, and took upon him the Title of Monarch of *Ruſſia*.

JEROSLAWS left five Sons, who divided his Provinces among them. 1. *Zaſlas* had *Kiow*. 2. *Stoklas* had *Czerniboff*. 3. *Wſewolode*, *Pereſlaw*. 4. *Gregory*, *Smolenſko*; and, 5. *Wenceſlas* had *Novogorod* and *Wolodimir*. This Partition did not hinder the Brothers, after the Death of their Father, from endeavouring to deſtroy one another, and *Wſewolode*, the third, was too powerful for all the reſt.

WOLODIMIR II. the Son of *Wſewolode*, once more reduced all the State to the Subjection of one Prince, and took, as his Grandfather *Jeroſlaws* had done, the Title of Monarch; as he was more abſolute, ſo he was more diſtinguiſhed than any of his Predeceſſors, by carrying on a War with *Geiza* II. King of *Hungary*. It was this *Wolodimir* who firſt eſtabliſhed the Ceremonies obſerv'd at the Coronation of the *Ruſſian* Monarchs for a long Time after his Reign. He maintained a long and cruel War with the *Barbarians*, who dwelt on the Borders of the *Danube*. He even threatened *Conſtantine*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, who, to prevail upon him to retire, ſent him large Preſents by certain Biſhops, by whom he was treated as * CZAR. WOLODIMIR II. A. D. 1043.

HIS Son *Wſewolode* II. was alſo Monarch of all *Ruſſia*; but eight Sons, whom he left behind him, divided the Kingdom once more, which was very much weakened thereby, as well as by the War they were obliged to carry WSEWOLODE II. A. D. 1116.

* *Which Word in the* Sclavonian *Language means* KING; *and is not derived from* Cæſar, *as ſome have imagined.*

on againſt the *Tartars* on one Side, and the Knights of the *Short-Sword* on the other.

THESE Knights owed their Original to certain Merchants of the Towns on the *Baltick Sea*, who formed an Aſſociation againſt the Infidels of *Livonia*, where the Chriſtian Faith not being yet well ſettled, the Biſhop of *Riga* laid the Foundation of this Order, by the Authority of Pope *Innocent* III. who allowed them the third Part of what they ſhould conquer from the *Barbarians*. They obſerved the ſame Rules as the Knights *Templars*, and were called *Friers*, or Knights of the *Short-Sword*, becauſe they had on their *White Cloaks*, ſays *Olearius*, a red *Short-Sword*, with a Star of the ſame Colour; which they afterwards changed into two Short-Swords in Saltier, with their Points downwards. They made ſome Progreſs, but finding themſelves too weak, they were joined with the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order, with whom they were incorporated in the Year 1238.

RUSSIA at this Time extended no farther towards the Eaſt than to the River *Occa*, which ſeparated it from the *Morduate Tartars*; towards the North it went no farther than the Mountains of *Kargapol*; but towards the South, the Valour of *Jeroſlaws* and *Wolodimir* II. who had carried their Arms as far as the *Danube*, had brought under their Subjection all the Country about the *Boryſthenes*, and all that was between the *Przypiecz* and the *Nieſter*, and which is at this Day called *Black-Ruſſia*. All theſe Lands became the Patrimony of the Deſcendants of *Wſewolode* II. who divided the Provinces among them, which

which were ſubdivided by their Succeſſors, ſo that there were to be ſeen, at the ſame Time, one Prince of *Kiow*, another Prince of *Wolodimir*, another of *Novogorod*, one of *Smolenſko*, and another of * *Halicz*. It was no difficult Matter for the numerous *Tartars* to make ſo many little Princes tributary, who were in no Condition to make Head againſt them. Prince *Gregory*, the Great-grandſon of *Wſewolode* II. could not reſiſt them, but he ſaw not the Slavery of his Country, loſing his Life with his Crown. It was at this Time, that this barbarous People, under the Conduct of the famous *Balthi*, their Cham, threw themſelves into *Hungary*, where they committed incredible Ravages. The Diviſions that reign'd among theſe petty *Ruſſian* Princes help'd to prolong their Slavery, they ſupplanted one another, made War among themſelves, and choſe the Chams of *Tartary* conſtantly for their Arbiters, the Weakeſt acknowledging them for their Sovereigns, that they might obtain Succours to pull down their Enemies.

THE *Ruſſians* about the Lake *Ilmen*, and beyond the *Wolga*, remained the moſt powerful, and were enough ſo oftentimes to diſturb the *Teutonick* Knights. *Romanoff*, the Grandſon of *Wſewolode* II. whoſe Siſter, *Helena*, was married to *Caſimir* II. King of *Poland*, reigned at *Novogorod*, from whence he made ſeveral Invaſions into *Livonia*; but with ſo little Succeſs, that the *Ruſſians* were forced to yield

* *This was a Town of* Black-Ruſſia *in* Pokutia *on the* Nieſter, *which was the Appenage of* Meiſlas, *Son of* WSEWOLODE II.

yield *Pleſkow* to the Grand Maſter *Herman Falox*. It is true, he did not keep it long, for Prince *Alexander* retook it a few Years after. *Daniel Romanowitz*, that is to ſay, the Son of *Romanoff*, was continually at War with the *Teutonick* Knights, under their Grand Maſters *Brietbauſen* and *Rodenſtein*. He entered into *Livonia* as far as *Dorpt*, with the Deſign of retaking the Fortreſs of *Odenpo*, which the *Ruſſians* had formerly poſſeſſed; but he was always unſucceſsful.

THE direct Line of the *Ruſſian* Monarchs maintained themſelves in *Wolodimir*, where *George* was killed by the *Tartars*; his Son *Demetrius* left *Jeroſlaws* II. who had five Sons; *Alexander*, *Theodore*, *Andrew*, *Michael*, and *Demetrius*. *Alexander* ſucceeded his Father, and was one of the firſt who endeavoured to ſhake off the *Tartarian* Yoke; for which Reaſon he reſolved to transfer his Reſidence to a Place a little farther from their Frontiers than *Wolodimir*. He choſe *Moſcow*, ſituated in a Plain indeed that was barren, but watered by a little River which gives its Name to the City, and which, at the Diſtance of ſome Werſts, falls into the *Occa*. It was this *Alexander* who died with the Reputation of a Saint, and whoſe Aſhes the Emperor *Peter* the Great, of immortal Memory, cauſed to be tranſported, in our Time, to the Church which he built in the Neighbourhood of *Peterſburgh*, and called by the Name of *Alexander Newſki*.

DANIEL ALEXANDROWITZ. A. D. 1300.

DANIEL ALEXANDROWITZ built the Citadel of *Moſcow*, and took upon him the Title of *Grand Duke*. This Tranſlation of the Re-

Reſidence of the Prince, made Strangers change the Name of the Nation; and becauſe *Daniel* called himſelf Great Duke of *Moſcow*, of *Wolodimir*, &c. they called him Prince of *Moſcow*, and the People had the Name of *Muſcovites*, which they never approved, tenaciouſly preſerving that which they had always bore. It was under the Reign of *Daniel* that the *Poles* conquered *Black-Ruſſia*, *Podolia*, and even *Kiow*, which they took from the collateral *Ruſſian* Princes, who had ſecured themſelves there from the Invaſion of the *Tartars*.

DANIEL left *George*, *John*, *Boris*, and *Alexander*. *George Danielowitz* ſucceeded his Father; but *Demetrius Michaelowitz*, the Grandſon of the Grand Duke *Jeroſlaws* II. diſputed the Crown with him, having the Aſſiſtance of the *Tartars*, and carried his Cruelty ſo far as to aſſaſſinate him: But he was ſoon puniſhed for this Murder; for the Cham, upon ſome Suſpicion, took away his Life, and ſettled the Succeſſion upon the ſecond Son of *Daniel*, called *John Danielowitz*, whoſe Character acquired him the Name of *Kalita*, becauſe he always carry'd a Purſe about him to diſtribute Alms. After his Death his Sons, *John* and *Simon*, fell into a Diſpute concerning the Lordſhip of *Tweer*, which they referred to the Cham *Zana-Beck*, who gave it in Favour of the laſt, upon Condition, that he ſhould pay him a certain Tribute. But *Demetrius Iwanowitz*, the Son of the elder Brother, ſhew'd more Courage.

George. A. D. 1327.

Demetrius Michaelowitz. A. D. 1330.

John Danielowitz. A. D. 1330.

DEMETRIUS IWANOWITZ. A. D. 1366.

THE Great Cham of the *Tartars*, on this Side the *Caſpian* Sea, and the Deſert of *Capchac*,

chac, was *Tochatmitch*, the ſame againſt whom the great *Timur-Beck*, commonly called *Tamerlane*, marched in the Year of *Egira* 792. He was of the Race of *Touchi*, the Son of *Genghiz-Cham*, and had the Seat of his Empire at *Ourtoepa*, on the Banks of the *Wolga*, between *Samara* and *Saratof*. This Great Cham had ſeveral Chams under him, who were Princes of the Blood Royal of *Touchi*; ſuch were *Aiſa-Beck*, *Mamai-Cham*, &c. over whom the Great Duke *Demetrius* obtained conſiderable Advantages; particularly in the Year 1379, he made ſuch a Slaughter in the Army of the laſt, that all the Land, for thirteen Werſts from the Field of Battle, was covered with the Slain.

BUT little more than a Year after, the great Cham, *Tochat-Mitch*, marched againſt *Demetrius* at the Head of his Hords, took *Wolodimir* and *Moſcow*, and put all he met to the Sword. We may gueſs at the Number of the Slain by what is related by an *Arabian* Author, who ſays, that fourſcore dead Bodies were purchaſed for a Rouble, and that by this Traffick the *Tartars* gained three thouſand Roubles; but it is very probable, that this is greatly exaggerated, for if *Demetrius* had been able to have raiſed an Army of two hundred and forty thouſand Men, it is not likely that *Tochat-Mitch* could ſo eaſily have gained his Ends.

IT was but a few Years after this Victory, that the great Cham drew *Timur-Beck* upon him, by the Haughtineſs and Inſolence of his Manners, and was himſelf intirely defeated in his Turn. The Victor ſeized on his Capital

Our-

Ourtoepa, and had the Satisfaction to aſcend the Throne of *Touchi*. His Camp, which was three Leagues diameter, was encompaſſed by a Curtain of gold-flower'd Brocade, and he got ſo great a Booty, that the poor People in the Camp, who could hardly get enough to ſubſiſt themſelves before, now gathered together ſo many Horſes, Sheep, and other Things, that when they return'd, they were forced to leave a great Part behind them. At an Entertainment that *Timur-Beck* gave the Officers of his Army, on the Plain of *Ourtoepa*, he had found ſo much Riches, that the Meats were ſerved up only in Veſſels of Gold and precious Stones: Such was the Wealth and Power of the Conqueror of *Demetrius*.

BASILE DEMETROWITZ, his Son and Succeſſor, found Things much altered, and made uſe of the Miſery to which *Timur-Beck* had reduced the *Tartars* not only to ſhake off their Yoke, but even to drive them out of *Ruſſia*, and was ſo ſucceſsful in his Engagements with them, that he forced them to the other Side of the *Wolga*. The Reign of this Prince was long. He had, by his Wife *Anaſtaſia*, but one Son, who was of his own Name; but ſome Suſpicions he had of the Virtue of this Princeſs, made him leave his Dominions to his Brother *Gregory*, giving his Son only to the Principality of * *Uglitz*. BASILE DEMETROWITZ. A. D. 1381.

THIS Diſpoſition excited freſh Troubles in *Ruſſia*: The Boyars took the Part of *Baſile-Baſilowitz* againſt his Uncle, who had Recourſe to Arms to maintain the Right which his GREGORY DEMETROWITZ.

* *Which at preſent makes a Part of the Province of Roſtow on the North of that of* Moſcow.

his Brother's Laſt-Will had given him, and defeated the Partizans of his Nephew, who retired into the Province which his Father had aſſigned for his Appenage. The Great Duke *Gregory* was at War with the *Poles*, almoſt the whole Time of his Reign, which was but ſhort, and at his Death he declared his Nephew his Succeſſor, altho' he had two Sons of his own.

BASILE II.

THESE could not approve of this teſtamentary Diſpoſition of their Father's Crown, tho' it was the ſame Right by which he held it himſelf, even to the Excluſion of the Prince who now had a double Claim to it. During the Reign of their Father they had made a ſtrong Party, who were now in Arms to take away from *Baſile* the Dominions that were juſt reſtored to him; and even at the Hazard of going to War again among themſelves about the Diviſion of them. *Baſile* ſupported himſelf till the Stratagems of his Enemies, more than their Power, had made him fall into their Hands; and to render him incapable, as they thought, of reigning, they put out both his Eyes, and baniſhed him once more to *Uglitz*. The great Men who had ſided with the Sons of *Gregory*, were ſhock'd at this Cruelty; wherefore, going over to the unfortunate *Baſile*, they brought him back to *Moſcow*, where he reigned till his Death with the Surname of *Cziemnox*, or *the Blind*.

JOHN BASILOWITZ.

To this good Prince ſucceeded *John Baſilowitz*, who had the Surname of *Victorious*, on Account of his great Actions, and the Conqueſts he made, under Pretence of revenging the Inſults his Father had received from *Demetrius*

metrius Siemacha, who commanded at *Novogorod*; from *Andrew* his Brother, who was Maſter of *Novogorod Sewierſki*, and from *Boris Alexandrowitz*, who commanded in *Tweer*. He ſeized on theſe three Provinces. That of *Novogorod Weliki*, or the *Great*, was ſo large, that *Who can reſiſt God, or* Novogorod *the* Great? was a Proverb. She was able to raiſe two hundred thouſand arm'd Men: But theſe Conqueſts would have been imperfect if he had not intirely ſhook off the Yoke of the *Tartars*, who, from Time to Time, gave the *Ruſſians* to underſtand, that they had been their Maſters, and would, if they pleaſed, be ſo again.

AFTER having defeated theſe *Tartars* ſo effectually, that there was no Fear of their entering again into his Dominions, he took the Title of Great Duke of *Wolodimir*, *Moſcow*, and *Novogorod*, and Sovereign of all *Ruſſia*. He was not ſatisfy'd with only taking Poſſeſſion of the States that had been ſubject to his Anceſtors, but would rejoin thoſe Places to them, which had been diſmembered from them by his Neighbours. He attacked *Alexander*, Great Duke of *Lithuania*, who had married his Daughter *Helena*, and took *Smolenſko* from him, with every Thing that he had divided from *Ruſſia*.

HE attacked *Lithuania* in three different Places at the ſame Time; and, perhaps, this War was carry'd on with the greater Fury, as it was begun on Account of the Church, *Alexander* having neglected to give a Cloiſter to ſome *Greek* Nuns, in the City of *Wilna*, as he had promiſed when he marry'd the *Ruſſian* Princeſs *Helena*. One Army entered by *Novogorod*

gorod Sewierſki, the ſecond by *Toropiecz* and *Bielba*, and the third by *Dorobobus* and *Smolenſko*; ſo diſpoſed, that they could all aſſiſt one another. The *Lithuanians*, commanded by *Conſtantine Oſtroky*, preſently appeared on the Borders of *Wedraſch*, where a bloody Battle was fought, in which the *Lithuanian* General and the Chiefs of his Army were taken Priſoners; *Dorobobus*, *Bielba*, *Breuſko*, and almoſt all the Province of *Sewierſki*, ſubmitted to the Laws of the Victor. Never was any Prince more fortunate; he found in the City of *Novogorod Weliki* alone above three hundred Waggons loaden with Gold, Silver, and valuable Moveables. At the ſame Time he was hardly ever ſeen himſelf at the Head of his Army, which occaſioned *Stephen*, the *Weywode* of *Moldavia*, his Ally, to ſay, that he made Conqueſts in his Sleep, whilſt he, with much Difficulty, defended his Frontiers, notwithſtanding he was always in the Field. He had alſo ſome Diſputes with the Crown of *Sweden*, and after he had recovered *Pleſkow*, he made War with the *Livonians*, and built the Fortreſs of *Iwangorod* on their Frontiers.

IWAN BASILOWITZ had two Wives, the firſt, the Daughter of the Prince of *Tweer*; the ſecond, named *Sophia*, a Daughter of *Thomas*, Prince of the *Morea*, of the Family of *Paleologus*. All Hiſtorians agree, that this laſt Princeſs had more Prudence and Policy than is commonly to be met with in her Sex, and that her Huſband was indebted to her for a great Part of the Glory, that he acquired in his laſt Expeditions. It was ſhe who engaged him to ſhake off the Yoke of the

Tartars, from whom ſhe very artfully took away a Houſe that they had in the City of *Moſcow*, which ſhe pulled down and raiſed a Temple on the Ruins of it, promiſing them to build them a ſtately Palace without the City; but this Promiſe was never performed. The Czar had one Son, named *John*, by his firſt Wife, whom he married to a Daughter of *Stephen*, *Weywode* of *Moldavia*, and who dying before his Father, left a Son called *Demetrius*, who was deſigned by his Grandfather for his Succeſſor: But *Sophia* knew ſo well how to manage the Affections of her Huſband, that ſhe engaged him to promiſe to leave the Crown to her Son *Gabriel*, to whom he had deſtinated the Principality of *Novogorod*. It was therefore neceſſary to deprive *Demetrius* of his Liberty; but the Czar changing his Mind at the Inſtant of his Death, releaſed this young Prince out of Priſon, and called him again to the Succeſſion: The Enjoyment of which *Gabriel* ſoon took from him with his Life.

JOHN BASILOWITZ the *Victorious* died in the Year of the Chriſtian *Æra* 1505, and of the World, according to the *Ruſſian* Account, 7014.

GABRIEL ſucceeding his Father, took the Name of *Baſile Iwanowitz* III. but as long as his Nephew *Demetrius Iwanowitz* lived, he would not take the Crown, but contented himſelf with the Title of Adminiſtrator, till after he had got rid of his Competitor, by putting him to Death, and then he aſſumed the Dignity of Great Duke. He not only preſerved the Conqueſts his Father had made, BASILE IWANOWITZ.

but even augmented them, altho' he had ſome Reverſe of Fortune in *Livonia*.

FROM the Time of the Union of the Knights of the *Short-Sword* to thoſe of the *Teutonick* Order, the Grand Maſter of theſe, who reſided in *Pruſſia*, ſent a Chief Officer into *Livonia*, who was called *Heer Meiſter*, or Grand General. Theſe Grand Generals had many Diſputes with the Clergy of *Livonia*; and not leſs with the *Ruſſians*, who had always an Inclination to add this Province to their Empire.

THE Annals of this Order ſpeak of a Battle fought in the Year 1248, between the *Livonians* and the *Ruſſians* of *Witepſk*, *Smolenſko*, and *Pleſkow*, in which ten thouſand of the latter were ſlain. They contain alſo a long Recital of the Siege of *Nyenbuyſen*, about 50 Werſts from *Dorpt* upon the *Wielka* or *Mudaw*; this Siege, undertaken in the Year 1381, by the Great Duke *Demetrius Iwanowitz* in Perſon, with an Army of three hundred thouſand Men, was miraculouſly raiſed, if you believe them; the Great Duke was killed, his flying Troops were purſued and defeated; and the Bow, with which the Governor had ſhot the fatal Arrow, was conſecrated upon the Altar of the Church in the Caſtle, where this miraculous Deliverance was annually celebrated till the Year 1558, when the Czar *John Baſilowitz* made himſelf Maſter of the Caſtle. The ſame Annals ſpeak of an Irruption that the Grand General, *Borg*, made into *Pleſkow* with an hundred thouſand Men, of which he reaped no Fruit, but only drew

drew the *Ruſſians* into *Livonia*, where they demoliſhed ſeveral Caſtles, and carry'd off a conſiderable Booty.

WHEN the Hiſtorians of this Order ſpeak of the Grand General *Walter Plettenberg*, they ſeem to want Words to expreſs themſelves, agreeable to the high Opinion they had of him, and make him ſurpaſs even *Alexander* and *Cæſar*. It was with this Chief that *Baſile Iwanowitz* III. was in Diſpute. His Father had made an Irruption, with ſome Succeſs, into *Livonia: Plettenberg* ſoon made a Return; but a Sickneſs in his Army obliged him to retreat fighting: *Baſile Iwanowitz* next marched in his Turn againſt the *Livonians*, with a formidable Army; the Grand General aſſembled together all his Forces, and joined to them great Succours drawn from *Courland*. The two Armies met near *Pleſkow*, in a Plain that extended for ſeveral Werſts, where the Great Duke advanced with his Troops divided into ſeveral Columns, and ſupported by another Body of thirty thouſand *Tartars*. Never was fought a more terrible Battle. The *Ruſſians* and *Tartars* making uſe of Bows, diſcharged ſuch a prodigious Quantity of Arrows, that they ſeemed like a thick Cloud darkening the Heavens. The *Livonians* made a horrible Fire, and afterwards advanced with their Sabres, in a Kind of Fury; the *Tartars* betook them to Flight, and the *Ruſſians* being quite overthrown, retired with the Remnant of their Army to *Pleſkow*. *Leunclavius*, the Hiſtorian, ſays, that the Loſs of the *Ruſſians* was ſo great, that the Plain, which was above ſixty Stades in Length and

Breadth, was quite covered with the Slain: The Conſequence of this Battle was a Treaty of Peace for fifty Years between *Ruſſia* and *Livonia*.

PLESKOW was a Sort of Republick, which had her Dukes, or Statholders, choſen by the People, and confirmed by the Czars. The general Affairs were guided by a Senate, but the People were conſulted on making Peace or War, in forming Alliances, on the Election of a Duke, and on raiſing of Taxes. The Populace, whom Eaſe oftentimes renders inſolent, took it in their Heads, if one may be allowed the Expreſſion, to correct Providence, and were for making an equal Diſtribution of the Eſtates of the moſt powerful Citizens. We may eaſily ſuppoſe, that this Project cauſed a great Number of the Citizens to be upon their Guard. The Clergy and the Senate had Recourſe to the Grand General *Plettenberg*, who refuſed them his Aſſiſtance, for fear he ſhould be accuſed of infringing the Peace; ſo that they were oblig'd to implore the Succour of the Great Duke *Baſile Iwanowitz*, who coming to *Pleſkow* with a Body of his Forces, was admitted into the Town; he heard both Sides, and ſent the Chiefs of the Faction to *Moſcow*, and reunited the Town and its Dependencies to his Empire.

SOME Years after he declared War againſt *Sigiſmund*, King of *Poland*, under Pretence that his Siſter, the Widow of King *Alexander*, had not treated him with the Reſpect that was due to him; but the true Cauſe of this War was the Deſign he had to take Advantage

vantage of the Softneſs in which *Sigiſmund* and the *Lithuanians* lived, that he might recover the Places their Anceſtors had taken from *Ruſſia*. He ſeized upon *Smolenſko* by the Help of *Michael Lintſki*, a Deſcendant of the *Ruſſian* Princes, who gained over the Gariſon in ſuch a Manner, that they not only delivered up the Town to the *Ruſſians*, but alſo declared for the Great Duke. Fleſh'd with this Conqueſt, he cauſed his Army to enter into *Lithuania*, and forced ſeveral Places to ſubmit to him. *Sigiſmund* prepared for Battle, and his Troops, under the Command of *Conſtantine Oſtroſky*, croſſed the *Boryſthenes* below *Orſa*, on a Bridge, whilſt the Horſe paſſed thro' a Ford a little higher. *Iwan Andrew Czeladin* commanded the *Ruſſian* Army, which conſiſted of above four-ſcore thouſand Men; but he committed an unpardonable Fault in letting all the Enemies Forces paſs the River quietly before he attack'd them: He was defeated and taken Priſoner, with the greateſt Part of the other Generals. But the *Lithuanians* got no Advantage by this Victory, as they could not recover *Smolenſko*, which the Great Duke ſtill kept. Some Years after he ſent another Army by the *Duna*, which laid a great Part of *Lithuania* waſte.

KING SIGISMUND had alſo at that Time a Diſpute with the *Teutonick* Knights, from whom he with-held ſome Fortreſſes in *Livonia*. The Emperor *Maximilian* I. beſides his being Protector of this Order, had other Reaſons of State that obliged him to ſpirit up all the Enemies he could againſt that King: Wherefore he judged it proper to make an

Alliance with the Czar of *Ruſſia*; to this End, he ſent a ſolemn Embaſſy to him, and wrote him a Letter, ſtill preſerved in the Archives of *Moſcow*, wherein he gives him the Title of EMPEROR, a Copy of which the Czar, PETER *the Great*, cauſed to be printed, when he aſſumed that Title, to ſhew, that it had been before given to one of his Predeceſſors, whoſe Power was not comparable to his own.

WE have before ſeen the Diſpoſitions of *Tartars* of the Empire of *Touchi*, who were ſurrounded by other *Tartarian* Principalities, ſome more civilized, others more barbarous than the *Touchi*. The chief of theſe was that whoſe King or Cham had his Reſidence at *Caſan*, on the Banks of the *Wolga*: In the Neighbourhood of this Kingdom were the *Schibanſki* and *Koſatki Tartars*, and ſhe reckoned among her Subjects the *Czeremiſſi*, expert in the Uſe of the Bow, and the *Czubaſchi*, excellent in their Navigation on the *Wolga*. The Czar *Baſile*, always ſucceſsful when he employed Addreſs rather than Force, engaged the *Tartars* of *Caſan* to have ſuch a Dependence upon him, that they received their Kings from his Hands. The Czar always kept ſome Perſons at *Caſan* in whom he could confide, who conſtantly gave him an Account of all the Proceedings of theſe Kings; and upon the leaſt Suſpicion, he did not fail of getting them depoſed. It was thus, that *Alega*, *Abdelatiw* and *Machmedemin*, all Brothers, mounted the Throne ſucceſſively: Under the laſt the People of *Caſan* ſhook off their Yoke; but after his Death, one named *Scheale*, having

ving married his Widow, who was Sister to the Czar, mounted the Throne by the Assistance of his Brother-in-Law: But he was not able to maintain himself long in it, for his Subjects could not bear his effeminate Life, his blind Submission to the Will of the Czar, nor his great Affection for Strangers, whom he always prefer'd to his own Subjects; they resolved, therefore, to take his Crown from him, and give it to a *Tartarian* Prince.

MENDLI-GIREY, the Chief of the Race of Chams, who reigned at that Time in the *Crimea*, had left two Sons, *Machmet-Girey* and *Sap-Girey*; the first succeeded his Father, and the *Tartars* of *Casan* chose the other for their King. Besides the powerful Assistance they might at any Time expect from *Machmet-Girey*, *Mendli-Girey*, the Father of these two Princes, had married *Nursulta*, the Widow of two Kings of *Casan*, and Mother of *Abdelatiw* and *Machmedemin*, their last Sovereigns.

AT the Approach of *Sap-Girey*, *Scheale* quitted his Capital, and retired to *Moscow*, taking all that he could carry with him. *Machmet-Girey*, after having settled his Brother on the Throne of *Casan*, set out to return to the *Crimea*; but he had no sooner crossed the *Don*, than he changed his Design, and turned, all on a sudden, towards *Moscow*. The Czar *Basile* expected nothing less, but relying on the Reputation he had acquired, imagined he had no Need to dread such an Invasion: He was no sooner informed of the March of the *Tartars*, but he sent an Army into the Field under the Command of *Demetrius Bieslki*, to dispute the Passage of the *Occa*

with them. *Sap-Girey*, when he heard of his Brother's Enterprize, came with his Army to ſecond him, and advancing by the North of the *Wolga*, he ſurpriſed and plundered *Niſi-Novogorod* and *Wolodimir*. *Machmet-Girey* having got the Whip-hand of *Bieſlki*, got over the *Occa*, and plundered all the Country. The Czar abandoned his Capital, which was in no Condition to reſiſt the *Tartars*; the Ambaſſadors of *Livonia*, who were then at his Court, retired to *Tweer*, and nothing was neglected, that might hinder the Enemy from ſeizing on *Moſcow*, where the Czar had left his Brother-in-Law *Peter Codaiculu*, a *Tartarian* Prince, Brother of King *Machmedemin*, who had embraced the Chriſtian Religion. *Machmet-Girey* came very near this City, where all the Country People had endeavoured to ſecure themſelves; but whether he deſpaired of taking it, whether he feared the Want of Proviſions in a Country, where he had deſtroyed every Thing, or whether knowing the Character of the Czar *Baſile*, he the more eaſily liſtened to the Propoſitions made him by the Governor, after he had received ſome Preſents, and a Promiſe in Writing of being paid an annual Tribute, he withdrew towards *Reſan*, and gave the *Ruſſians* Leave to purchaſe the Slaves he had made. He endeavoured to ſeize on this Place by the Intrigues of *Taſkowitz*, a *Poliſh* Officer, who brought him Succours; but very far from that, he left behind him the original Treaty, by which the Czar had acknowledged himſelf his Tributary: Which happened in this Manner.

MACH-

MACHMET-GIREY caused the Governor to be told, that he would use his Tributary as his Slave, and demanded several Things of him by one of his Officers: The Governor, named *John Kowar*, answered, that the Czar his Master was Tributary to no one, and he would obey no Orders but his. The *Tartarian* King, to convince him of his Mistake, sent him the Treaty. While *Kowar* remained in an Incertainty what he should do, a Gunner fired upon the *Tartars* and *Lithuanians*, which put them in Disorder; *Machmet-Girey* complained of this, and would have had the Gunner delivered up to him; the Governor refused it, they parley'd a long Time, and the *Tartar* impatient, or pressed by his People loaded with Spoil, all on a sudden made a Retreat, without thinking of demanding the Treaty back again, which was sent to the Czar.

THE Year following the Czar *Basile* raised a numerous Army, which he assembled about *Colomna*, upon the *Occa* between *Moscow* and *Resan*; from whence he dispatched a Herald to *Machmet-Girey* at *Capha*, to tell him, he was come to make War with him, as with a Thief, and that he intended to give him Battle. The proud *Tartar* answered, that he received Orders from no one, and that he should take Arms when he thought proper; and that when he had a Mind to enter *Russia*, there were an hundred Passages open to him. *Basile*, irritated at this Answer, marched toward *Casan*, ravaging and pillaging all the Lands of the Enemy: He caused a Fortress to be built on the *Wolga* at the Mouth of the *Sura*,

Sara, giving it his own * Name, and retired.

THE next Year he ſent a formidable Army towards *Caſan*, under the Command of *Michael Georgiwitz*: The News of which terrified *Sap-Girey* to that Degree, that he reſolved to go to *Conſtantinople* to implore the Aſſiſtance of the *Grand Signor*; and ſent for his Nephew, to leave him the Guardianſhip of his Kingdom in the mean Time; but the *Ruſſian* Generals did not preſs ſo hard upon the *Tartars* as they ought to have done; nay, they even hindered King *Scheale* from doing ſeveral brave Actions, which would have reduced the Enemy, already diſpirited, to the laſt Extremity. In ſhort, the Knez *John Palitzki*, who had beſieged *Caſan*, raiſed the Siege very *mal-à-propos*, and this whole Expedition terminated only in obliging the King of *Caſan* to ſend Ambaſſadors to the Czar *Baſile* to deſire Peace, and to tranſport the Fair, formerly kept at *Goſtinow-Oſero* near *Caſan*, to *Niſi-Novogorod*, whither the *Ruſſians*, *Perſians* and *Armenians* might all come alike by *Aſtracan*.

SAP-GIREY and his Brother had ſoon after a War with the King of *Aſtracan*, in which they had no Succeſs; for *Mamai* and *Agis*, Chams of the *Nogay Tartars*, betrayed them, killed *Machmet-Girey*, and would have ſeized upon *Precop*, but were unable. *Sap-Girey* ſucceeded his Brother, but was dethroned a ſhort Time after, by his Subjects and his Nephew,

* Waſilgorod, *about* 140 *Werſts from* Niſi-Novogorod, *and above* 300 *from* Caſan, *upon the Frontiers of* Czeremiſſi.

phew, who confined him in a Priſon all the reſt of his Days.

THE Czar *Baſile Iwanowitz*, very much drained both of Men and Money by the Irruption of *Machmet-Girey*, and by the Expences he had been at for two Years together in his Expeditions againſt the *Tartars* of *Caſan*, was endeavouring to put himſelf in a Condition, by the preſent Peace, to renew the War with more Succeſs, but Death put an End to his Deſigns; and he left his Dominions to his Son, *John Baſilowitz*.

BASILE IWANOWITZ had had two Wives, the firſt named *Salomé*, Daughter of the Boyar *John Sapur*: The Czar lived with her one and twenty Years without having any Children, which made him reſolve to repudiate her, and ſhut her up in the Monaſtery of *Suſdal*, notwithſtanding all the Oppoſition ſhe could make to the Violence that was offered her; for ſhe even tore the Veil from her Head, and trampled it under her Feet. The Czar afterwards married *Helena*, the Daughter of the Knez *Baſile Linſki*, and Niece of the Knez *Michael*, who was then in Priſon: It was this General, whom we have before-mentioned, that conquered for the Czar, and reunited to *Ruſſia*, the City of *Smolenſko*, and other Places along the *Dnieper* or *Boryſthenes*.

THE Czar is ſaid to have determined in favour of *Helena*, not only as ſhe was of the illuſtrious Houſe of *Petrowitz* in *Hungary* and profeſſed the *Greek* Religion, but on account of her Relation to the Knez *Michael Linſki*, whoſe Valour and Prudence he was well acquainted with, and who, he thought, might be

be a powerful Tutor to his Children, if he ſhould have any. By this Marriage, the Czar *Baſile* left two Sons, *John Baſilowitz*, who ſucceeded him, and *George*; both whom he put under the Tutelage of *Michael Linſki*. This worthy Man was extreamly chagrined at the Behaviour of the Czarina Dowager, his Niece, who led an infamous Life, not only with the Boyar *John Owczina*, but abandoned herſelf to all the moſt ſcandalous Liberties that her Sex was capable of. Whatever Concern this gave him, he was very cautious in the Manner of reprehending her, yet could not do it ſo, but to draw her Hatred upon him; wherefore ſhe had him accuſed of a Deſign of delivering up his two Pupils to the King of *Poland*; ſhe wanted not falſe Witneſſes; ſo the Knez *Michael* was condemned to Priſon, where he ended his Days miſerably: But the Crimes of this vile Woman did not go unpuniſhed; for at length ſhe was poiſoned, not without the Knowledge of her Son; and her Lover *John Owczina*, who had endeavoured to fly from Juſtice, being retaken, was put to Death by the Hands of the common Executioner.

IT may not be improper, before we enter upon the Reign of *John Baſilowitz*, to take Notice, that it was his Father, who joined to *Ruſſia* the Provinces along the Coaſts of the Frozen Sea; which Conqueſt he made after the taking *Smolenſko*, and before the War in *Caſan*. It coſt him not much Pains; for ſending a ſmall Body of Foot, ſupported by a conſiderable Detachment of Horſe, he ſoon made himſelf Maſter of the Provinces of *Condora*,

Condora, *Jubora*, and *Petzora*, inhabited by the *Samoieds*; *Oſtiacks*, and other barbarous People, who had never before ſubmitted to any ſovereign Power.

THE Czar *John Baſile Baſilowitz* was but twelve Years of Age at the Death of his Father, and about twenty-two when his Mother died; and he took upon himſelf the Government of his vaſt Dominions. A greater Tyrant was ſcarce ever known, or one guilty of more monſtrous Cruelties; yet, as he was a Friend to the Rites of the Church and Eccleſiaſtical Ceremonies, *Paulus Jovius*, a Biſhop, gives him the Name of a *good* and *devout Chriſtian*: He had the ſame Merits that made our *Edward* a Confeſſor, and for the Want of which ſome really good and virtuous Princes have been repreſented, by Eccleſiaſticks, as Atheiſts and Monſters. JOHN BASILOWITZ. A. D. 1540.

THIS Prince however, in the Beginning of his Reign, endeavoured to civilize his People, and inſtruct them in thoſe Arts and Sciences that are uſeful to Society. To which End, he ſent an Embaſſy to the Emperor *Charles* V. to obtain from him a Number of all Sorts of Artizans to come and ſettle in *Ruſſia*: The Emperor very readily conſented to it; but the *Livonians*, whoſe Intereſt it was to have the *Ruſſians* continue in the Ignorance they were, oppoſed this, and it was with much Difficulty, that the Ambaſſador could bring any of them to *Moſcow*.

WHILST he was engaged in this Project, worthy a good Prince, he conſidered how he might make an End of the Conqueſt of the Kingdom of *Caſan*, in which Deſign his Father

ther had failed. He raiſed a very numerous Army, and furniſhed with all Sorts of warlike Stores *Niſi-Novogorod* and the Fortreſs of *Waſilgorod*, where he fixed his Magazines: So that it may be ſaid, he made War in this Country, for the firſt Time, according to thoſe Regulations that are obſerved in *Europe*, and which were unknown to the *Tartars*.

THE Czar himſelf marched at the Head of his Army, and went to beſiege *Caſan*. The *Tartars* had got together a Part of their Forces there, and being informed of the Preparations that were making againſt them by the *Ruſſians*, they had put the City in the beſt State of Defence, that the Seaſon of the Year, and the little Time they had for it, would allow them. *John Baſilowitz* attacked it with ſo much Vigour, that in a very few Days there was a Breach made large enough to begin the Aſſault: But the Chams of the *Schibanſki* and *Koſatſki Tartars*, with others, who had many Bodies of Troops in the Field, very much incommoded the Beſiegers, from whom they took all their Convoys. Thoſe in the Town made ſo ſtout a Reſiſtance, that there was not much Likelihood of its being taken ſo eaſily as was at firſt imagined. The *Ruſſian* Troops, accuſtomed till that Time to make War after the Manner of the *Tartars*, that is, by ruining, plundering and deſtroying every Place, began to murmur, that they were kept too long ſhut up in their Camp, and that the Campaign was too tedious; they carry'd their Inſolence ſo far, as to be deſirous to force the Czar to make Peace with the Enemy,

Enemy, and almoſt the whole Camp threatened a general Revolt. *John Baſilowitz* found himſelf under a Neceſſity of diſſembling with them. He was willing to carry *Caſan*, becauſe he was perſuaded, that on the Reduction of that Fortreſs, from whence he could keep the *Tartars* in Awe, depended his Conqueſt of the reſt of the Country, inhabited by this powerful People. However, that he might not fall into the Hands of his Enemies, he was obliged to do what his Army would have him; he raiſed the Siege, and made a fine Retreat. Being returned to *Moſcow*, he determined to puniſh the Mutineers in ſuch a Manner, that none afterwards ſhould dare to follow their Example.

He aſſembled the People, to whom he gave a ſhort Account of the Expedition, and ended by aſſuring them, that he had the greateſt Confidence in his *Ruſſians*, and that having remarked their Jealouſy on his having intruſted the Guard of his Perſon to Strangers, he was reſolved to diſband them: And thereupon formed a Guard of two thouſand Muſqueteers, choſen from among the *Ruſſian* Troops, which he called *Apriſnes*. He gave them to underſtand, that he was reſolved to reward thoſe who had behaved well in the Expedition to *Caſan*, and ordered, according to the Cuſtom of the Country, a publick Feaſt, to which he invited all the Officers and great Men of the Army. He had kept an exact Liſt of all thoſe who had excited or favoured the Revolt, and diſtributed among them Robes of black and red Satin. After the Repaſt, he made a Speech to the whole

Company, praiſing the Fidelity of ſome, and blaming the Inſolence and Diſobedience of others; ſhewing them how far he had extended his Patience and his Clemency, and at length declared, that he would make an Example of the Culpable: Whereupon he immediately delivered thoſe, to whom he had given the black Robes, to the Perſons appointed to execute his Orders, and puniſh them to the utmoſt Severity. Some were hanged, ſome quartered, others had their Heads cut off, and others were drowned. The Soldiers were decimated, and a horrible Slaughter was made among them.

AFTER this Execution the Czar employed all his Care in making new Levies. And as he was a Prince of a moſt unaccountable Caſt of Mind, he took very extraordinary Methods, among which, one odd Whim is related of him, That he came one Day to his *Diack*, or principal Secretary, and gave him a formal Petition, deſiring him to have the Goodneſs to make ready two hundred thouſand Men and Arms, by ſuch a particular Time, named in his Petition, and he ſhould be thankful to him, and pray for his Health; and ſo ſubſcribed himſelf, *Thy humble Servant*, Jocky *of* Moſcua.

THE *Diack* knew too well the Danger of not granting his Maſter's Petition, and made all the Speed he could to raiſe the Men required. The Czar, in the mean Time, took ſeveral foreign Officers into his Pay from *Poland*, *Germany*, and *Scotland*, whom he cloathed in an handſome Manner, and well inſtructed in his military Diſcipline. He formed conſiderable

derable Magazines of Powder, Ball, and all Sorts of Arms and Ammunition. The *Wolga* was covered with long and flat-bottomed Boats, and he immediately entered into a new Campaign, and was ſeen under the Ramparts of *Caſan*, before they could have News in that Town of his Departure. This Expedition was more ſucceſsful than the laſt. The Place was battered with ſo much Vigour, that it was carry'd at the firſt Attack, and all the Provinces came to implore Mercy of the Victor, who ſeized on every Place, and divided the Lands and the Spoil among thoſe who had ſerved well. CASAN *taken.*

THE *Wolga*, which from its Source to the City of *Caſan* runs from the Weſt to the Eaſt, forms an Angle there, and, on a ſudden, turns its Courſe to the South, going the ſame Way on for near a thouſand Werſts; and then, after having formed ſeveral large Iſlands, falls into the *Caſpian-Sea:* At forty-five Werſts from its Mouth is found the Iſland of *Delgoi*, wherein is the large City of *Aſtracan*, which, at the Time we are ſpeaking of, was the Capital of the *Nogay Tartars*, who had ſent powerful Succours to the Aſſiſtance of the *Tartars* of *Caſan*, their Allies, which was what now drew upon them the Arms of his Czarian Majeſty; beſides, that their City being extremely rich, he hoped to find in it wherewithal to reimburſe him the Expences of the War. He communicated his Deſign to no one; but as ſoon as he had ſettled a Governor in *Caſan*, and given neceſſary Orders for repairing the Outworks, he made his

Army decamp, and conducted them with great Speed to *Aſtracan*.

NOTHING can be more agreeable than the Country upon the Borders of the *Wolga*; this River, like the *Nile*, overflowing regularly once a Year, renders the Country ſurpriſingly fertile, which abounds in all the Neceſſaries of Life.

As ſoon as the Army was within Sight of the Walls of this great City, which is the Staple of all the People who trade by the Way of the *Caſpian-Sea*, *Tartars*, *Moguls*, *Perſians*, and *Armenians*; the Czar flying among his Men, from Rank to Rank, declared to them, that it was there they were to receive the Reward of all the Pains they had been at in the Campaign; and that the Riches of *Aſtracan* were their own, if they had Courage enough to lay hold of them. This ſhort Speech was received with Acclamations of Joy by all his People; and the Czar, to make the beſt of the Diſpoſition they were then in, led his Troops up immediately to the Town. The *Tartars*, gathering together in great Confuſion, made at firſt ſome Shew of Reſiſtance; but were ſoon obliged to yield to the ſuperior Force of the *Ruſſians*. The City was taken and plundered, and every Man was killed who was found with Arms in his Hand; thoſe who eſcaped the Fury of the Soldiers, the Czar commanded to renounce Mahometaniſm, to embrace the Chriſtian Religion, and be baptized; and if any refuſed, they were thrown into the River and drowned. A hopeful Way of making Proſelytes! and ſhorter,

ASTRACAN *taken.*

ſhorter, tho' not ſo likely to convince Men of their Errors as the more powerful Force of Reaſon.

AFTER this double Conqueſt, *John Baſilowitz* thought there would be nothing difficult for him to undertake. He appointed the *Knez Zerebrinoff* Governor of *Aſtracan*, and cauſed himſelf to be acknowledged Emperor of the *Tartars*, which, as we ſhall ſee hereafter, drew upon him a War with the *Turks*, the Sultan *Selim* having formed a Deſign to go to *Aſtracan*, to wipe out the Stain that *Timur-Beck* had brought upon the *Ottoman* Race, by the Captivity of *Bajazet*.

IT was in the thirteenth Year of the Reign of *John Baſilowitz*, viz. *Anno* 1553, and the Year after the taking of *Aſtracan*, that the *Engliſh* landed in *Ruſſia*, and were the firſt Strangers who diſcovered any Paſſage to that Country. Which was in the following Manner: In the Reign of Queen *Mary* * three Ships were fitted out from *England*, at the publick Charge, for the Diſcovery of the North-Eaſt Paſſage to *China*, and the *Indies*; they were put under the Command of Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, who, departing from the *Thames*, ſailed to the *North-Cape*, where one of his Ships left him, and returned home. The other two Ships being ſeparated, Sir *Hugh*, proceeding farther Northward, diſcovered that Part of *Greenland*, ſince called by the *Dutch*, *Spitzberg*; but the Severity of the Cold obliging him to return to the Southward, he was forced, by bad Weather, into the River *Arzina*, in *Muſcovite Lapland*, from

* Burchett's *Naval Hiſtory*, Page 341.

whence being not able to come out, he was found there the next Spring frozen to Death, with all his Ship's Company, having the Notes of his Voyage, and his laſt Will, lying before him, whereby it appeared, that he lived till *January*; but *Richard Chancellour*, in the third Ship, with better Succeſs, in the mean Time, entered *Wardhuys*, where he waited for ſome Time for his Companions, to no Purpoſe, uncertain whether they were loſt, or driven farther by Streſs of Weather. He held a Council on what he ſhould do, whether to return or purſue his Voyage: Whatever Danger might be in the laſt, every one agreed to it, that they might not ſeem to have leſs Courage than their Captain. They therefore ſet Sail, and, in a few Days, found themſelves in a Sea where they could no longer perceive any Night: This Ship wandering about, in a ſhort Time, entered into a large Bay or Gulph. Here they caſt Anchor in Sight of Land, and, while they were examining the Coaſt, they diſcovered a Fiſhing-Boat. *Chancellour*, getting into his Sloop, went towards it, but the Fiſhermen took to Flight; he followed them, and overtaking them, ſhewed them ſuch Civilities, that being unaccuſtomed to, it conciliated their Affections to him, and they carry'd him to the Place, where at preſent is the famous Port of St. *Michael Archangel*. Theſe Fiſhermen immediately ſpread thro' all the Coaſts an Account of the Arrival of the Strangers, and the People came from ſeveral Parts to ſee them, and aſk Queſtions of them; they examined the other, in their Turn, and found,

that

that the Country where they were was *Ruſſia*, governed by the mighty Emperor *John Baſilowitz*; they learnt alſo, that News had been already ſent expreſs to this Prince, to inform him of their Arrival, and to receive his Orders concerning them; at length, at the End of a few Days, they had Guides given to them; and *Chancellour*, with ſome of his People, was conducted to *Moſcow*, where he had very ſoon an Audience of the Emperor, whoſe Court and Riches had in them a Magnificence beyond any thing he could have imagined. He found *John Baſilowitz* diſtinguiſhed in Majeſty from an hundred and fifty Boyars or Senators who encompaſſed his Throne: There was hardly any Thing to be ſeen in his great Hall but Gold and precious Stones; and in another, where the Czar invited him to a ſumptuous Repaſt, all was of Silver, except the Buffet, in the Middle, in the Form of a large Pyramid, cover'd with Veſſels of Gold, of ſuch a prodigious Size, that the Buffet ſeemed to bend beneath the Weight of them: Here was placed the Hydromel, Wines, and ſtrong Liquors, for the Czar's own Uſe. The favourable Reception that *Chancellour* met with, was ſuch as encouraged him to make a ſecond Voyage hither, in the fourth Year of Queen *Mary*, *Anno* 1557, when he brought over with him an Ambaſſador from the Czar, with Preſents to the Queen, and an Invitation to ſettle a Trade to thoſe Parts; but the Ship was caſt away on the Coaſt of *Scotland*, where *Chancellour*, in ſaving the Ambaſſador, was himſelf unfortunately drowned.

BUT to return: We have ſeen before, that the Grand General of *Livonia*, *Walter Plettenberg*, had made a Truce for fifty Years, with the Czar *Baſile Iwanowitz*, at the Beginning of the ſixteenth Century. This was punctually obſerved on both Sides; but the *Livonians* were not the more at Eaſe for it. *Plettenberg* had obtained the Dominion of *Livonia* from the Grand Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order, who reſided in *Pruſſia*, by an Agreement with *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, who yielded the Sovereignty to him, and diſcharged him from the Oath by which the Grand Generals of *Livonia* obliged themſelves to a Dependence on the Grand Maſter. After this Convention was paſſed, *Plettenberg* cauſed Money to be coined in his own Name, and obtained from the Emperor *Charles* V. the Right of a Seat and Vote in the Diet of the Empire. The Year following, the Reformation began to be eſtabliſhed in *Livonia*, where *William* of *Brandenbourg*, Archbiſhop of *Riga*, publickly received it, *Plettenberg* died in the Year 1535.

THE Affairs of *Livonia* now began to change their Face, the Militia was no longer exerciſed, no Army, either of Natives or Foreigners, was maintained; the publick Revenues were diverted to the Uſe of the Knights and their Relations, to that of the Biſhops and Canons; beſides, in the Aſſembly of the States, every Province refuſed to contribute to the publick Stock, under Pretence of ſeveral Privileges.

DURING the Time that the Truce continued with *Ruſſia*, the Czar had taught his Soldiers the Art of War, and had heaped together

gether a vaſt Quantity of Arms and Ammunition of all Kinds, with a Deſign to ſubdue *Livonia*, and, by that Means, to extend his Empire from *Aſia* to the *Baltick Sea*. The Truce being at an End, he ſent to the Biſhop of *Dorpt*, to demand the Tribute which his Predeceſſors had uſed to pay him. The Biſhop, and the Grand Maſter, *Henry Galen*, ſent an Ambaſſador to *Moſcow*, to renew the Peace for fifteen Years, which was done, but on Condition, that certain *Greek* Churches ſhould be rebuilt, and that the Differences between *Ruſſia* and *Livonia* ſhould be determined in three Years, eſpecially with Reſpect to the Tribute. The *Livonians* promiſed every thing, but performed nothing: And the Grand Maſter perceiving the Preparations the *Ruſſians* were making, ſent to deſire Succours from *Sigiſmund*, King of *Poland*, and *Guſtavus Vaſa*, King of *Sweden*, who both aſſured him they would aſſiſt him. In the mean Time *Livonia* was deſolated by Civil Wars.

THE Czar, who had Spies on all Sides, being informed of all that paſſed, and not willing to draw too many Enemies upon him at once, left the *Livonians* at Quiet, pretending a religious Obſervance of the laſt Treaty, and fell, all on a ſudden, with a formidable Army, upon *Finland*, under Pretence that King *Magnus Ladiſlaus* having formerly promiſed the *Ruſſians* a Part of that Province, without delivering it to them, they were reſolved to do themſelves Juſtice. *Guſtavus* ſent to demand of the *Poles* and *Livonians* the ſame Aſſiſtance that he had generouſly offered

them when they were afraid of being attacked; and they made him believe they would come into the Field; wherefore he immediately paſſed the Streights of *Aland* with a Body of good Troops; he found *Wybourg* beſieged; but, at his Approach, the Enemy raiſed the Siege, and retired, ſetting Fire to all the Places they paſſed thro'. *Guſtavus* purſued them as far as *Kexholm* and *Notebourg*: But neither the *Livonians* nor *Polanders* appeared. *Guſtavus* having expected them to no Purpoſe, and having driven from his Dominions the Enemy who deſired Peace, he granted it, and then returned to *Stockholm*, leaving his faithleſs Allies expoſed to all the Ills with which they were threatened by the irritated and diſappointed *Ruſſians*.

THE Czar ſoon repaired the Loſſes he had ſuſtained in *Carelia*; and before the Seaſon arrived of going into the Field, he ſent again to the Biſhop of *Dorpt*, and the Grand Maſter of *Livonia*, to demand the Execution of the laſt Treaty. Theſe ſent a ſolemn Embaſſy to *Moſcow*, with private Inſtructions to make Peace, whatever it coſt. The Ambaſſadors were charged with rich Preſents for the Czar, who admitted them to a publick Audience; and after having reproached them for their Lightneſs and domeſtick Diviſions, liſtened to their Propoſitions, and granted them Peace, on Condition, that they ſhould diſband ſix *German* Regiments, which were ſtill in *Livonia*; and, that they ſhould pay him forty thouſand Crowns, without reckoning a thouſand Ducats of Gold that the Biſhop of *Dorpt* was to pay him every Year. The Ambaſſa-

dors conſented to all, and retired; but they were ſcarce got home to their own Houſe, before they ſaw the Czar's Officers, who came to them to receive the forty thouſand Crowns. They excuſed themſelves, as not having ſuch a Sum ready, but promiſed the Payment of it as ſoon as they could have Remittances from *Wenden*. The Czar imagining they intended to deceive him again, was reſolved to revenge himſelf on them; wherefore inviting them to a Banquet, the Table was ſerved with covered Diſhes, which, when they were uncovered, were all empty; then riſing from the Table, he told them, he would go and receive the forty thouſand Crowns himſelf.

He then ordered them Guides, who being inſtructed to lead them a great Way about, and the Army ſetting out immediately on their March, they were at the Foot of the Ramparts of *Nienbuyſen* before the Ambaſſadors return'd. *Sigalei*, a *Tartar* Prince, who commanded this Army, committed all Sorts of Cruelties, ſparing nothing, either ſacred or prophane, throughout the whole Dioceſe of *Dorpt*, where he arrived in the Depth of Winter, a few Days before the Feaſt of *Epiphany*, which is the 6th Day of *January*. This Army lived for forty Days at Diſcretion in this diſtreſſed Country, from *Nienbuyſen* to *Narva*, from whence they retired, and in that Time laid every Place waſte, maſſacred, without Mercy, all the Children that were under twelve Years of Age, and all that were older, were ſold as Slaves to the *Tartars*.

The States on this Occaſion aſſembled at *Wenden*, where, after many Debates, it was reſolved,

reſolved, that they ſhould deſire a Suſpenſion of Arms of the Czar for four Months, and in that Time, that they ſhould ſend an Embaſſy to him with ſixty or ſeventy thouſand Crowns to buy a Peace, which, though very burdenſome to them to purchaſe at that Rate, would be ſtill better than War, in their preſent Circumſtances.

AT the Extremity of *Livonia*, on the Frontiers of *Ingria*, is the great and ſtrong City of *Narva*, which is ſeparated only by a River of the ſame Name, from another Fortreſs, built in the Year 1462, by the Czar *John Baſilowitz* the *Victorious*, and to which he gave the Name of *Iwanagorod*. The Czar had in this Fortreſs a Gariſon of three thouſand Men: The *Livonians* had, on their Side, a good Gariſon in *Narva*. While the Ambaſſadors were on the Road, ſome raſh Fellows, from the Top of a Tower, perceiving a Company of *Ruſſians* walking in *Iwanagorod*, diſcharg'd two Culverins at them loaded with Bullets; the reſt of the *Livonians*, who were on the Ramparts and the Out-works, ſuppoſing the Truce was at an End, levelled their Cannon, and made ſome Diſcharges in their Turn: Several *Ruſſians* were killed; and the Commandant immediately diſpatched an Expreſs to the Czar, to inform him in how baſe a Manner the *Livonians* had violated the Truce. The Ambaſſadors arriving ſome Time after this Expreſs, were admitted to an Audience; but it was only to be reproached with the vile Behaviour of their Countrymen; after which they received Orders to depart with Speed, and carry back their Money with them: The Czar

Czar ſoon followed in Perſon, at the Head of his Army, and laid Siege to the City of *Narva*, which he took in eight Days; the Caſtle indeed held out ſomewhat longer, but it was only till the commanding Officers could obtain a Capitulation. The Surrender of this Place drew on the Ruin of all the Towns and Caſtles within fifteen Miles about it. NARVA *taken.*

THE Czar did not ſtop here: As ſoon as the fine Weather came, that is in the Month of *June*, he ſent *Sigalei* with four-ſcore thouſand Men into the Biſhoprick of *Dorpt*, with Orders to take the famous Fortreſs of *Nienhuyſen*, where the *Ruſſians* had formerly received ſo ſignal a Diſgrace. *Nienhuyſen* held out longer than *Narva*, and gave Time to the Grand General to make ſome faint Endeavours to bring together a Body of five and twenty hundred Horſe, which he cauſed to advance as far as *Kiriepe*, a Caſtle belonging to the Biſhop of *Dorpt*, with Deſign to attack the *Ruſſians*; nevertheleſs nothing was done; but the Grand General paſſed his Time during the Siege in a ſcandalous Indolence in his Camp; and when he knew that the Fortreſs had capitulated, he plundered, and ſet Fire himſelf to the Caſtle of the Biſhop, his Ally, and then took to Flight with all the Speed he could. Thirty thouſand *Ruſſians*, after the Taking of *Nienhuyſen*, ſpread themſelves over the Biſhoprick of *Dorpt*, where they put every Place under Contribution, not to ſay, that they ruined all thoſe who had already ſubmitted to the Czar.

THE greateſt Part of the Families that were free, had already retired to *Revel*, when they

they ſoon found the Town block'd up by a Camp of the Enemy, which conſiſted but of ſix thouſand Men: The Chancellor of the Biſhoprick made a Sally out at the Head of a numerous Company of the Nobility, to go, as was ſaid, to reconnoitre the Enemy; but they all meanly abandoned their Country to go into a Place of Safety. The Burghers, ſeeing themſelves thus forſaken, were willing to ſubmit and acknowledge the Czar for their Sovereign, when they found all the Avenues to the Town were ſtopt up. The Biſhop and ſome of the Militia, with the Canons, would have defended the Place; ſo that the Town was all on a ſudden divided into two Factions: The *Ruſſian* General being inform'd of this, ſhut them up ſtill cloſer, when at length the Burgo-maſter ſent to know on what Conditions he would receive the Town under the Dominion of the Czar; *Sigalei*, like a good Politician, made a golden Bridge for the Enemy to come over, he allowed them very advantageous Terms, eſpecially as they promiſed him at the ſame Time, that the Biſhop ſhould deliver up to him the Fortreſs of *Valkena*; but at the Return of the Deputies, the Party in the laſt Place that oppoſed this Reſolution, revolted, and would reſiſt to the laſt Extremity: *Sigalei*, to preſerve the Town and ſpare his Soldiers, propoſed to them, that he would force no one to take an Oath to the Czar; and for thoſe who were deſirous to retire, they might do it with all Security; but if they rejected this Propoſition, he would liſten to no other, and give Quarter to none. About four hundred Perſons went out of the Town,

Town, Eccleſiaſticks, Women and Children, who retired to *Revel*, eſcorted the beſt Part of the Way by a Detachment, with *Sigalei* himſelf at the Head of it, to prevent any Wrong being done them, contrary to the Promiſe he had given: So falſe is it, that the *Ruſſians* treated them with Cruelty, as ſome have reported.

THESE were the Beginnings of the War, which the *Ruſſians* declared with *Livonia*, which laſted above twenty Years, and was the Occaſion of thoſe Alterations that happened in this fine Province, and the Extinction of the Order of *Teutonick* Knights in thoſe Parts: When this War began, *William* of *Furſtemberg* was Grand Maſter in *Livonia*. After the Taking of *Dorpt*, ſeeing it was impoſſible to ſave the Country out of the Hands of the *Ruſſians*, eſpecially as ſuch Diſcord reigned among the People, and between them and the Biſhops, he reſigned the Grand Maſterſhip intirely to his Coadjutor *Gothard Kettler*, who was of an ancient and moſt noble Family in the Duchy of *Berg*: He was Grandſon of *Gothard Kettler* and *Margaret* of *Batenberg*, Son of *Gothard Kettler* and *Sibylla* of *Neſſelrod*, and Brother to *William*, Biſhop of *Munſter* in 1556. The Change of their Maſter changed nothing in their Affairs: They ſought for Succours on all Sides, and receiv'd every where many Promiſes, but nothing elſe. The *Ruſſians* returned the Year following, continued their Diſorders, and beſieged * *Felin*, where

* *This Fortreſs is ſituated in the Centre of* Livonia, *upon the River* Fela, *between* Dorpt *and* Pernaw, *at ſome few Miles Diſtance from the Lake* Werezer, *in that Part of the Country called* Eſthonia.

where was, at that Time, the late Grand Maſter *William* of *Furſtemberg*, who was reſolved to defend himſelf; but the Gariſon mutiny'd, and delivered up the Place to the Beſiegers, who carried *Furſtemberg* to *Moſcow* in Triumph. There was found a great Quantity of Ammunition in this Fortreſs, eſpecially of Cannon, which the Grand Maſter had got together at a great Expence.

DURING theſe Tranſactions *Guſtavus Vaſa*, the King of *Sweden*, died, and *Eric* XIV. his eldeſt Son, ſucceeded him; a weak and unſettled Prince, always ready to form Projects, but never to put any in Execution. *Magnus*, the Son of *Chriſtiern* III. King of *Denmark*, and Brother to *Frederick* II. arrived at this Time in *Livonia*, to take Poſſeſſion of the Biſhopricks of *Pilten*, *Oeſel* and *Hapzel*, which his Brother had bought to make an Appenage for him, and which, having embraced *Lutheraniſm*, had been ſecularized. In the mean Time, there was no Appearance of obtaining any Succours from the neighbouring States; but the *Livonians* were upon the Point of ſeeing themſelves more ravaged by the *Ruſſians* than ever, ſince beſides *Narva*, *Dorpt* and *Nienbuyſen*, *Felin* had opened to them an Entrance into the very Heart of the Province: But at length theſe poor People were offered the Aſſiſtance of *Sigiſmund*, King of *Poland*, and *Eric*, King of *Sweden*, on Condition that they ſhould put themſelves entirely under their Protection, with this Difference, that the *Poles* demanded all *Livonia* to be annexed to their Crown, whereas the *Swedes* would content themſelves with *Revel* and ſome Lands in *Eſthonia*.

thonia. The Grand Maſter *Gothard Kettler* agreed with the firſt; but the People of *Revel* fearing, that at the Return of the *Ruſſians*, they ſhould undergo the ſame Fate with *Narva* and *Dorpt*, cloſed with *Sweden* upon very honourable Terms.

THIS Diviſion obliged the Grand Maſter, the Archbiſhop of *Riga*, and the Nobility, to haſten the Concluſion of their Treaty with *Poland*, conſenting that all *Livonia* ſhould be annexed to that Crown, on Condition of the King's obtaining the Emperor's Remiſſion of their Oath of Fidelity; that he ſhould maintain the Proteſtant Religion in *Livonia*, and confirm to the People all their Rights and Privileges, eſpecially thoſe of the Nobility; and that the Grand Maſter *Gothard Kettler* ſhould have for himſelf and his Heirs Male, in Perpetuity, the Duchies of *Courland* and *Semigal*, as Fiefs ariſing from *Poland*. Laſtly, it was agreed on both Sides, that they ſhould endeavour to recover and re-unite to the Province all that had been ſeparated from it. This Treaty was ſworn to in the Diet of *Wilna*, on the 28th of *November* 1561. The Grand Maſter and principal Knights immediately quitted the Habit and other Enſigns of the Order, and he received the Inveſtiture of his new Dukedom. Thus ended this famous Order, which had been maintained in *Livonia* above three hundred Years.

THE Province in this Manner was divided among four Powers; the Czar held one Part, another was put under the Protection of *Sweden*, *Poland* pretended to the Whole, and the Duke *Magnus* of *Holſtein*, in Quality of Biſhop

of

of *Pilten*, &c. challenged alſo a Part of it. Thus, inſtead of protecting the Country, it was to fall to his Lot, who could uſurp the Whole. All the Powers of the North were therefore engaged in this War; Duke *Magnus* and the King of *Poland* obliged the King of *Denmark* to attack *Sweden*; this Crown, on the other Hand, made a Truce for two Years with the Czar, who would willingly have had *Eſthonia* and *Revel* comprehended in it, where had formerly been the Staple of Commerce between the *Ruſſians* and the People of *Lubeck*, and which the Czar had tranſferred to *Narva*. The King of *Sweden*, *Eric* XIV. and *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, King of *Poland*, both ſent Troops thither; one into *Eſthonia*, and the other into *Lettia*. This was the Aggreſſor; the other endeavouring only to preſerve the Country that had thrown itſelf under his Protection. The *Ruſſian* Troops, on their Side, did not ceaſe their Hoſtilities, but continued to gain Ground.

THE Czar, *John Baſilowitz*, being now a Widower, demanded *Catharine*, the Siſter of *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, King of *Poland*, in Marriage, which the *Poles* would not conſent to, unleſs he agreed to eſtabliſh the Succeſſion to the Throne of *Ruſſia*, on the Children by this Marriage, excluding thoſe he had by the firſt Ventre. The Czar refuſing to be guilty of ſuch a Piece of Injuſtice, and eſpecially as his Son *John* was a Youth of great Hopes, the *Polanders* made a Jeſt of him, and in a Manner extremely inſolent, ſending him, inſtead of the Princeſs, a Mare, dreſſed up in the Attire of a Woman of Quality. It is

eaſy

eaſy to imagine how a Prince, naturally of a haughty Temper, received an Affront of this Kind. He took a dreadful Oath upon the Spot, that he would have a bloody Revenge, and take no Reſt till he had accompliſhed it.

THE War in *Livonia* furniſhed him with a Pretence to have a conſtant Army on Foot, and continually to make new Levies, and other neceſſary Preparations; for which Reaſon, it was eaſy for him to get a formidable Body of Forces together; but this was not enough; he was deſirous to overcome without ſtriking a Blow, wherefore he joined Cunning to Force. He ſent an Expreſs to the King of *Poland* with Letters, in which he expreſſed the Deſire he had of terminating the Differences between them, which had been occaſioned by the Governors in their Frontiers, and to this End required he would ſend Ambaſſadors to him with full Inſtructions. The King and the Senate of *Poland* ſuffered themſelves to be drawn in by this Lure, and, for this Embaſſy, named three Grandees of the Kingdom, who were ordered to depart immediately: And whilſt they advanced, on one Side, towards *Moſcow*, the *Ruſſian* Army entered into *Lithuania* on the other.

THE Palatinate of *Poloczk* is in the moſt Northern Part of *Lithuania*, and on the Confines of the Duchy of *Pleſkow*. The Country is wild and full of Woods, where is the ſtrong Town of *Poloczk*, and that of *Wielicx*. The firſt is ſituated upon the *Duna*, at the Confluence of the *Polota*, which runs thro' the Town, and waters the Foſſes. As this Town is the moſt advanced towards the Fron-

tier, nothing had been neglected to put it in a Condition of reſiſting the Enemy. The *Ruſſians* had made ſeveral Attempts, at different Times, to become Maſters of it; laying Claim to it, as having once belonged to the Dukes of *Novogorod Weliki*, who had conquered it. The Czar *John Baſilowitz*, whom the greateſt Difficulties could not diſcourage, form'd a Deſign of beginning his Vengeance on the *Poles*, for the Inſult they had offer'd him, by ſacking this Town. He came very near it with three hundred thouſand *Ruſſians* and *Tartars*. The Town had a good Gariſon in it, who wanted neither Cannon nor any Kind of Ammunition. At the Approach of the *Ruſſians* they put themſelves on their Defence, and all the People in the Place, except the Women and very old Men, aſſiſted in carrying their Artillery on the Ramparts, from whence they fired furiouſly on the Enemies, to prevent their Approach. The Czar, on his Side, would not give them Time to fortify themſelves, but harraſſed them inceſſantly; and when they expected to be beſieged in Form, the Czar took a ſhorter Way: He ſent a Trumpeter into the Town to tell them, if they did not ſurrender, he would ſpare none of them; that he had an Army numerous enough to give Aſſault upon Aſſault; that they had no Succours to expect; and that if they would ſubmit, he would ſhew them Mercy.

His Courage was known, nor were they ignorant of his Severity; wherefore the Gariſon and the Burghers being diſpirited at once, opened their Gates to the Conqueror, fear-

fearing that otherwiſe, after he had burnt their Suburbs, he might plunder the Town, and uſe them with Cruelty. All the *Poliſh* Soldiers had Liberty to retire where they would; the *Ruſſians* and *Lithuanians* were made Priſoners; the *Jews* were ordered to be baptized, and all who refuſed, were thrown into the *Duna*. The Booty got in this Place was very conſiderable.

JOHN BASILOWITZ, by this Conqueſt, found himſelf able to carry Fire and Sword into the very Heart of *Lithuania*, for there was no Place that could obſtruct him from *Minſki* to *Wilna*. Several Detachments of his Army ſpread themſelves from one Side of the Country to the other, carry Deſolation with them where-ever they went, and they would have gone farther, if the Diet, which was then aſſembled at *Peterkow*, had not ſent an Ambaſſador to the Czar to inform him, that they were aſſembled to elect a Succeſſor to their King, who had no Children; and that they might, if he approved of it, let their Choice fall upon him, or one of his Sons. *John Baſilowitz* ſuffering himſelf to be deceived by this Hope, repaſſed the *Duna*, and retired into his own Dominions, where King *Sigiſmund Auguſtus* had found Means to form a terrible Conſpiracy againſt him.

THE greateſt Part of the *Ruſſian* Nobles had engaged themſelves in this Plot, the Deſign of which was to take from the Czar both his Crown and his Life, and put the Empire of *Ruſſia* under the Protection of the King of *Poland*. *Sigiſmund* looked upon *John Baſilowitz* as a Tyrant; but was his own Behaviour

to be commended, who excited his Subjects to rebel againſt their lawful Sovereign, and become his Aſſaſſins? A Procedure ſo ſcandalous, was enough to tarniſh the Glory of the greateſt Hero, and render his Name odious. As to the Plot, it had the Fate of moſt others, it was diſcovered by ſome of the People concerned in it, the Conſpirators were abandoned, and even diſowned by the Prince who ſet them to work, and the Czar took a horrible Vengeance on them.

INFORMED of the Number of the Conſpirators, and their Names, he pretended an Inclination to renounce the Government, and retire into a Cloyſter; he even went out of *Moſcow*, with ſome of his moſt faithful Counſellors, as far as *Slaboda*, from whence he wrote to the Patriarch, that he was reſolved to go and hide himſelf in the Foreſts, and the moſt remote Parts of *Ruſſia*, and would never more appear among his unworthy Subjects, who had nothing to do but to chuſe a Prince, whom they could obey, and with whom they and all their Country might be deſtroyed.

THIS News was no ſooner ſpread abroad, but the People, in a Conſternation, flock'd together from every Part of the City; the Senate aſſembled, and immediately deputed the Archbiſhop of *Novogorod*, the Biſhop of *Suſdal*, the Abbot of *Troitſki*, and ſome of the principal Boyars, to wait upon his Majeſty, who, after being reproached by him with the Perfidy and Treaſon of his Subjects, without naming any of them, they obtained a Promiſe from him, that he would return to *Moſcow*,

Moſcow, but it was upon Condition, that they ſhould take a new Oath of Fidelity and Obedience to him. He augmented his Guard, and afterwards began to puniſh the Conſpirators of all Ranks, with an unprecedented Severity; for he not only cauſed them all to be put to Death with the moſt exquiſite Tortures, but purſued his Revenge againſt all that belonged to them, Women, Children, Servants, and even brute Animals, going ſo far as to poiſon the very Fiſh in the Ponds, upon the Eſtates of ſome of the Conſpirators. Whole Towns were involved in this monſtrous Revenge, ſuch as *Novogorod-Weliki*, *Pleſkow*, *Tweer*, *Narva*. He ſurpriſed *Novogorod*, and cauſed a Body of *Tartars* to enter the Town to prevent the Citizens from ſaving themſelves; and theſe Troops immediately ſecured all the Avenues, ſo that no one could eſcape. The People frighted, as ſoon as they ſaw theſe Life-Guards of their Sovereign, ran to hide themſelves, but to no Purpoſe. *Skrutow*, who had the Execution of this barbarous Buſineſs in Charge, gave a Signal, when the bloody Tragedy was to begin, to his Men, who ſpared neither Age nor Sex. Men and Beaſts were cut to Pieces, Virgins deflowered, Children pierced thro' with Halberts, and Fire being ſet to the four Corners of the City at once, made a dreadful funeral Pile.

SEVEN hundred Women, with their unhappy Children, were thrown into the River *Wokhow*, and becauſe they begg'd Time of their Executioners but to make a ſhort Prayer to Heaven, they were treated with the more

Barbarity, as if they diſputed the Orders of their Sovereign. The principal Citizens were hanged at the Windows of their own Houſes, and the Senators were ſtrangled in the Senate Houſe. The Prieſts could find no Sanctuary at their Altars; neither their Prayers, Tears nor Groans, neither Religion nor any Reſpect to holy Things, could ſuſpend their Fate, or ſtop the Fury of their Murderers.

AFTER having thus ſeverely puniſhed *Novogorod*, he ordered his Troops to *Narva*, where ſome of thoſe of the firſt Place had ſecured a Part of their Effects. They began with plundering the Town, and afterwards all the People belonging to it, Men, Women and Children, were treated with the ſame Barbarity as thoſe of *Novogorod*. The Tyrant went next to *Pleſkow*, plundering every Place in his Way, When he arrived in this fine City, under Pretence of making ſome Regulations, he aſſembled the Senate, and while he exerciſed his Cruelty there, the Soldiers maſſacred the richeſt of the Citizens.

TAKING his Route to return to *Moſcow*, he arrived at *Tweer*, with a Deſign to have chaſtiſed that Town as he had done the others; but, inſtructed by the Misfortunes of their Neighbours, and fearing the ſame Fate, the People of this Place had ſecured their Effects, and took to Flight. He treated thoſe who remained, in the ſame Manner with the Inhabitants of *Novogorod* and *Pleſkow*. He obliged the Wives of ſome who were fled to diſcover their Treaſure, and ſuſpecting *Loweſick* the moſt faithful of all his Favourites, of having given Notice to the People of *Tweer* to

to ſave themſelves, he gave him the *Knout*, cauſed both his Legs and Arms to be broke, and afterwards ordered him to be impaled alive in the Preſence of the People.

AT his Return to *Moſcow*, he ordered eighteen new Gibbets to be erected at the common Place of Execution, and had all the moſt dreadful Inſtruments of Torture ſet about them. The firſt that he made a publick Example of, on this bloody Theatre, was his Chancellor *John Wiſkow*, and the next his *Great Treaſurer*. Theſe two illuſtrious Perſons were the firſt of two thouſand unfortunate Wretches who periſhed in the moſt cruel Torments. Even his own Brother, *George*, found no more Mercy than the reſt. This Prince was a Perſon of an extraordinary Vigour, both of Mind and Body, handſome in his Perſon, and affable in his Manners, he was eaſy of Acceſs, and had a great Reputation for his Equity and Humanity: In ſhort, he had all the good Qualities of a great Prince, and wanted nothing but a Crown to make him more eſteemed than he was. He knew the imperious Temper and Avarice of his Brother, therefore, that he might give him no Suſpicion, he kept himſelf at a Diſtance from Court, and meddled not with Affairs, only, on ſome Occaſions, he had appeared in the Army, and had rendered Services both to him and the State. At the Time that the Czar puniſhed, with ſo much Severity, all thoſe whom he ſuſpected to have had any Share in the Conſpiracy, even to the ordering two hundred and fifty Gentlemen to be ſtifled in a Moraſs, who were attempting

to make their Eſcape into *Poland*, an infamous Villain took upon him to accuſe Prince *George* of having ſpoken ill of the Czar, his Brother, in his Abſence, and of endeavouring to excite the People to a Revolt, with a View of ſetting himſelf on the Throne. The Czar, upon this, immediately ſent to ſeek his Brother, who, as ſoon as he ſaw the fatal Meſſengers, gueſſed at their Errand, endeavoured to ſave himſelf in the Apartment of his Lady, who, terrified to the laſt Degree, expoſed herſelf to all the Inſults of theſe rude Ruffians, in Hopes of ſcreening her Huſband, but all to no Purpoſe. She ſaw him torn from her Arms, in Spite of all her Tears and Intreaties; and at quitting her, he adviſed her to hide herſelf, with her Children, and moſt valuable Effects, otherwiſe they would ſoon become a Prey to his avaricious Brother.

PRINCE GEORGE no ſooner appeared before the Czar, but he was delivered up to the Executioners, in order to be forced, by Torments, to confeſs a Crime he had not been guilty of. The Prince ſeeing himſelf thus unworthily treated, deſired, at leaſt, to be permitted to ſpeak, and juſtify himſelf; but this was refuſed him: Then lifting up his Hand that had a Chain upon it; Soldiers! ſaid he, behold the Ornaments of a Prince, under whoſe Command you have been led forth to Battle; behold theſe Chains, not put on by the Enemies of our Country, but by yourſelves, you whom I have commanded, you whom I have loaded with Acts of Beneficence; and it is thus I am rewarded. But as Reproaches will avail but little in the preſent

ſent Condition I am, let me intreat one Bounty of you; if *Baſilowitz* thirſts for my Blood, and is determined this Moment to put an End to my Days, it matters not to him which Way I periſh, let me intreat you therefore to ſpare me the Ignominy of the Rack; and if you are aſhamed to lay Hands upon me yourſelves, give me, I beſeech you, a Sword, that I may execute upon myſelf what you have promiſed the Czar to ſee done.

NOT being able to obtain any Favour, he burſt into a Rage, and, looking on the Czar, wiſhed, that Heaven might cauſe his Deſtruction in the ſame Manner that he treated the Innocent. You are already, continued he, covered with the Blood of your Subjects, and I beg the Almighty, that I may be the laſt Victim to your Cruelty; and may thoſe Arms, which are refuſed me, be turned upon yourſelf; and may you ſuffer all thoſe Torments which you undeſervedly inflict on others: And then he ordered the Executioners to diſpatch him. The Czar, hereupon, making a Sign to ſome of his Guards, they threw themſelves, with Sword in Hand, upon the unfortunate Prince, who made no Motion to avoid them, nor gave way to unmanly Tears, or lamentable Groans, but met Death, and met it as a Man who ſcorned to fear it.

THE virtuous Princeſs, his Wife, met with no better Fate; on the News of her Huſband's Execution, ſhe endeavoured to conceal herſelf, accompanied by ſome of her Women; but the Place of her Retreat was ſoon diſcovered, and ſhe delivered herſelf up, demanding only her Life, which had been promiſed her; but the

the cruel Czar had no Regard to his Word, but immediately ſent his Aſſaſſins to put a Woman out of the Way, whoſe Sight muſt have continually reproached him with the Death of his Brother. When ſhe ſaw theſe Butchers coming towards her, ſhe advanced to meet them, being ſupported by two Slaves, and bad them haſten to join a wretched Woman to her beloved Huſband; but they were not even merciful enough to kill her, till after they had dragg'd her thro' the Streets, and then they threw her Body into the River. But let us cloſe this horrid Scene, too ſhocking to be longer dwelt upon; and conſider, that how blameable ſoever this Czar may have been, in carrying his Revenge to ſuch Exceſs, there were ſome Caſes, among ſuch a People as the *Ruſſians* were in thoſe Times, that would not permit their Sovereign, with Safety, to ſhew them any Mercy.

THE Czar believing very juſtly, that he had carry'd Matters too far, endeavoured, or, at leaſt, feigned that he endeavoured to appeaſe the offended Deity; for, on the Feaſt-Day of the Prophet *Elias*, he ſpent ſeveral Hours in the Church, proſtrated at the Foot of the Altar, and even performed the Divine Service in the Veſtments of the Patriarch.

JOHN BASILOWITZ however ſtill continued the War with *Livonia*, and having diſcovered, that not only the Diet of *Poland* had deceived him, but alſo that *Sigiſmund* had made this odious Attempt upon his Life, he cauſed his Troops to re-enter *Lithuania*, to put all to Fire and Sword. He gave the Command of theſe Troops to *Swirſki*, who got his Army to-

together under *Poloczk*. *Nicholas Radziwil*, Palatine of *Troki*, was at *Lukomla*, ſome Miles from thence. The *Ruſſian* General being on the March towards *Ula* Caſtle, in the Palatinate of *Witepſk*, the *Lithuanian* Troops began alſo their March, and both Armies being met on a vaſt Plain, they were immediately ranged in Order of Battle. The *Lithuanians* began the Action; but they were received with ſo much Vigour, that they began to give Way; nevertheleſs, being encouraged by their Generals, they renewed the Attack, and puſhed ſo home upon the *Ruſſians*, that they put them in Diſorder, and obliged them to take to Flight. The *Lithuanians* purſued them for near five Miles, giving Quarter to none, ſo that the Road all along was covered with dead Bodies, of which there were numbered near ten thouſand: Among whom were the General *Swirſki*, and thirty Officers of Diſtinction. A few Weeks after, the Palatine *Radziwil*, who was encamped at *Deſch*, where he expected a Re-inforcement from *Poland*, hearing that a Body of ſixty thouſand *Ruſſians* and *Tartars* were encamped at ſome Leagues Diſtance from him, he ſent four hundred Horſemen to reconnoitre them, with Orders to endeavour to draw them out of their Camp, by flying before them; but this Stratagem had no Succeſs; the *Ruſſians* ſet Fire to their Waggons, and then retired with Precipitation: The *Lithuanians*, who purſued them, took ſome of the leaſt nimble, and the Arms of thoſe who had meanly throw'd them down to be the leſs incumber'd in their Flight.

THE

THE King of *Poland* finding his Conſpiracy had failed, and ſeeing no Means to ſecure his Dominions from the Enterprizes of *John Baſilowitz*, but by raiſing Troubles on another Side, began to practiſe with the *Tartars*, and engaged them to make an Irruption into *Ruſſia*. They gave Ear to the Propoſitions of the *Poles*, but the Succeſs did not anſwer to the Hopes they had given them. The *Tartars* advanced as far as *Reſan*, and immediately retired, being ſatisfy'd with the Booty they got, and the Slaves they carry'd off.

LIVONIA was ſtill the Theatre of the War. *John*, Duke of *Finland*, had depoſed his Brother *Eric*, King of *Sweden*, and taken his Throne in his ſtead. The Czar had maintained a good Correſpondence with *Eric*, before his Fall, and had at *Stockholm* an Ambaſſador with above two hundred Perſons in his Train. There was another, at the ſame Time, from *Sweden* at *Moſcow*. The Deſign of the firſt was not very agreeable to the new King, *John*, for he was contriving Means to carry off his Wife, the Princeſs *Catharine* of *Poland*. We have ſeen before, that the Czar had demanded her in Marriage. He was really in Love with her, and *Eric*, who did not love his Brother, had given the *Ruſſian* Miniſters Hopes, that a favourable Opportunity might be found to take her away, and deliver her to the Czar their Maſter. The *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador continued not long at *Stockholm*, where all the Deſigns of *Eric* were fruſtrated by his Depoſition. The Czar, having no longer any Hopes of his Enterprize, and believing it would not be politick to irritate the new

new King too much, wrote him a very obliging Letter, recalled his Ambaſſador, and ſent a Paſſport to that of *Sweden*.

THE Czar, *John Baſilowitz*, was obliged to act in this Manner, becauſe he was informed, that a conſiderable Armament, then making by the *Turks*, was deſigned againſt him. *Selim*, the Son of *Soliman* the Magnificent, and *Roxelana*, had ſucceeded his Father in the Year 1565. This Prince formed the vaſt Deſign of ſubduing all *Tartary* to wipe off the Diſgrace of the Impriſonment of the Sultan *Bajazet*, who had been defeated, and taken in the Plain of *Ancyra*, by the celebrated *Timur-Beck*, or *Tamerlane*, Great Cham of the *Tartars*. *Selim*, to this End, had made Alliances with ſome Princes who were to ſend him Succours by the *Caſpian* Sea: Thus an Army of three hundred thouſand Men, in which were the Choice of the *Janizaries*, embarked at *Conſtantinople*, happily croſſed the *Black Sea* and the *Palus Mæotis*, and landed at *Azoph*, where were their Magazines and their Rendezvous; in their Way the *Precopian Tartars* had joined this Army with a Reinforcement of forty thouſand Archers.

WITH this vaſt Body of Men they firſt marched towards *Aſtracan*, where the Sultan made his Soldiers hope they would find all the Treaſures of *Armenia*, *Perſia* and *India*, and gave them ſuch a flattering Idea of the Weakneſs of all the Places of the *Tartars*, that they imagined it would be ſufficient only for them to appear before them, to ſubdue and have all theſe great Towns to plunder.

ZEREBRINOW, who commanded for the Czar, was at firſt a little frighted at ſuch a Multitude of Enemies; but he got his *Ruſſians* together with all the Speed he could, to whom he joined as many *Tartars* as was poſſible; he ſent for Succours from the Governor of *Caſan*, and made all neceſſary Diſpoſitions, that he might not be conſtrained to yield, without ſelling the Victory very dear to the Enemies who covered all the Country. But this the Terror, they firſt brought with them, laſted not long; for, at the firſt Encounter, they were diſperſed, and learned to know, that their Softneſs, their Cowardice, their Diſorder, and, in ſhort, the Want of every thing that they expected to have found in abundance in the Country of their Enemy, rendered them fitter to be deſpiſed than capable of giving Fear. The *Ruſſian* General prepared an Ambuſcade for them in a Country which was unknown to them; and when they approached the Town, attacked them with Vigour: Seeing themſelves firſt attacked, where they expected to have found no Reſiſtance, they immediately gave Way, and their great Numbers were a Trouble to them, the one embarraſſing the other; ſo that the Diſorder ſoon became general throughout the whole Army. *Zerebrinow* made the beſt of it, he purſued them and took their Artillery and Baggage; thoſe who had ſtraggled abroad to pillage the Country were cut to Pieces, and the Generals periſhed in endeavouring to rally them. To compleat their Misfortunes, their Allies were not to be found, at the Time appointed, at their Rendezvous, near the Mouth

of the *Wolga*. The *Ruſſians* and their *Tartars* became bold, not to ſay raſh, in Proportion to the Weakneſs and Timidity they found in their Enemies; they followed them on all Sides, and obliged them to make a ſhameful Retreat towards *Azoph*, where they found a new Subject of Sorrow to them, that great City having been almoſt overthrown by the blowing up of the Magazine of Powder. The *Ruſſian* General having no longer any Enemies to contend with, went in Queſt of them, and being informed of the Succours that the *Turks* expected by the *Caſpian Sea*, he thought there wanted but this to make his Triumph compleat, and therefore went againſt them, and ſucceeded ſo well, that the greateſt Part of their Ships were taken with their Proviſions, and the reſt ſunk. Thus *Selim* got nothing from this grand Enterprize but Loſs and Diſgrace; for almoſt all his Troops, that had eſcaped the *Ruſſian* and *Tartarian* Soldiers, periſhed, either by Hunger, or by Storms, in croſſing over the *Black Sea*.

WHEN the Czar received the News of this great Event, a new Embaſſy was juſt arrived at *Moſcow*, from *John* King of *Sweden*, with magnificent Preſents, to ſolicit the Czar to prolong the Truce, that had been made between the two States, that he might have Time to finiſh the War he had with *Denmark*; but King *John* was too ſtraitly ally'd to the King of *Poland* to be favourably liſtened to by *John Baſilowitz*, who, beſides that, had juſt then formed a new Plan to bring all *Livonia* under his Dominion; ſo that the *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors were very ill received, they were

were even arreſted, and put into Priſon, where they were confined as many Years, Days and Hours, as the laſt *Ruſſian* Ambaſſadors had been kept in *Sweden*.

THE Czar found, by Experience, that the *Livonians* had an Averſion to the Dominion of the *Ruſſians*, and that they would more patiently ſubmit to the Government of any *German* Lord. This Reflection made him think of drawing into his Intereſts Duke *Magnus*, Brother to the King of *Denmark*, who, he thought, would be the more eaſily brought to favour his Deſigns, as he was actually at War with *Sweden*. He therefore gave the *Livonians* to underſtand, that he pretended to nothing more than to become their Protector, and that he would yield the Poſſeſſion of their Country to Duke *Magnus*. Such a Propoſition could not fail of pleaſing this young ambitious Prince, eſpecially as the Czar added to it the fine Title of *King of Livonia*. The King of *Denmark*, who, on his Side, immediately conceived Hopes, by this Means, of uniting *Livonia* to *Denmark*, exhorted his Brother to take Advantage of this favourable Diſpoſition of the Czar. *Magnus* therefore ſent Ambaſſadors to *John Baſilowitz* to treat ſeriouſly of the Affair; and having received an agreeable Anſwer, he ſet forward himſelf to attend on the Czar, who received him ſo much the better, as he brought him Aſſurances of ſoon making himſelf Maſter of *Revel*, by the Means of *Nicholas Kurſel*, the *Swediſh* General, who had promiſed to deliver up to him the Caſtle of that important Town.

MAGNUS *made King of* LIVONIA.

THIS

THIS *Kurſel* ſeeing King *John*, his Maſter, embarraſſed in his War with the *Danes*, had raiſed himſelf into a little Tyrant in *Eſthonia*, under Pretence that there was a great deal due to him and his Soldiers; he undertook to make himſelf Maſter of the Caſtle of *Revel*, with a Deſign of getting a large Sum by delivering it up to the *Danes* or the *Ruſſians*. His Enterprize ſucceeded in Part, he entered into the Town, and forced the Gariſon, making *Oxenſtiern*, the Governor, Priſoner with his Wife and Children, and himſelf Maſter of the Caſtle. The Magiſtrates of the Town, who feared ſome Treachery, would have treated with *Kurſel*, who made them no Anſwer, but that he would keep the Place as a Pledge till the King had pay'd him and his Troops. At length he came to an Agreement with them, on Condition that they ſhould give Notice of his Pretenſions to the King of *Sweden*, and that, in the mean Time, he ſhould keep the Caſtle. Things were in this Situation at the Time that he promiſed Duke *Magnus* to deliver up the Place to him; but the *Swediſh* Soldiers having penetrated into his Deſign, reſolved to make themſelves Maſters of the Caſtle. *Nils Dublare*, one of their Captains, gained over ſome of the Gariſon. The Day being come when the Deſign was to be put in Execution, he made the Guard drunk, and entering into the Caſtle, by an obſcure and hidden Way, he cut a Part of the Gariſon in Pieces, took the reſt Priſoners with *Kurſel*, and reſtored *Oxenſtiern* to Liberty. *Kurſel* had afterwards his Head cut off with thoſe of his Faction.

THE Duke *Magnus* received the Title of *King of Livonia*, from the Czar *John Baſilowitz*, on Condition that he ſhould pay him a ſmall annual Tribute, and acknowledge him for his Protector. He added alſo, that he would yield the Poſſeſſion of all *Livonia* to the new King, as ſoon as he had driven out the *Swedes*, againſt whom he would protect him, as well as againſt all his other Enemies, in Quality of his Vaſſal. He promiſed moreover to renew a ſtrict Alliance with the Emperor of the *Romans*, and to ſhew particular Marks of his Favour to all the *Germans*, throughout the whole Extent of his Empire. Afterwards having declared, that he would give this Kingdom to Duke *Magnus* and his Deſcendents of the Male Line, he aſſured him, that in Failure of that, he ſhould have no Succeſſor but of the Houſe of *Holſtein*, or of *Denmark*, and that never any *Ruſſian* ſhould have Juriſdiction or Authority in *Livonia*. And to confirm all theſe fair Promiſes by ſomething that ſeemed real, he gave Orders to ſet at Liberty ſeveral *Germans* who were Priſoners in his Dominions.

MAGNUS did every thing in his Power to gain over the *Livonians*, and particularly thoſe of *Revel*, by promiſing Mountains of Gold, on one Side, and, on the other, by threatening to puniſh thoſe, with the utmoſt Rigour, who ſhould refuſe to ſubmit to him: But the *Livonians* regarded neither his Threats nor his Promiſes, and the Czar was obliged to ſend an Army into *Livonia* to put his new King in Poſſeſſion of the Throne he had given him. Several Conſpiracies, at this Time

Time diſcovered, ſtill kept the Czar at *Moſcow*; where he puniſhed the Culpable with ſuch Severity as might intimidate others. Some Secretaries, and the Czar's Chief Cook, were executed with near two hundred of their Accomplices. The Czar pardoned a greater Number, at the Requeſt of the Inhabitants of *Moſcow*, who, at the Sight of the Preparations, that were made for this Execution, hid themſelves in the lower Parts of their Houſes, from whence they could not be drawn, but by the Voice of the Czar aſſuring them they had nothing more to fear.

SIGISMUND, King of *Poland*, did not ceaſe moving Heaven and Earth againſt the Czar. At length, that the King of *Sweden* might attack him on one Side, while he prepared Enemies to fall upon him elſewhere on the other, he offered his Mediation to make Peace between *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and the City of *Lubeck*. He alſo engaged the Emperor *Maximilian* II. and *Auguſtus*, Elector of *Saxony*, to join with him to terminate this long Quarrel. Conferences were held at *Stetin*, where, after five Months Conteſt, a Peace was concluded, not very advantageous to *Sweden*; the other Enemies, that *Sigiſmund* had ſtirred up againſt the Czar, were the *Tartars*, who re-entered *Ruſſia* in greater Numbers than before, paſſed the *Occa*, and advanced towards *Moſcow*, which, after they had pillaged, they ſet Fire to, and conſumed, in a Moment, above two Thirds of that great City. The *Ruſſian* Armies were all on the Side of *Livonia*, where Duke *Magnus* beſieged *Revel* and *Wittenſtein*. But he had no Succeſs

before either of theſe Places; and after having been beaten in ſeveral Rencounters, he was forced to alter his Meaſures.

THE *Swedes* ſupply'd *Revel* with freſh Proviſions; but as their King, *John*, was full of the Project of re-eſtabliſhing the *Roman Catholick* Religion in *Sweden*, he endeavoured to bring the Czar to liſten to Peace. But this Monarch received his Propoſitions with Pride and Contempt, threatening to go and ravage *Finland*, and ſet at Liberty the unfortunate King *Eric*, his Friend, who was kept cloſe Priſoner at *Abo*. Theſe Menaces made the King take *Eric* out of that Priſon, and tranſport him to *Grypſholm*, and from thence to *Oerbi*, where he ſome Time after put him to Death: And as the King of *Sweden* could not confide in the *Scotch*, who were in his Service, he ſent them into *Livonia*, in which Country, under the Command of *Olaus Ackeſon*, and *Peter de la Gardie*, they did much Miſchief to the *Ruſſians*.

THE Czar himſelf commanded an Army of eighty thouſand Men in *Livonia*, reſolving, if poſſible, to put an End to this War which had continued ſo long, by obliging this obſtinate People to ſubmit to him, by ſome Act of Severity. He took *Wittenſtein*, the Commandant of which he impaled alive, and then roaſted; and of all the *Swedes* and *Livonians*, who fell into his Hands, gave Quarter to none. He treated the Town of *Niewhof* in the ſame Manner; and, after having taken *Kockenhauſen* in *Lettia*, he retired to *Novogorod*, to aſſiſt at the Nuptials of Duke *Magnus* with a Princeſs of the *Ruſſian* Blood. But the

Swedes

Swedes had their Turn in his Abſence; for they fell upon the Troops that were left in *Eſthonia*, *Olaus Ackeſon* having met them at *Lode*, cauſed them to be attacked by his Van-Guard compoſed of *Livonians*; theſe having broke thro' the Battalions of the Enemy, immediately took to Flight, and left thoſe who followed them in the Midſt of the *Ruſſians*; the *Swedes*, who made but ſix hundred Horſe, and ſome hundred Foot, fought with ſo much Bravery againſt ſixteen thouſand *Ruſſians*, that they cut in Pieces ſeven thouſand, put the reſt to Flight, and took a thouſand Waggons with their Baggage. The *Ruſſians* ſoon had their Revenge, for the *Swedes* fleſh'd with this Succeſs, advancing to take *Weſſenberg* and *Felſbourg*, were the greateſt Part cut off, and the others forced to fly.

SIGISMUND, *King of* POLAND, *dies.*

DURING theſe Tranſactions, the King of *Poland*, *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, died; he was ſucceeded by the Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to the King of *France*; but he abandoned both the Crown and the Kingdom, a few Months after, *incognito*, to ſucceed his Brother *Charles* IX. by the Name of *Henry* III. In his ſtead the *Polanders* raiſed to the Throne *Stephen Battori*, Prince of *Tranſilvania*, whoſe Valour had rendered him worthy of the Choice.

HENRY, *Duke of* ANJOU, *choſen in his room; and then* STEPHEN, *Prince of* TRANSILVANIA.

THE Czar could not be brought to reſolve on abandoning his Deſigns on *Livonia*, whatever Inſtances the King of *Sweden* made to engage him to come into a Peace, and whatever Employment the *Tartars* gave him on the other Side, who, grown bold by the Succeſs of their late Invaſion, did not ceaſe to harraſs the *Ruſſian* Troops, and menace the Country

with a new Irruption, ſo that the Czar was obliged to divide his Forces; it is true, that his Troops being better diſciplined, were more capable of great Enterprizes; but he wanted good Generals.

The SWEDES *attempt in vain to ſurpriſe* NARVA.

THE King of *Sweden* made an Attempt upon *Narva*, whither he would have hindered the People of *Lubeck* from tranſporting their Commodities, and, on that Account, took many of their Ships. The *Ruſſians* had no Ships on that Side, and could defend themſelves only from their Ramparts, which they did with ſuch Vigour, that the *Swedes* endeavoured twice, to no Purpoſe, to ſurprize the Town. On the other Hand, the *Ruſſians*, Maſters of all *Lettia*, except *Riga*, made a new Progreſs in *Eſthonia*, where they carry'd the Town of *Pernaw*.

THE King of *Sweden*, altogether taken up with his religious Project, and entirely governed by the Inſinuations of *Poſſevin*, the Jeſuit, ſent to him by Pope *Gregory* XIII. very much neglected the Affairs of *Livonia*, ſo that they were expoſed to all the Ills the *Ruſſians* were pleaſed to load them with, who even went into *Finland*, and did ſuch Things as, indeed, coſt them many Men, but ruined the Country. *Revel* was beſieged by eighty thouſand *Ruſſians*, *Danes* and *Tartars*, with much Vigour, and this Siege laſted ſix Weeks. *Henry Horn*, the Governor, and *Charles*, his Son, defended themſelves with ſo much Courage, that the Czar, who was come before the Town with his Son *Theodore*, was obliged to raiſe the Siege. He threw himſelf afterwards, with great Fury, into *Lettia*, ravaging all the Country,

Country, he retook *Kockenhauſen*, *Wenden*, and other Fortreſſes, and threatened *Riga*, held by the *Poles*.

THE Diviſions occaſioned by the Election of King *Henry*, and then by that of King *Stephen*, had ſo rent the Kingdom of *Poland*, that they would not yet allow the new King to take the Affairs of *Livonia* to Heart; nevertheleſs he entered into Meaſures at a Diſtance, to begin this War with Advantage.

IT was well known, that Duke *Magnus* had no Reaſon to be ſatisfied with the Czar, for which Reaſon King *Stephen* endeavoured to bring him over to his Intereſts: This Prince ſeemed not unwilling to enter into Meaſures with *Poland*; but at the Time that the Buſineſs was in Treaty, the Czar, who had the beſt Spies of any Prince in the World, was informed of the Correſpondence carried on by Duke *Magnus*, and his Enemy. He did not ſeem to know any Thing of the Matter, and entered into *Lettia* with a new Body of Troops, with a Deſign, as he ſaid, to beſiege *Riga*. He took *Marienhauſen* and *Lutzen*, and being advanced as far as *Kockenhauſen*, he marched all on a ſudden towards *Wenden*, where Duke *Magnus* had his Reſidence, while ſeveral Detachments ſeized on all the little Places, gariſoned by Duke *Magnus*. Having inveſted *Wenden*, he ſummoned the Duke to appear before him, and this Prince obeyed with the greateſt Submiſſion. The Czar charged him with his atrocious Crimes, reproached him with Ingratitude, and after having ſtripped him of all the Ornaments of his regal Dignity, would have

put him to Death, if the Duke had not ſhewn his Repentance in the moſt abject and ſervile Manner: But if he pardoned the Duke himſelf, it was only to treat thoſe who belonged to him with the greater Severity, delivering up the unhappy Town to the Brutality of Soldiers, who committed the utmoſt Exceſſes. Some Ladies of Diſtinction, with what Nobility there were in the Town, retired into the Caſtle, to ſee what would be the Conſequence of this Surprize: They were ſummoned to open the Gates; but they refuſed, and the Czar ordered the Walls to be battered by five Pieces of large Cannon, which ſoon made a wide Breach in them. The poor Wretches within, drove to Deſpair, reſolved to blow themſelves up in the Air, rather than fall into the Hands of their cruel Enemies. After having exhorted one another to die with Reſolution, they received the Sacrament; and ſeeing the Enemy ready to mount the Breach, they ſhut themſelves up in a Gallery, and one of them ſetting Fire to the Powder out of the Window, they all periſhed together in an Inſtant. *Wolmar* was gariſoned by the Duke's Troops, the Czar ſent a Detachment thither, who ſeized on it with little Trouble, and cut all the Gariſon to Pieces.

AFTER this Expedition the Czar retired to *Dorpt* with his Priſoner, who could not obtain his Liberty till he had paid a Ranſom of forty thouſand Ducats to the Czar, and ſolemnly promiſed to be his Vaſſal.

AT length King *Stephen Battori* having made a Treaty of Alliance with the King of *Sweden*,

Sweden, by Consent of the Diet of *Poland* and *Lithuania*, raised an Army to attack *Russia* in earnest; to retake what *Poland* pretended belonged to it; and to put an End to this War, which had lasted too long: And he had the greater Hopes of Success, as some Reverse of Fortune which the *Russians* lately had in *Lettia*, where the *Swedes*, assisted by some *Germans* and *Polanders*, had retaken *Wenden*, had much dispirited them. However, the King would not march against *Russia*, without declaring War in Form with the Czar, in case he refused what he sent to demand of him.

For this Purpose, *Basile Lapotinscki* was chosen Ambassador, and accompanied by a fine Train of Nobility. On the Frontier all Honours were paid to *Lapotinscki*, that were due to the Character with which he was invested; but when he was advanced farther in the Country, and his Errand was known, he had much ado to get safe to *Moscow*. Before this Ambassador had his Audience of *John Basilowitz*, he was told, that if he would be secure of his Life, he must refrain from entering into the Imperial Palace with his Sabre drawn; *Lapotinscki* answered, that the Czar was Master of his Life, but that nothing in the World should hinder him from acquitting himself of his Duty with the utmost Exactness. The Day of Audience being come, he was conducted to the Palace, his Master of the Horse carrying his Sabre naked before him. The Czar received him in a Hall magnificently adorned, being cloathed himself in a Robe covered with Diamonds and Pearl.

The

The Ambaſſador ſaluted him in the *Poliſh* Manner, and his Train did the ſame. The Czar, in Appearance, received him very graciouſly. *Lapotinſcki* made him a Speech, in which he demanded Reparation for all the Damages done to *Poland* by the *Ruſſians*, declaring, that the *Poles* would otherwiſe be obliged to take Vengeance; and at the ſame Time preſented his Letters to the Czar, with a Seal of Gold and a Scymeter. This Boldneſs of the Ambaſſador irritated the Czar, who opened, with Precipitation, the Letter that was wrote in the *Ruſſian* Language.

THE King therein demanded Reparation of the Czar for all the Depredations committed in *Poland* and *Lithuania*, or threatened to come and make War in his Country. He afterwards exaggerated his own Strength, and the Ills committed in *Lithuania* and *Livonia* by the *Ruſſian* Generals: Nevertheleſs he offered him Peace, and even his Alliance, if he would reſtore *Livonia*, and the Places he had uſurped upon *Poland*.

AFTER reading this Letter, the Czar anſwered, that he was not ſo ſuſceptible of Fear as, at the Sight of theſe Menaces, to abandon his Dominions to *Poland*, and that thoſe who had ſo often vanquiſhed the *Poles*, and the *Livonians*, who had ſubdued the *Tartars* of *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*, and even triumphed over the Forces of the *Ottoman* Empire, might make King *Stephen* repent of his Bravades. He took Leave of the Ambaſſador, ordering Care to be taken of him, and that no Honours ſhould be omitted that were due to him. So true it is, that Virtue commands

mands Refpe
Czar regarde
the Intrepidit

As ſoon a
abroad, all t
ſo important
informed of
land. Befide
ſelf raiſed, t
and the Mag
ceſſary Parts,
cop to make
Stephen was
luntiers of al
learn the Ar
Leader. Al
to fall on *P*
ſion of all
to the *Ruſſia*
not liſten to
them. The
his Return,
and *Kraſny*.
with the A
Form.

The Cza
my, content
out taking
Conqueſts.
ſeveral Det
of *Smolenſko*
Sword, and
City. A D
and *Michael*
and made an

loſt, and *Starodub*, from whence they brought a conſiderable Booty.

In the mean Time the Siege was puſhed with Vigour, and the Beſieged defended themſelves with the ſame. The Czar, on his Side, from Time to Time, ſent ſeveral Detachments, which endeavoured to throw themſelves into the Town. There have been few Sieges in which the Beſieged gave greater Proofs of Valour. Their great Guns were uſed with an inconceivable Rapidity, and they expoſed themſelves to all Dangers with as much Courage and Obſtinacy as if they had a Nurſery of Men to ſupply the Want of thoſe who loſt their Lives. The Trenches had been open eighteen Days, when the King gave Orders to ſet Fire to all the Outworks of the Place. His Soldiers executed this Order with Bravery; there were ſome ſo impatient as even to go through the Flames to attack the Enemy. The Fire did not diſmay theſe, and Men were ſeen, like ſo many Salamanders, fighting in the Midſt of the Flames. This Temerity of the *Polanders* aſtoniſhed the *Ruſſians*, who made a Feint of capitulating, that by the Favour of a Suſpenſion Arms, they might make a new Intrenchment in haſte, behind the Flames that concealed them from the Beſiegers. Their Deſign was immediately penetrated into, and the King gave Orders, that no Reſpite ſhould be allowed them Night or Day. At length they beat the Chamade, when they ſaw their Works deſtroyed on the other Side the Town, and that the *Poles* were Maſters of an Eminence that commanded them. The King, who

who ſought not to ſhed Blood, and who had an Intereſt to preſerve this Fortreſs as entire as poſſible, granted them Life and Liberty, and gave thoſe who were willing Leave to enter into his Troops, and the reſt to retire to the *Ruſſian* Army. *Poloczk taken by the Poles.*

A PRODIGIOUS Quantity of Cannon, Powder and Ball, was found in the Place. Some Perſons of Diſtinction were taken Priſoners, who had oppoſed the Surrender of the Town, among the reſt, the Archbiſhop of *Wielkiluki*. The Taking of *Poloczk* was followed by the Rendition of *Turowla*, *Suſſa* and *Sokol*. The two firſt ſurrendered immediately, upon offering the Gariſons the Liberty of retiring in Safety with their Arms and Baggage. *Other Conqueſts made by King* STEPHEN.

SOKOL held out longer, and the Siege was more bloody. This is a Fort ſituated between the *Dreyſſe* and the *Neyſſe*, on the Road from *Poloczk* to *Pleſkow*: Beſides the uſual Gariſon, *Theodore Baſilowitz Czeremetoff*, who had attempted in vain to throw himſelf into *Poloczk*, with a Detachment of Fuſileers and ſeveral *Ruſſian* Lords, was retired into this Fort, and two thouſand Militia, well diſciplined, kept under the Cannon of the Place to defend the Avenues; nevertheleſs they ſuffered the *Lithuanian* Troops, commanded by *Radziwil*, to paſs the *Dreyſſe* unmoleſted, contenting themſelves with making a Noiſe, and giving out that they had a Body of *Caſaneze* and *Aſtracaneze* near at hand to aſſiſt them. As the Country was covered with Woods, the *Polanders* were obliged to intrench themſelves for Fear of a Surprize, and afterwards they opened the Trenches in Form. The Fortifications

cations and Works of *Soloi* were built, as all in that Country, with Beams and Planks that were very thick, but ſtrengthened in the Inſide with green Turf. The Houſes, in this Country, are only of Wood, therefore the Officer who commanded the Artillery, diſcharging three red-hot Bullets into the Town, it is no Wonder that they ſet Fire to the Places where they fell; the Gariſon endeavoured, but in vain, to extinguiſh them, and the Flames ſpread on all Sides in an Inſtant. All the brave People in the Place ſeeing themſelves reduced to periſh miſerably, or to open themſelves a Paſſage through the Beſiegers, reſolved upon the latter as the leaſt dangerous: This they attempted, but were repulſed with ſo much Vigour, that they were obliged to throw themſelves again into the Flames that they had fled from: Preſſed thus on both Sides, they made ſeveral Signals to ſurrender, demanding Quarter; but the *German* Soldiers did not underſtand their Language, and the *Poles*, irritated by the deadly Reſiſtance made by the Gariſon of *Poloczk*, would not liſten to them; therefore, ſeeing that they muſt inevitably periſh, it is not ſurprizing, that in ſuch an Extremity, Men of Spirit ſhould endeavour to ſell their Lives as dear as could be.

THEY made a freſh Sally, and the *Polanders* and *Germans* drove them back, and followed them quite within the Place: A Centinel, who was then upon the Gate, let fall the Port-Cullis, at that Inſtant, which ſhut both the Beſiegers, and the Beſieged, in the Town, in the Midſt of the Flames;

nothing can be imagined more terrible than the Battle that enſued; at length the Fort was reduced to Aſhes, four thouſand *Ruſſians* periſhed in it, and almoſt as many were taken Priſoners, in the Number of whom were *Czeremetoff*, and the Chief of the Militia.

THE Czar was all this Time at *Pleſkow*, where he imagined that it would be impoſſible for the *Polanders* to take *Poloczk*, when he learnt that not only that Town, but even *Sokol*, was in the Power of his Enemies, notwithſtanding its ſtrong Gariſon; he then began to deſpair of the Succeſs of the War, and did all that was in his Power to conceal his Loſs from the People, and to leſſen the Advantages gained by the *Poles*. Theſe, after the Deſtruction of *Sokol*, entered into the Territories of *Ruſſia*, where all ſubmitted to King *Stephen*, who made an End of this glorious Campaign to go and aſſiſt at the Diet of *Warſaw*.

THE Czar retired to *Novogorod*, and cauſed ſome great Men of his Empire to write to the Palatine of *Wilna*, to ſound him, if he thought there might not be ſome Means found out to bring the King to liſten to Terms of Peace. The King was willing to have Peace, but could not, with Honour, conſent to it, as long as the *Ruſſians* kept *Livonia*, and the leſs, ſince beſides the Ceſſion made of that Province to the Crown of *Poland* by the *Teutonick* Order, Duke *Magnus*, who was retired under the Protection of King *Stephen*, had transferred to him all the Rights that he had to it, either by the Inveſtiture of the Czar, or by the Oath that the People had taken

Propoſitions of Peace rejected.

to

to him. Therefore it was reſolved in the Diet, that the War ſhould be continued againſt *Ruſſia*, with all the Forces of *Poland*, and her Allies.

The Czar nevertheleſs ſent an Ambaſſador to the King, and this was *Nancekyn*, a Man of Cunning and Addreſs, who knew how to ſow Diſſenſions in the Diet by the Means of *Gregory Oſchyk*, which would have cauſed an Inſurrection in *Lithuania*, if his Letters, that were intercepted, had not diſcovered his Deſigns. While this paſſed in *Poland*, the Czar, who ſought only to make the *Poles* loſe all Patience, becauſe he knew they had not conſented, but with Regret, to this ſecond Campaign, would not hazard one Battle, that might decide any Thing to his Diſadvantage, as his Troops were not ſo well prepared as thoſe of the King of *Poland*, who, beſides his *Polanders* and *Lithuanians*, had two good Bodies of auxiliary Troops, one compoſed of *Germans*, and the other of *Hungarians* and *Tranſylvanians*. For this Reaſon *John Baſilowitz* contented himſelf with putting good Gariſons in the Places that the *Polanders* would be obliged to force, ſo that he might make them loſe Time in theſe Sieges. Beſides this, as ſoon as he knew that the *Poliſh* Army was upon the *Duna*, he ſent Ambaſſadors, not ſo much to propoſe Conditions of Peace, as to make his Enemies loſe their Time. Audience was given to theſe Ambaſſadors, who went into Invectives againſt the King and the Nation, ſaying, that they had very advantageous Propoſitions to make, and demanding a Suſpenſion of Arms, and that Commiſſaries

might be appointed; but the *Poles* would not ſtoop to this Lure, and the Army continued its March to *Wielkiluki*, which it had in View.

WIELKILUKI *beſieged.*

THIS Town was one of the Keys of *Ruſſia*, ſituated on an Eminence in the Midſt of Marſhes, covered, on one Side, by a Lake, and, on the other, by the *Lowat:* It is in the Province of *Rzeva*, 120 Werſts on the North of *Witepſk*, and at the ſame Diſtance Southward from *Novogorod Weliki*, from which it is ſeparated by Foreſts, ſandy Plains, and the great Lake *Ilmen*. *Pleſkow*, which is on the North-Weſt, is at the Diſtance of 180 Werſts. The Gariſon was numerous, and provided with every Thing to make a long Reſiſtance.

THE King, before he undertook this Siege, took Poſſeſſion of *Wieliſcz* and *Uſwiath*, two important Poſts on the *Duna*. The laſt continuing firm, the King was forced to approah it with his whole Army, and then marched to *Wielkiluki*. The Czar continued at *Moſcow*, to make his People believe that the *Poliſh* War gave him but little Concern. He paſſed his Time in Feaſts and Diverſions, being then married for the ſeventh Time, and aſſiſting at the Nuptials of his eldeſt Son *John Iwanowitz*.

And taken.

WIELKILUKI could not be carried without ſetting Fire to it, and none were ſaved but a few *Greek* Monks. The Commandant, who went to *Farenſbeck*, was maſſacred by the *Hungarians*. All the Country was put to Fire and Sword, and nothing was more deplorable than the ſorrowful Condition to which all the Country People were reduced by the licen-

tious Soldiers, who thought every Kind of Barbarity was allowable in an Enemy's Country.

THE King ſent a Detachment to ſeize upon *Toropiecz*. *John Sbaraz*, who commanded it, met a Body of *Ruſſians* and *Tartars*, that made Head againſt him for ſome Time; but they were put to Flight, after ſeveral of them had been killed, among whom was *Nancekyn*, the Ambaſſador, whom we have before mentioned. *Toropiecz* is at the Diſtance of ſeventy or eighty Werſts on the Eaſt, from *Wielkiluki*, and on the Road to *Moſcow*. The Detachment of *Sbaraz* ſurmounted all the Difficulties they found in this Rout, interrupted by Woods, Moraſſes and Rivers, and took not the Place before they had endured a vigorous Reſiſtance; the Gariſon ſurrendered only on Condition that they ſhould retire to *Novogorod*. *Bornemiſſa*, another General, took *Newel*, between *Poloczk* and *Wielkiluki*, after having encountered with all the Difficulties that are to be met with in taking the ſtrongeſt Places. *Zamoyſki*, who was looked upon as one of the moſt ſucceſsful Officers in the *Poliſh* Army, attacked *Zawolocz*. This Fortreſs is ſituated on the *Wielka*, between *Wielkikuli* and *Pleſkow*, as *Toropiecz* is between the firſt and *Tweer*. There was more Difficulty in paſſing the River, than in carrying the Place, which was not ſo well furniſhed as the others; nevertheleſs he was forced to make many Aſſaults. The Gariſon would liſten to no Capitulation, and all were put to the Sword. *Radziwil* made a cheaper Conqueſt of *Zieburyſſeza*, for the Town was delivered up

TOROPIECZ *taken.*

NEWEL *taken.*

ZAWOLOCZ *taken.*

up to him as ſoon as he granted them the Liberty of retiring elſewhere. Thus the *Polanders* went on in their Courſe as far as *Porckow* and *Opolſko*, which are but about ſeventy Werſts from *Pleſkow*.

THE King had a great Inclination to attack the laſt of theſe Towns, but he was not provided with every Neceſſary for an Enterprize of ſuch Importance, and the Seaſon was too far advanced; it was therefore thought adviſeable to defer this Siege till the next Campaign, and for the King to go and aſſemble the Diet again, to obtain the Succours that were wanting.

THE Czar was always of Opinion, that the Republick of *Poland* could not long ſupport the Expences of the War, and that they muſt either continue it ſo faintly, that he ſhould find himſelf in a Condition to fall upon them, or that, at length, they muſt deſire a Peace, which he would grant them on the Terms they ſhould propoſe, in order to make War again, when a more favourable Opportunity ſhould offer; but the Advices he received from his Spies in *Poland*, ſhewed him his Miſtake, and gave him to underſtand, with great Concern, that King *Stephen* would have nothing leſs than the City of *Pleſkow*, and that he was making all neceſſary Preparations not to miſs of his Aim. The Czar could not confide in the great Men of his Empire, and his Forces were not in a Capacity to make Head againſt the victorious Troops of the King of *Poland*. It was proper then to have Recourſe to ſome other Means, and the following ſeemed moſt likely to ſucceed.

JOHN BASILOWITZ was not ignorant of the Zeal with which the Pope endeavoured on every Side to repair, by ſome important Acquiſition, the Breaches that *Calvin* and *Luther* had made in the Church of *Rome*. He knew that the Jeſuit *Poſſevin* had been ſent into *Sweden*, where he had left no Art untry'd to reunite that Kingdom to the Popiſh Communion. The Czar apply'd to the Pontiff, he took him for Mediator, and promiſed, if he made his Peace with *Poland*, that he would ſubmit the Church of *Ruſſia* to the Holy See. This Bait was too tempting for the Pope not to bite at it. *Poſſevin* had immediate Orders to go to the King of *Poland*, and endeavour to oblige him, by the Obedience he owed to the Church, to put an End to the War with the Czar.

The CZAR *deſires the Mediation of the* POPE.

WHILE the *Poles* made ſuch Conqueſts on the Frontiers, and even in the Country of *Ruſſia*, the *Swedes*, their Allies, did ſo much in *Livonia*, that the Czar was obliged to abandon it, or, at leaſt, was not able to defend it as he had done before. *Pontus de la Gardie*, to whom the King of *Sweden* had given his Daughter in Marriage, ſubdued the Province of *Kexholm*, and ſet Fire to the Town. He went afterwards into *Livonia*, where he defeated ſeveral little Detachments of *Ruſſians*, and made himſelf Maſter of *Weſenberg*, *Telſbourg*, *Lode*, *Fickel*, &c. The King of *Sweden* had attacked *Narva*, to no Purpoſe, ſome Years before; *Pontus de la Gardie* laid Siege to this important Place, and promiſing his Soldiers the Plunder of it for twenty-four Hours, they aſſaulted it with ſo much Fury, that

The Advantages of the SWEDES *in* LIVONIA.

that they ſoon carry'd it, and cut ſeven thouſand *Ruſſians* in Pieces. From *Narva* they went to *Iwanogorod*, which ſurrendered by Capitulation; *Jamagorod* and *Coporio* did the ſame. The *Swedes* afterwards going towards *Novogorod*, turned, on a ſudden, upon *Wittenſtein* in *Livonia*, which they took, and from thence went and lay'd Siege to *Pernaw*.

THE King of *Poland* began his third Campaign with a Deſign of beſieging *Pleſkow*. We have ſeen before how this City came under the Dominion of the Czar: It is very long, and about two Leagues in Circumference: It is narrow towards the Weſt, and the River *Welika* waſhes its Walls on the South. This River, whoſe Name ſignifies *the Great*, is made ſo by the Waters it receives from many others, and which it carries at five Werſts Diſtance into the Lake *Pelba*, commonly called *Piepus*. The City is divided into three Parts by ſo many Walls; one which is towards the Weſt, is called *Sa-Pſkow*, that is to ſay, beyond *Pleſkow*, for in the Country this City is called *Pſkow*. The Citadel, which is between the ſecond and third, is alſo divided into three Parts, that on the Side of the *Welika* on the South, is named *Krſemnof*, the other *Domantof*; and the third in the Middle or Centre, has the Name of the Town. This City, notwithſtanding its Largeneſs, was well enough fortify'd, eſpecially to the North, where it was defended by a Wall of Stone, within which the Czar, after the Taking of *Poloczk* and *Wielkiluki*, had raiſed a broad Terraſs made with large Planks, and filled with Earth; all round the Town

were Stone Towers; but as theſe were ancient Works, whoſe Flanks could not well defend each other, the Czar had added in the Spaces good Works of Turf, with Port-Holes, and furniſhed them with Artillery. Beſides all theſe exterior Repairs, he not only provided a numerous Gariſon within, but brought from *Narva* all Sorts of Proviſions, and ſtored ſeveral Magazines beſides what were there formerly. The Gariſon was compoſed of ſeven thouſand Horſe, and fifty thouſand Foot, taking in the Burghers who were fit for Service. The Generals, who commanded there, were *John* and *Baſile Zwirſki*, Nephew and Brother of him who had been killed in the Battle of *Ula*, *Choroſchin*, and *Pleſceioff*. Round the Town the Czar had brought ſeveral Bands of *Coſſacks*, commanded by a brave *Circaſſian*, with a View of employing them in hindering the *Poles* from ravaging the Country, becauſe this Militia, who were incumbered with nothing but their Arms, were very proper to go upon all Parties.

PLESKOW *beſieged.*

THE King of *Poland* approaching *Pleſkow*, had reconnoitred all the Out-works, and learned from ſome Deſerters, and even from the People of the Country, the Condition of the Place within. He had a great Mind to have renounced this Enterprize, it ſeeming to him likely to fail for ſeveral Reaſons. In the firſt Place, he had not Troops enough to form a Line of Circumvallation; in the next, he had not Foot enough for the Aſſault and the Trenches, and ſtood in need of Powder, as by the Negligence of ſome who were to have

have watched it, his Magazine at *Suſa* had been blown up; and laſtly, he found inſurmountable Difficulties with reſpect to Proviſions: Therefore this Prince was willing to lay aſide the Thoughts of beſieging *Pleſkow*, to undertake that of *Porchow*, or of *Udow*. Theſe were two Caſtles ſituated one between *Pleſkow* and *Novogorod*, and which, in the Hands of the *Poles*, would have prevented the Communication between thoſe two Cities; the other near *Iwanogorod*, and by Means of which all Communication might have been cut off between *Pleſkow* and *Narva*. The King would even have preferr'd going to beſiege *Novogorod*, which without Doubt would not have been found in ſo good a State of Defence. Neverthelefs Fame had given ſuch a Deſcription of *Pleſkow*, that it would not have been for the Honour of the King and the Nation to have retired from before it, after having approached ſo near; beſides that ſuch a Step would have given freſh Courage to the dejected *Ruſſians*, who had a conſiderable Army near *Novogorod*. Therefore it was reſolved to keep to the firſt Deſign, and that the Siege of *Pleſkow* ſhould be formed without Loſs of Time. The King diſputed for a long while with General *Zamoyſki* on the Choice of the Place where it was to be attacked, and at length they agreed the Attack ſhould be made towards the Eaſt; ſo the Troops croſſed the *Careſch*, and blocked up the Town on that Side.

THE Forces were divided according to their different Nations; the *Poles*, *Lithuanians*, *Hungarians* and *Germans*, had each their

different Poſts, where every one endeavoured, through Emulation, to gain more Glory than the other. Without entering into a Detail of the Particulars of this famous Siege, let it ſuffice to ſay, that both the Beſiegers, and the Beſieged, did every Thing that could be expected from the moſt warlike People. What the King had foreſeen happened, the Beſiegers began to want Powder, which obliged them to batter the Town but faintly, till they could have ſome brought from *Riga*, and elſewhere. There were no Efforts that the *Ruſſians* of *Ingria* and *Novogorod* did not make uſe of to throw Succours into the Town; but the King, *Zamoyſki*, and *Farenſbeck*, were in all Places, and oppoſed all Attempts that the *Ruſſians* could make.

DURING the Siege, the King of *Poland* received ſeveral Ambaſſadors; among the reſt, one from the Grand Seignior, to demand certain *Tartars* who had deſerted. Theſe Ambaſſadors, after having felicitated the King of *Poland* upon his Conqueſts, offered him very conſiderable Succours, which were neither accepted, nor refuſed. The Jeſuit *Poſſevin* arrived alſo in the King's Camp. He was inveſted with the Dignity of Legate from the Holy See, and came from the Court of the Czar, with whom he had conferred on the Conditions of the Peace, of which he was come to be the Mediator in the Name of the Pope. He had an Audience of the King, to whom he lai[illegible]pen the Sentiments of the Czar, who was deſirous to make Peace upon the ſame Terms he had propoſed during the Siege of *Poloczk*. The King diſdained to make

make any Anſwer to them; but gave this Mediator to underſtand, that no Peace could be made unleſs the Czar yielded all *Livonia* to the Crown of *Poland*. The Jeſuit diſpatched a Courier to the Czar, who immediately named the Town of *Zapolcia*, about ninety Werſts from *Pleſkow*, for the Conferences to be held in, under the Mediation of the Pope. The King ſent thither two Plenipotentiaries and one Secretary, and ſoon after arrived alſo two Ambaſſadors from the Czar, accompanied by a Secretary; the Jeſuit *Poſſevin* was alſo found in the Place in Quality of Mediator.

THE Deſign of the Czar was to draw the Negotiation out in Length, in Hopes that the Cold, which began to be very violent, and to which the Troops that compoſed the *Poliſh* Army had not been accuſtomed, would oblige their Generals to decamp. He knew that *Pleſkow* wanted for nothing, and he was ſatisfied of the Bravery and Fidelity of thoſe who were to defend it. The King of *Poland* was obliged to go and aſſiſt at the Diet, and it was known that *Zamoyſki* was not beloved by the Troops. The *Poles* were informed of all theſe Circumſtances by a Perſon in the Train of the *Ruſſian* Plenipotentiaries, who knew the Secret of the Embaſſy. For which Reaſon they redoubled their Attacks, and beſides that undertook the Siege of the Monaſtery of *Pezzura*, on the Road from *Pleſkow* to *Riga*; which being fortified and filled with Troops, very much incommoded the Foragers of the *Poliſh* Army. At laſt the General made all the neceſſary Diſpoſitions,

to

to oblige the Town to ſurrender, by Famine, having been informed, by one *Suturma*, the Governor's Secretary, who had been taken Priſoner, that they had not Proviſions and Ammunition to laſt but a ſhort Time.

WHILE this paſſed at the Siege, and the *Ruſſian* Plenipotentiaries try'd all Ways to gain Time, by ſending Couriers continually to the Czar, with the Hopes of the Froſts obliging *Zamoyſki* to raiſe the Siege, a large Detachment of the *Poliſh* Army, commanded by *Chriſtopher Radziwil*, *Knita*, and *Haraburda*, had entered into *Ruſſia* by *Mobilow*, *Skolw*, and *Toropiecz*. They advanced very far into the Province of *Rzeva*, when two Foragers falling into their Hands, told them, that a Body of fifteen thouſand Men were not far off, and that the Czar, with his Court, was at *Starica*, and that he had another Body near *Rzeva*: *Radziwil*, nevertheleſs, advanced as far as the *Wolga*, beyond which he ſent his *Tartars* out in Parties, and would have followed them himſelf and advanced towards *Starica*, if one *Murſa*, an Officer of the Czar's Houſhold, coming to throw himſelf into the Arms of the *Poles*, had not ſpoke with ſuch Confidence of the great Army, at the Head of which the Czar was at *Starica*, that *Radziwil*, conſidering the Idea he had of that Monarch's Power, could not but believe what the pretended Renegado told him: But it was afterwards known, that the Czar had but eight hundred Men about his Perſon, and that as ſoon as he heard that the *Poles* had croſſed the Head of the *Wolga*, he had retired with Precipitation; ſo that it would not

not have been difficult for *Radziwil* to have taken him Priſoner, if, having good Spies, he had marched directly to *Starica*, inſtead of amuſing himſelf in ſending Parties to ſpoil the Country in the Way to *Moſcow*. After having miſſed this Blow, the *Poliſh* Detachment retired, by the Province of *Rzeva*, and encamped at *Chelm* on the *Lowat*, from whence they advanced toward *Staraia-Ruſſa*, continually pillaging the *Ruſſian* Territories on every Side.

THE Seaſon of the Year, or the other Inconveniences that the *Polanders* found before *Pleſkow*, no Ways diſcouraged them. They had raiſed Barracks, and were reſolved to paſs the Winter before that City, that they might force it to ſurrender by Famine. On the other Side, although the *Ruſſians* were perſuaded that the Czar, their Sovereign, had good Reaſons for remaining inactive, while the *Swedes*, on one Hand, and the *Poles* on the other, made every Day freſh Conqueſts; and the laſt, in their Progreſs, committed the greateſt Diſorders; yet they could not forbear murmuring at a Conduct, in which there appeared more Cowardice than Prudence; therefore ſeveral great Men, joining together to make their Remonſtrances to the Czar, threw themſelves at his Feet, offering him their Lives and Fortunes, and conjuring him to wipe out the Stain that ſo long an Inactivity would bring upon the whole *Ruſſian* Nation; they added, that he had nothing to do but to command it, and he ſhould ſoon ſee an Army on Foot as numerous as the Leaves of a Foreſt, and that if he would put his eldeſt Son at their Head, his Preſence

would be ſufficient to render them capable of ſurmounting the greateſt Difficulties.

THIS Remonſtrance irritated *John Baſilowitz* to the greateſt Degree, for it was in ſome Sort to reproach him with Cowardice; he therefore told theſe Enquirers into his Conduct, that ſince they wanted a Sovereign who would obey their Wills, and be accountable to them for his Actions, they might chooſe one where they would. The *Ruſſians*, afraid of the Wrath to which they found they had provoked their Prince, proſtrated themſelves again at his Feet, proteſting, that it was not through any Diſaffection to him, that they had taken this Step which they ſaw was diſpleaſing to him, aſſured him that they were very ſorry for what they had done, and conjured him to continue to govern them at his own good Pleaſure. *John Baſilowitz* would not hearken to them, but on Condition, that they ſhould diſcover the Authors of this raſh Undertaking, that he might puniſh them for their Boldneſs; and ſuſpecting that his Son had an Intelligence with thoſe who demanded him for their General, he reprimanded him very ſeverely. This virtuous young Prince, extremely concerned to find himſelf ſuſpected by his Father, begged that he might be permitted to juſtify himſelf; but the Czar, to ſtop his Mouth at firſt, gave him a Blow on the Head with a Stick he had in his Hand, that had an Iron Ferrel to it, and which unfortunately touched him on the Temple. The Prince did not perceive he was wounded till the Blood ran down his Robe, and then immediately he dropt down motionleſs at his

JOHN BASILOWITZ *kills his own Son.*

Father's Feet. The Czar had always tenderly loved him, and he was the Darling of the whole People. When the Father beheld this deplorable Spectacle, which was the Work of his own Hand, from Anger he fell into the moſt piercing Sorrow, threw himſelf upon the Body of his Son, embraced him, preſſed him to his Boſom, and ſpoke to him with all the paſſionate Fondneſs of a loving and afflicted Parent. The Prince in a ſhort Time recovered his Speech and Strength enough to aſſure his Father, that there was no Conſpiracy, nor was he capable of harbouring ſuch a Thought, and ſo far from having any Deſign againſt him, he beſought the Almighty to give him the Empire of the Univerſe, and to add to his Life the Days that he had taken from his own. The Prince lived four Days longer, and then his Death threw his Father into ſo much Affliction, that it had like to have put an End to his own Life. He was ſeveral Days without changing his Dreſs; was, with much Difficulty, prevailed upon to take the leaſt Nouriſhment, and all the reſt of his Life could never hear the Prince mentioned without immediately ſhedding Tears. He cauſed a moſt magnificent Funeral to be made for him, and to expiate his Crime, if ſuch a Crime was to be expiated, ſent eighty thouſand Ducats to the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople* and *Alexandria*, and to the Monks that watched the holy Sepulchre, that they might pray without ceaſing for the Soul of his Son.

At length the Peace was concluded at *Zalpocia*. The Articles propoſed were for a long Time conteſted on both Sides, as was that

that eſpecially of admitting the *Swedes* into the Treaty; but as the King of *Poland* had a good deal of Reaſon to be diſſatisfy'd with them, ſince, as it was ſaid, they had ran away with the Game while he was beating the Buſh, by ſubjugating all *Eſthonia* and *Ingria*, by the Favour of the War that *Poland* made with the *Ruſſians*, he did not much inſiſt upon having them comprehended in it.

IT was agreed that the Czar ſhould yield to the Crown of *Poland* all that he poſſeſſed in *Livonia*, and that the King of *Poland* ſhould reſtore to the Czar all that he had taken in his three Campaigns, except *Poloczk*, *Wielicſz*, and their Dependencies, and that Conferences ſhould be afterwards held to regulate the other Differences between the two Nations, and for ſetting the Priſoners at Liberty.

THIS News was immediately carry'd to *Pleſkow*, where it occaſioned an univerſal Joy, as well as in the Army of *Poland*. General *Zamoyſki* recalled all his Detachments, and the long Siege was raiſed, which had coſt no leſs to the Beſiegers than to the Beſieged, and which had brought no leſs Glory to one Side than to the other; for if the *Poles* had ſhewn an invincible Conſtancy to accompliſh ſo difficult an Enterprize, the *Ruſſians* had given Proofs of an extraordinary Valour and an inviolable Fidelity to their Sovereign, in ſupporting this Siege ſo long, altho' they receiv'd no Succours, nor had any Hopes of being relieved.

WE will not digreſs from our Subject to relate the Conſequences of this Peace, with reſpect

reſpect to *Sweden*, *Livonia*, and Duke *Magnus*, who had put himſelf under the Protection of the *Poles*. Let it ſuffice to obſerve, that the King of *Sweden*, threatened with a War from *Poland*, which pretended to all *Livonia*, ſought to make his Peace with the Czar; but as they could not agree upon their reſpective Pretenſions, a Truce only was concluded for two Months, which was followed by another of two Years, during which Time the Czar, *John Baſilowitz*, died. This Prince, after the Death of his Son, fell into an extreme Melancholy, that allowed him not one Day's Pleaſure for all the reſt of his Life.

AFTER the Peace was concluded with *Poland*, he made Preparations to retake *Narva* from *Sweden*; but the King of *Poland* writing to him to diſſuade him from that Deſign, as he could not keep the Town, to which *Poland* pretended a Right in Virtue of the Treaty of *Zapolcia*, he gave over that Enterprize, and ſent back an Expreſs which the King of *Poland* had ſent to him with a very ſharp Letter, during the Conferrences at *Zapolcia*, and cauſed him to be told, that ſince Peace was made, and a good Intelligence re-eſtabliſhed between them, he did not think it proper to anſwer the Invectives in that Letter wrote in the Time of War.

THE Jeſuit *Poſſevin* having ſucceeded in all that the Czar deſired of him with reſpect to the Peace, demanded that Prince, in his Turn, to fulfil his Promiſe, and re-unite the Church of his Dominions to the holy See of *Rome*. *John Baſilowitz* anſwered him, that this was an Affair that could not be executed

in

in a ſhort Time; that he thought it not juſt to force the Conſciences of any Chriſtian with regard to Religion, and that therefore Time, and the Inſinuations of his Clergy, muſt do the Work; that he would lend his Aſſiſtance, and give an Account from Time to Time of its Progreſs to the holy Father. In this Manner he diſengaged himſelf from the reverend Jeſuit, who was honourably conducted to the Frontiers of *Bolognia*.

JOHN BASILOWITZ did not ſurvive the Time of the Concluſion of the Treaty of *Zapolcia* but about two Years, which he employed in correcting ſeveral Abuſes crept into the Provinces of his Empire, during the Troubles of a War of more than twenty-ſix Years Continuance. He made a good Peace with the *Tartars* of *Precop*, which was what their Cham, *Machmet-Girey*, very much deſired, that he might declare War with *Poland*.

The Death of JOHN BASILOWITZ.

THE Czar, *John Baſilowitz*, died on the 28th of *March*, 1584, aged 56 and ſome Months, after a Reign of 44 Years. He had been ill a long Time, and, during that Illneſs, had ſhewn many Acts of great Clemency. At the Time of his Death, he deſired his Son to ſet all Priſoners at Liberty, to aboliſh ſeveral new Taxes, and to extend his Beneficence to all thoſe of his Subjects who had been unjuſtly deprived of their Eſtates. The News of his Death was no ſooner made publick, but the People expreſſed the greateſt Concern; they thought every Thing was loſt, and that, loſing ſo great a Monarch, *Ruſſia* would ſoon become the Prey of her Neighbours.

JOHN

JOHN BASILOWITZ was, in Truth, the greateſt Prince that *Ruſſia* had known till his Time. He was a profound Politician, knew all the Intereſts of his Neighbours, and how to make Advantage of any falſe Step that was taken by them. He was valiant, let ſlip no Opportunity of extending the Limits of his Empire, and was almoſt always ſucceſsful till King *Stephen* declared War with him, and then, ſeized with a Kind of Stupor, either thro' the Remembrance of a former Prediction, or through the Fear of hazarding, againſt ſo redoubted a Warrior, the Glory he had already acquired, he would not bring into the Field an Army, that might have forced him to a deciſive Battle, but contented himſelf with ſeveral little flying Camps, which were at too great a Diſtance from one another; by theſe, indeed, he covered *Novogorod-Welikt* and *Moſcow*, but did not hinder Parties of the Enemy from pillaging ſeveral Places on his Frontiers. It may be ſaid, that at this Time his Policy deceived him; he knew the Genius of the *Polanders*, and any other as well as he might have thought that they would never have conſented to continue the War for three Years ſucceſſively: But there are Conjunctures to be found in which the Multitude give Way, and when a Nation will ſacrifice even their Vices to the Bravery of their Maſter, or to Reaſons of State. *His Character.*

JOHN BASILOWITZ was learned, and had particularly ſtudied Religion, for which Reaſon he would never allow of Perſecution in Matters of Faith, knowing that Conviction muſt come from Reaſon and Conſcience, and

not from Violence and Tortures, which might make Men Hypocrites, but could never make them good Chriſtians; it is nevertheleſs true, that he uſed ſome Cruelties towards the *Jews*, but this was thro' a Zeal not to be commended, and a Chriſtian Hatred to that Nation, becauſe they had crucify'd Jeſus Chriſt. He gave, on many Occaſions, Proofs of a ſolid Piety; and was, without Doubt, perſuaded that Kings were the ſovereign Pontiffs of their own Dominions, ſince he would often officiate pontifically with an exemplary Devotion, and at ſuch Times retired to the Monaſtery of *Alexandrowa*, to prepare himſelf for thoſe holy Functions.

JOHN BASILOWITZ began what one of his Succeſſors happily executed in our Days, he had undertaken to civilize the *Ruſſians*, and teach them the Manners of the other People of *Europe*, by cultivating among his own Subjects the Arts that were practiſed by them; but theſe Innovations were diſpleaſing to this groſs People, and made them murmur againſt the Author of them, without examining if they would be prejudicial to them or not. A moſt extraordinary Example there is of the Genius of theſe ſtupid Nations, in what happened in the Time of *John Baſilowitz*. The King of *Poland*, *Stephen Battori*, having recovered *Livonia*, as well by the Treaty of *Zapolcia* as by the Conventions made with the King of *Sweden*, went himſelf into that Province to eſtabliſh a new Form of Government. According to the conſtant Cuſtom there, when any Peaſant, who in this Country were all treated as Slaves, had committed a Fault, he

was

a.C.L.

was whipp'd with a Rod till the Blood came. The King was willing to commute this barbarous Puniſhment for one that was more moderate; but theſe Peaſants, inſenſible of the Favour deſigned them, threw themſelves at his Feet, and begg'd that he would alter nothing in their ancient Cuſtoms, becauſe they had experienced, that all Innovations, ſo far from bringing them any Redreſs, had always made their Burdens ſit the heavier upon them.

JOHN BASILOWITZ found himſelf in Circumſtances, wherein the Welfare and Glory of his State required Enterprizes more difficult than any his Predeceſſors had been engaged in: From hence the Murmuring of his People, their Seditions, and Conſpiracies, and from hence the ſorrowful Neceſſity that he found himſelf in of employing the Severity of Tortures to preſerve the Safety of his Life: Therefore, if *John Baſilowitz* committed, on ſome Occaſions, Acts that appeared very cruel and tyrannical, they muſt in ſome Meaſure be imputed to the Manners of his Country, and the Conduct of his Subjects, to whom he would do good whether they would or not. Scarce any Prince was a greater Lover of Juſtice and Order. He compoſed a Body of Law, collected from many Precedents and Cuſtoms, and called it *Sudenaja Kniga*, which, in the *Ruſſian* Language, ſignifies the *Book of Juſtice*, and delivered it to his Judges. This Book was always obſerved, and made the Standard in all Law Proceedings, tho' not printed till the Reign of *Alexis Michaelowitz*. He was always ready to hear the Complaints of all thoſe who he thought

had any Reaſon to make them. The Governors of Towns and Provinces, and thoſe whom he had ſet over them, to render Juſtice, found an inflexible Maſter, if there was the leaſt Complaint againſt their Adminiſtration; and, on the other Hand, he puniſhed, with the utmoſt Rigour, thoſe who in any Manner ſcreened ſuch as offended from Juſtice.

JOHN BASILOWITZ had had ſeven Wives, and, it is ſaid, was very deſirous to have added our Queen *Elizabeth* to the Number, having made ſtrong Courtſhip to her, and was indeed always an Admirer of, and Friend to, the *Engliſh* Nation, whither, it was thought, he once intended to have made his Eſcape, in Caſe of Extremity, and that the Plot which he ſuſpected a great Part of his Boyars to be concerned in, had taken effect.

HE left but two Sons at his Death, *Theodore*, who ſucceeded him, and one younger, named *Demetrius*, whom he placed under the Tutelage of the Knez *Bogdan Bielki*, and whoſe Name we ſhall find afterwards made a great Noiſe.

THIS Knez was ambitious, proud, cruel, and one of thoſe reſtleſs Spirits, which ſeem born to change the Face and Order of Things; he was bold to Audaciouſneſs, and enterprizing even to Raſhneſs; he deſpiſed Virtue, which he made only the Handmaid to his Policy; he had a vaſt Genius, was always employed in great Deſigns, and liſtened to nothing but what tended to ſatisfy his Ambition.

THEODORE,

THEODORE, twenty-two Years of Age, was a hopeful Prince, engaging in his Perſon, and of a moſt amiable Temper: The Severity with which his Father uſed thoſe who were neareſt to him, as well as others, was the Reaſon that this Prince was never willing to meddle in Affairs; and, that he might give no Umbrage, he preferred the Converſation of Monks, and others of that Sort, to the Company of great Men, and Miniſters of State; ſo that when he came to the Throne, upon the Death of his Father, he brought to it only Moderation and Mildneſs, without any of thoſe Talents neceſſary to govern ſo untractable a People as the *Ruſſians*. THEODORE IWANOWITZ.

IT was this that gave Riſe to the Projects of the Knez *Bielki*. This ambitious Man thought it would be eaſy to ſeize on the ſovereign Authority, if by excluding the Czarewitz *Theodore Iwanowitz*, as incapable of governing ſo vaſt an Empire, he could place his Pupil on the Throne. The *Ruſſians* flattered themſelves with Hopes of better Times, after the Death of *John Baſilowitz*, and *Theodore* confirm'd them in theſe Hopes by ſome of the firſt Acts of his Authority, for he immediately aboliſhed ſome very heavy Impoſitions, he diſcharged ſeveral miſerable Wretches out of Priſons, where they had lain ſo long, that they deſpaired of ever more viewing the Sun, and broke thoſe Guards, called *Apriſnes*, which were render'd odious to the People, by having been made uſe of in the Executions ordered by the late Czar.

WHILST the new Czar endeavoured thus to conciliate to himſelf the Affections of his

People, *Bielki* uſed all Means to debauch the Grandees, but his Endeavours proved in vain, ſo that he was obliged to leave Intreaties and Artifices to have Recourſe to open Force, before the States of the Empire aſſembled ſhould take an Oath to the new Czar, that alone might be capable of fruſtrating all his Deſigns; for few Subjects are more faithful to their Sovereigns than the *Ruſſians*, after they have once acknowledged them, and ſworn Fidelity to them.

He began to raiſe Troops, and found no great Difficulty to form a conſiderable Body in a ſhort Time. The People complained of his Inſolence, and accuſed him of having a Deſign to overturn the State, under the Pretence of maintaining the Rights of his Pupil, of whom he had made himſelf the abſolute Maſter. The great Men ſtood by *Theodore*, not that they judged him more capable of governing than his Brother *Demetrius*, but becauſe they foreſaw, that under the laſt they muſt be obliged to ſtoop to the tyrannical and haughty Temper of *Bielki*, who had already ſeized on the Caſtle of *Moſcow*, from whence he ſhewed how much he deſpiſed all thoſe whom he thought he had in his Power. Every one ran to Arms, they ſeized the Caſtle, *Bielki* fled, and was afterwards arreſted; when it was given him to underſtand, that if he would preſerve his Life, he had no Way to do it, but by entirely renouncing the Management of Affairs; that the People had already but too many Proofs of his natural Inclination to Violence and Oppreſſion, and that it was unworthy of

a Man, who ought to be watchful of the State, to take up Arms to deſtroy it. *Bielki* ſeeing no Medium between his Abdication and a ſhameful Death, choſe the firſt, and baniſhed himſelf into one of the extream Parts of the Empire, in the Kingdom of *Caſan*.

As ſoon as the Troubles were a little appeaſed, Preparations were made for the Coronation of the Czar *Theodore*, which Ceremony was performed in the Church of St. *Michael*, where an Amphitheatre was erected, the Floor of which being covered with rich Tapeſtry, the Knezes and Boyars received him at the Door, and conducting him to a magnificent Throne, the Crown was ſet on his Head by the Metropolitan of *Moſcow*, with the loud Acclamations of a vaſt Multitude of his Subjects, who were come from all Parts of this Capital to aſſiſt at a Ceremony, which they looked upon as the Beginning of their Repoſe and Happineſs.

THE Czar *Theodore* had married the Siſter of the Knez *Boris Gudenow*, to whom he had given the Poſt of Grand Maſter of his Horſe. This Man knew how to take Advantage of the Incapacity of his Brother-in-Law, and to ſeize inſenſibly on all his Authority: To a diſtinguiſhed Birth, he joined an inſinuating Behaviour, that made him capable of undertaking and executing any Thing he had a Mind to. He had Greatneſs of Soul, but was naturally cruel; nevertheleſs he could put on an Air of Meekneſs and Popularity that concealed an inſatiable Ambition. He endeavoured, at firſt, to gain the People, and the

Nobles, by a thouſand Acts of Beneficence; he was acceſſible to all, and if he ſent away any diſſatisfied, he knew how to throw the Blame on ſome other. He ſeemed to have no End in all his Actions but the publick Good; by which Means he raiſed himſelf to the Poſt of the Czar's Lieutenant, with the Approbation of every body.

THE Truce which the Czar *John Baſilowitz* had made with *Sweden* being now at an End, it was renewed for four Years; that is to ſay, till the End of the Year 1590. The celebrated *Pontus de la Gardie*, who was charged with this Negotiation, unfortunately periſhed, with eighteen Perſons in his Train, the Veſſel in which he was embarked foundering juſt as he approached *Narva*.

THE Czar likewiſe confirmed the Treaty of Peace for ten Years, that had been made by his Father with *Poland*, carefully avoiding every Thing that might embroil him with that Nation, where he knew the Jeſuit *Poſſevin* did all that was in his Power to rekindle the War with *Ruſſia*, becauſe the late Czar had not kept his Word with him to ſubmit the *Ruſſian* Church to the Holy See.

THE King of *Poland*, *Stephen Battori*, died two Years after *John Baſilowitz*, and the Diet of *Poland* was divided about the Choice of a Succeſſor. The greateſt Part of the Members of the Diet voted in Favour of *Sigiſmund*, Prince of *Sweden*, the Son of *John*, and Nephew, by his Mother's Side, of the late King of *Poland*, *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*; the reſt of the Members had elected *Maximilian* of *Auſtria*. This Diviſion drew the laſt into

Poland

Poland at the Head of an Army, which was beaten by General *Zamoyſki*: *Maximilian* was taken Priſoner, and obtained his Liberty by renouncing the Crown. It was to be feared, that the two Kings of *Sweden* and *Poland* would make an Alliance ſo much the more fatal to *Ruſſia*, as the *Crim Tartars* ſtill threatened the Provinces with an Irruption; which indeed they put in Execution; but it was not attended with all the ill Conſequences that had been apprehended, becauſe the Knez *Boris Gudenow* oppoſed them with Troops, which, if they were not capable of attacking and driving them away, harraſſed them in their Progreſs, and prevented their penetrating far into the Country.

GUDENOW thought only how he might find Means to aſſure to himſelf the ſovereign Authority, all the Functions of which he exerciſed in the Name of the Czar *Theodore*. He placed all thoſe at a Diſtance from the Prince, who he thought were capable of ſeeing thro' his Deſigns, and to prevent the Execution of them. He gave conſiderable Governments to theſe Men, and other Employments, that kept them from Court. All Things ſucceeded to his Wiſhes, and ſeemed to favour his Deſign. The Czarina, his Siſter, brought the Czar no Children; King *John* was more employed in *Sweden* about the Affairs of Religion than thoſe of War; and the Miſunderſtanding that ſtill ſubſiſted between him and his Brother Duke *Charles*, would ſcarce allow him to intermeddle with the Affairs of his Neighbours. The *Polanders* were not well pleaſed with his Son *Sigiſmund*, who

who contrary to the Tenour of the *Pacta conventa*, to which he had ſworn when he accepted the Crown, had not yet reunited *Livonia* to *Poland*.

ONE Child only was almoſt an invincible Obſtacle to *Gudenow*'s Projects; this was the young *Demetrius*, Pupil to the Knez *Bogdan Bielki*, of whom we have before ſpoken.

GUDENOW *contrives to have* DEMETRIUS, *the Czar's Brother, aſſaſſinated.*

THE Czar *John Baſilowitz* had him by his laſt Wife, and at his Death had given him the City of *Uglitz*, with its Dependences, for his Appenage. This young Prince was brought up under the Care of the Czarina Dowager his Mother, who employed her whole Time in his Education. *Boris Gudenow* reſolved to ſacrifice this innocent Victim to his Ambition, and truſted his Deſign to an Officer, to whom he promiſed a Reward proportioned to the Service he expected from him. This Man ſoon found an Opportunity to execute his cruel Orders; but *Gudenow*, who knew that if he was capable of committing ſuch a Crime, muſt be alſo capable of divulging it, inſtead of giving him the great Reward he had promiſed, had him waylaid on the Road from *Uglitz*, and aſſaſſinated.

SOME have ſaid, that this Officer belonged to *Boris Gudenow*, others that he was an Officer in *Demetrius*'s own Houſe. The clearing up this Point would diſſipate many Doubts concerning this Murder, for if the Aſſaſſin was a Domeſtick of *Demetrius*, there is no Likelihood that he could be deceived; but if he belonged to the Grand Maſter of the Horſe, it was very eaſy for the Mother of the young Prince to deliver another to him in

the Room of her Son. For ſome of the Hiſtorians of thoſe Times have pretended, that the Czarina, informed in good Time of the criminal Deſign of *Gudenow*, ſent her Son out of the Way, and putting another Boy of the ſame Age in his Place, by that Means ſaved his Life. The Thing would have been difficult to have been put in Practice in any other Country than *Ruſſia*, or *Turky*; but nothing ſeems more eaſy to thoſe who have any Idea of the Manners of the *Ruſſians*. The great People are abſolute Maſters of their Vaſſals, and the Peaſants are born Slaves, whom they diſpoſe of as we do of the brute Animals about our Eſtates and Houſes; ſo that it was no difficult Matter for the Czarina to find a Child whom ſhe might ſacrifice to ſave the Life of her Son.

THE News of this Murder ſoon arrived at *Moſcow*. The Author of it was not named, tho' he was ſufficiently ſuſpected. The Czarina Dowager made great Complaints of it to the Czar, from whom ſhe demanded Juſtice; and *Gudenow* himſelf gave Orders for diſcovering the Aſſaſſin; but thoſe who knew him did not ſuffer themſelves to be deceived by ſuch Appearances. He underſtood that his Name was whiſpered about, and believed that he ought, at any Rate, to ſtifle the Report. The Expedient that to him ſeem'd the moſt likely to anſwer this End, was to draw off the Attention of the People to ſomething that touched them more nearly; therefore he cauſed Fire to be ſet to the ſpacious City of *Moſcow* in ſeveral Places at once. The unfortunate *Demetrius* was thought on no longer, every

Sets Fire to the City of Moscow.

every one being employed to ſave his Houſe, his Children, or his Goods, from the Flames, which ſpread on all Sides. At the ſame Time *Gudenow* ſent Troops to *Uglitz*, to raze the Caſtle to the Ground, and drive away the Inhabitants, becauſe, as he ſaid, they had ſuffered this Murder, and given Harbour to Aſſaſſins. At laſt, to do his utmoſt to gain the Affections of the People, and efface the ill Impreſſions made on their Minds by the inhuman Murder of the young Prince, he beſtowed large Sums among them to rebuild, in a handſomer Manner, the Houſes that he himſelf had cauſed to be burnt.

THE Truce which had been already ſeveral Times renewed with *Sweden*, being near at an End, Commiſſaries were named on both Sides, to meet on the Frontiers of the two States, to convert it into a Peace. The very Name of War alarmed the Czar *Theodore*, and the *Grand Maſter of the Horſe*, his Brother-in-Law, had powerful Reaſons for endeavouring to preſerve that Tranquillity which the State had been in for ſome Years, for in the Midſt of Arms, and the Embarraſſment of a War, wherein he muſt have appeared in Perſon, he could not form a Party to put the laſt Hand to the Plan which he had been laying down ſo ſucceſsfully hitherto; the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſadors had Orders therefore to purchaſe Peace, if it was not to be obtained otherwiſe, and to offer conſiderable Sums to the *Swedes*, if they would, in changing the Truce to a Treaty of Peace and Alliance, reſtore to the Czar the Places in *Ingria* and *Carelia*, which they had kept ever ſince

they

they had conquered them. The *Swedes* were haughty, and all that could be obtained was a Truce for three Months, at the Expiration of which the Commiſſaries of both Powers were to meet again.

BORIS GUDENOW now conducted himſelf in another Manner, and that he might not be the Dupe of the *Swedes*, and to ſhew them, that if he was willing to pay for a Peace, it was not through an Imbecillity, or Want, of Power to obtain it otherwiſe, he cauſed the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſadors to be followed by an Army capable of giving Weight to their Demands. They entered into Conferences, becauſe the *Swedes* were come to the Place of Appointment; but broke up ſoon, when it was known that the *Ruſſian* Troops had ſack'd and burnt *Jamagorod*, upon the Borders of the *Laga* in *Ingria*, and at about twenty Werſts Diſtance from *Iwanogorod*. The *Ruſſian* Plenipotentiaries in vain proteſting, that theſe Hoſtilities were committed unknown to them, the *Swedes* retired.

THE Truce was ended; therefore the *Ruſſian* Army, an hundred thouſand ſtrong, purſued their Point, took *Iwanogorod*, and beſieged *Narva* in the Middle of *February*. The *Swediſh* Army, commanded by *Guſtavus Banier*, retired under *Weſenberg*. The *Ruſſians* imagining they would ſoon return if they had the leaſt Reinforcement, gave the Town Aſſault upon Aſſault. *Charles Gora*, who commanded the Gariſon, repulſed them with Vigour; but there was all the Appearance that they muſt in the End be obliged to yield to Numbers: Therefore the Citizens,

and

and the reſt of the Gariſon, ſeeing the Enemy diſpoſed to give the laſt Aſſault, by which they could not but be overcome, deſired this brave Officer not to come to that Extremity. Upon which they parley'd with the Enemy, and gave up all the Conqueſts the *Ruſſians* had made upon them in *Ingria*, on Condition that they ſhould raiſe the Siege of *Narva*. To this they conſented, and the Czar *Theodore* made his Entrance into *Iwanogorod*. The *Tartars* of the *Ruſſian* Army were got into *Finland*, where they had made a Progreſs, which coſt the Lives of many thouſand Peaſants: The Czar recalled them, and returned towards his Capital, after having concluded a Truce with *Sweden* for a Year.

JOHN King of *Sweden* had a great Deſire to have repaired this Loſs; but the Diviſions that reigned at that Time between him and his Subjects, hindered theſe from being ready to give him any Aſſiſtance; and he died in the Year 1592. Duke *Charles*, his Brother, who was Regent in the Abſence of *Sigiſmund*, then in *Poland*, ſent Commiſſaries to the Frontiers of *Ruſſia*, where they agreed with thoſe of the Czar to prolong the Truce for two Years; the Czar would willingly have made Peace, ſo much he feared, that the two Crowns being united upon one Head, *Sigiſmund* would have employed all the Forces of both Kingdoms againſt him. But the Miſunderſtanding that happened between Duke *Charles* and the *Swedes* on one Hand, and between *Sigiſmund* and the Nobles of *Poland* on the other, as well on Account of Religion, as with reſpect to *Eſthonia*,

JOHN *King of* SWEDEN *dies.*

nia, removed all Subject of Fear from the Czar, and gave *Boris Gudenow* Time to confirm his Authority, and to make Creatures for his Purpoſe. In the mean while, as he was informed, that in all the Negotiations between King *Sigiſmund* and his Uncle Duke *Charles*, and between the States of the two Kingdoms, the firſt Article always ſtipulated a ſtrict Union againſt *Ruſſia*, and believed that if any Revolution ſhould make theſe People of one Mind, the *Ruſſians* muſt become a Victim to them, he ordered the Plenipotentiaries he had ſent to *Narva* to preſs the *Swedes* in ſuch a Manner, that at length a Peace was concluded to the Satisfaction of both Nations. The *Ruſſians* renounced *Eſthonia* for ever, and the *Swedes* gave up *Kexolm*, and a Part of *Carelia*.

THE Czar *Theodore* ſent ſoon after a ſolemn Embaſſy to the Emperor *Rodolphus* II. to renew the ancient Alliance that was between the Czars and the Emperors of *Germany*. Which was one of the laſt publick Acts of this weak Prince, who died in the Year 1597, not without the Suſpicion of his Brother-in-Law's having abridged his Days by the Help of Poiſon; and this the Czarina ſeemed ſo ſenſible of, that ſhe ſtrongly reproached her Brother *Boris Gudenow* with the Murder of her Huſband, and would never ſpeak to him afterwards. *Theodore* was the laſt Prince of the Line of *Rurick*, which had continued above ſeven hundred Years upon the Throne. His Mother *Anaſtaſia*, the Daughter of *George Romanoff*, of a very ancient Family in *Ruſſia*, had a *Nephew* named *Theodore*

The Czar THEODORE *dies.*

Theodore Nikititz Romanoff, whom the Czar *Theodore* had a great Affection for, and intended, as it was thought, to have left his Crown to him, which was one Reaſon of *Boris Gudenow*'s precipitating the End of that Prince; after which he ſent *Theodore Nikititz* to Priſon, on ſome feigned Pretence, and then ſeparated him and his Wife againſt their Wills, and forced them into different Convents, obliging them both not only to take Orders, but *Theodore*, according to the Rules of the Convent, to change his Name to that of *Philaret*: But in vain did he oppoſe the immutable Decrees of Fate, for we ſhall ſee the Blood of *Romanoff* on the Throne of *Ruſſia*, in the Perſon of the Son of *Theodore Nikititz*, and his Poſterity at this Day become the Happineſs and Glory of that great Empire.

The End of the Firſt BOOK.

THE

THE HISTORY OF RUSSIA,

To the End of the REIGN of the

Empreſs CATHARINE.

BOOK II.

The CONTENTS.

An Account of the Uſurpations of Boris Gudenow; *his Son* Theodore Boriſſowitz; *the Impoſtor* Demetrius; Baſile Zuſki; *two other Impoſtors under the Name of* Demetrius; *of the Election of* Wladiſlaus, *Son of the King of* Poland; *of a fourth* Demetrius *an Impoſtor*; *and of the Election of* Michael Theodorewitz Romanoff, *the firſt Czar of the preſent Imperial Family.*



BORIS GUDENOW was not ignorant of what was ſaid, concerning the ſudden Death of the Czar *Theodore*; therefore, altho' he had formed a Party ſtrong enough to have withſtood any Oppoſition, he

feared if he ſhould ſhew too much Eagerneſs for the Crown, it might confirm the Suſpicions of the People, and give his Enemies, or rather the Friends of Juſtice, a good Reaſon to exclude him from the Throne. Whereupon as ſoon as he had given Orders for the Funeral of the late Czar, and for aſſembling the principal Perſons of the State, who had a Right to diſpoſe of the vacant Throne, he retired to a Convent: Where hearing of the Irreſolution of the States, while he employed his Friends to work under-hand, he cauſed a Report to be ſpread, that he was going to be ſhaved, and take the Habit of a Monk. It is to be remarked, that at the Time we are now ſpeaking of, the *Ruſſians* were of Opinion, that to come out of a Convent, after a Perſon had been ſhaved, was a Sin that was never to be forgiven in this World, or the next; *Gudenow* therefore was willing to make the *Ruſſians* believe, by whom he was generally beloved, that they were in Danger of loſing him for ever. The Stratagem ſucceeded, and the great Men and People in this Apprehenſion ran in Crouds to the Convent, where throwing themſelves on the Ground, tearing their Hair, and beating their Breaſts, like Men in the utmoſt Deſpair, they vowed they would never quit the Place till he had promiſed them to accept of the Crown; which he made ſome Difficulty of at firſt, but at length ſeemed to be overcome by the Intreaties of ſome of his moſt particular Friends.

BORIS GUDENOW, in the Beginning of his Reign, had ſome Miſunderſtandings with the *Tartars*,

Tartars, and with the *Turks*; but he more eſpecially took Part in the Affairs of *Sweden* and *Poland*. He greatly ſympathized with *Charles* Duke of *Sundermania*, who had not leſs Ambition than himſelf, and who, like him, found nothing but the Throne capable of ſatisfying it: He wanted only to drive his Nephew from it, and there was nothing he would not have attempted to gain his Ends, but in an artful Manner, that might not ſtain his Glory with the odious Name of an Uſurper. This Prince was ſure of one Part of the Provinces, and of the Grandees of *Sweden*; but there was a great Number beſides firm to *Sigiſmund*, the Son of King *John*, and King of *Poland*. Therefore, as it was prudent for him to look out for ſome powerful Support from abroad; he turns his Eyes towards the new Czar, whom he found diſpoſed to enter into all his Meaſures againſt the King of *Poland*: But the Czar *Boris* ſought leſs the Intereſt of Duke *Charles* than his own, and to have an Opportunity of fiſhing in troubled Waters, when *Poland* and *Sweden* ſhould be embroiled with one another; which he made ſufficiently appear, by the Part he acted at this Time.

ERIC XIV. King of *Sweden*, Brother of King *John* and Duke *Charles*, had had two Sons by his Miſtreſs *Catharine*, whom he afterwards married. One of theſe Sons, named *Guſtavus Ericzon*, that is, the Son of *Eric*, was retired to *Thorn* in *Pruſſia*, where he led a private Life. Him the Czar *Boris* invited to come to his Court, where he greatly careſſed him, and, ſeeing the Differences that

were beginning between the *Swedes*, and their King *Sigiſmund*, inſinuated to *Guſtavus*, that now was the Time for him to make good his Pretenſions, and that he ought to demand, that *Sweden* ſhould at leaſt give him *Eſthonia* and *Finland*. He added, that if he would be * baptized, and embrace the *Greek* Religion, he would preſent his Daughter to him in Marriage, and lend him Forces ſufficient to maintain his Rights. *Guſtavus* rejected theſe Propoſals, proteſting to the Czar, that he would rather loſe his Life than give Ear to them: This Refuſal could not but irritate the impetuous *Boris*, who, ſeeing his Projects thus deſtroyed, when *Guſtavus* would have gone away, not only took every Thing from him, but threw him into a Priſon, where he died, in the Year 1607. And, indeed, it would not have been prudent in the Czar to have let a Man go away, to whom he had diſcovered his Deſigns againſt *Sweden*.

THE POLES were informed of the Alliance between the Czar *Boris*, and the King of *Sweden*, *Charles* IX. who had accepted the Crown, after he had excluded his Nephew *Sigiſmund*, and his Son *Wladiſlaus*. *Charles* ſoon threatened *Livonia*; it is true, he, at firſt, kept within the Bounds of *Eſthonia*; but the *Poles*, who had declared War with him, and would have taken that Province from him, and even *Finland*, if poſſible, having made

* *At that Time, when any one would embrace the* Ruſſian *Religion, he was obliged to be re-baptized, which was done in a River; after which he was to deteſt his firſt Religion as Hereſy, and obliged to ſpit every Time he heard it named.*

made a Beginning in *Eſthonia*, by taking *Wittenſtein*, had Reaſon to fear that the *Swedes* would paſs the *Tela*, and throw themſelves into *Lettia*, of which they might have made an eaſy Conqueſt with any little Aſſiſtance from the *Ruſſians*; for which Reaſon it was the King of *Poland*'s Buſineſs to make a Diverſion, and find ſuch Employment for them at home, that they might not be able to meddle with the Affairs of *Sweden*.

The firſt Impoſtor DEMETRIUS.

THERE was at this Time, in the Houſe of a *Lithuanian* Lord, named *Adam Wiſnowieſki*, a young Man, well made, of about twenty-four Years of Age, who ſaid he was that very *Demetrius*, Son of the Czar *John Baſilowitz*, whom *Boris Gudenow* had ſent to aſſaſſinate in the Caſtle of *Uglitz*; and pretended, that when the Aſſaſſin came to take away his Life, another Boy of the ſame Age had been put in his Place, which diſappointed the barbarous Intention of *Boris*; to confirm this, he ſhewed a Croſs of Gold, inriched with Diamonds, which had been hanged about his Neck when he was baptized *. *Wiſnowieſki* was ſo well perſuaded of the Truth of this, that he immediately furniſhed him with an Equipage, and treated him with all the Reſpect that was due to the legitimate Heir of ſo great an Empire. An Adventure of this Kind could not be long concealed, the Re-

* *The* Ruſſians, *at the Time of Baptiſm, hang a Croſs about the Child's Neck, made of Gold, Silver, or Lead, according to the Ability of the Parents, which it is obliged religiouſly to preſerve all its Life; for when any one dies without this Mark of Chriſtianity about them, they are deny'd Burial.*

port of it was ſpread every where, and ſoon came to the Ears of the Czar *Boris Gudenow*, who expreſſed much Uneaſineſs at it. If he had treated the Story at firſt as a Forgery, or had appeared unconcerned about it, perhaps *Demetrius* might ſoon have ſunk into his primitive Obſcurity; but he ſet a Price upon his Head, and had him demanded from the Court of *Poland*. Such Proceeding gave Weight to the Diſcourſe of *Demetrius*, and it was ſaid, that *Boris* would not have been ſo much afraid of him, if he had known him to have been an Impoſtor. Be that as it may, *Wiſnowieſki* thought him not ſafe in *Lithuania*, and ſo near the Frontiers of *Ruſſia*, therefore ſent him to *George Mnieſki*, the Palatine, or Weyvode of *Sendomir*, who promiſed him all the Aſſiſtance in his Power to reſtore him to his Throne, upon Condition that he would tolerate the *Roman* Catholick Religion in *Ruſſia*, as ſoon as he had eſtabliſh'd himſelf thereon. *Demetrius* not only agreed to the Condition, but, being privately inſtructed, changed his Religion, and promiſed to marry the Palatine's Daughter. The Hopes of ſo advantageous an Alliance, and the Palatine's great Zeal for his Religion, made him engage the Credit of all his Friends in his Favour, and promiſed to intereſt the Republick in it, if there was Occaſion.

WHETHER this *Demetrius* was the very Perſon he pretended to be, or an Impoſtor, has been made a Doubt by ſome * Writers; thoſe who believe the latter, ſay, that he was

a

* Vide Olearius, Lib. III.

a *Muſcovite* Monk, named *Griſka Utropoja*, born at *Jeroſlaw*, of a noble Houſe, but not very rich, and had been thruſt into the Monaſtery on Account of his Extravagance and Debaucheries. He was a very handſome Perſon, and had much Wit, which Qualities an old Monk, of the ſame Monaſtery, made his Advantage of, by bringing this Impoſtor out of his Recluſe in order to ſet him on the Throne of *Ruſſia*. The better to carry on his Deſign he ſent him into *Lithuania*, where he was entertained by a great Lord, *Adam Wiſnowieſki*, before-mentioned, into whoſe Favour he very ſhortly inſinuated himſelf by his Ingenuity and conſtant Services; but one Day, his Maſter being angry with him, called him *Bledinſin*, or Son of a Whore, and ſtruck him; *Griſka*, taking Advantage of this Diſgrace, fell a weeping, and told his Maſter, that if he knew who he was, he would not call him Son of a Whore, nor treat him in ſuch a Manner. The Curioſity of the *Poliſh* Lord made him preſs *Griſka* to tell him who he was. The Impoſtor made Anſwer, that he was the legitimate Son of the Czar *John Baſilowitz* the *Great*; that *Boris Gudenow*, in the Reign of the late Czar *Theodore*, his Brother, would have murdered him; but the Misfortune fell upon a Prieſt's Son very like him, whom his Friends had ſubſtituted in his Place, while he was convey'd away: And hereupon ſhewed him the rich Croſs, which, as he ſaid, was hung about his Neck at his Baptiſm; adding, that the Fear of falling into the Hands of *Boris Gudenow* had kept him from diſcovering himſelf till that

Inſtant. Then he caſt himſelf at his Lord's Feet, and intreated his Protection; enlivening his Relation with ſo many Circumſtances, and his Actions with ſo much Shew of Sincerity, that his Maſter could not but give Credit to it, and thereupon immediately ſupply'd him with Cloaths, Horſes, and an Attendance ſuitable to his ſuppoſed Birth; but not thinking him ſafe in his Houſe, ſent him into *Poland*, where he was received, as before related, by the Palatine of *Sendomir*.

Some Authors, who have treated all this Story as a Fable, ſay, they cannot ſee with what Deſign, or to what Advantage, this old Monk, whoſe Name is never mentioned, ſhould put *Griſka* upon acting this Part; beſides, there are other Authors contemporary with him, who aſſure us, that they had ſeen *Griſka Utropoja* in his Cloyſter, from whence he never went out till the Knez *Zuſki*, who had an Intereſt in giving an Air of Truth to this Invention, had brought him to *Moſcow*, and that he diſappeared from thence, and it was never known afterwards what became of him.

Be this as it may, the Republick of *Poland* entered ſtrongly into the Intereſts of *Demetrius*; the Proofs that he brought of his Birth were examined in the *Diet*; he was acknowledged as the legitimate Heir of the Crown of *Ruſſia*; and they raiſed a conſiderable Army to ſet him on the Throne of his Anceſtors. The *Ruſſians* always cheriſh and reſpect the Blood of their Princes, ſo that this Report was no ſooner ſpread in *Ruſſia*, but all the Towns declared for him, and opened

opened their Gates to him. Several Officers and Boyars joined him, and the Army commanded by *Demetrius* in Perſon, and the *Poliſh* General *Zapotſki*, entered *Ruſſia* by the *Ukrain*, becauſe the *Coſſacks* had declared in his Favour.

COSSACKS, their Original.

THESE *Coſſacks* inhabit the *Ukrain*, and are, perhaps, the only People who bear a Name different from their Country; but this was given them to expreſs their principal Quality, which is the *Agility* with which they make their Incurſions into the Territories of their Enemies: For *Coſſacks* and *Runners* ſignify the ſame. This People is formed of *Poliſh*, *Ruſſian*, and *Tartarian* Voluntiers. The Liberty that they enjoyed, the Riches they had amaſſed, and the Reputation that the firſt of them had acquired for Bravery, drew to them a ſtill greater Number of Vagabonds, ſo that they found themſelves ſtrong enough to make Expeditions on the *Black-Sea*, and to go and raiſe Contributions as far as the Suburbs of *Conſtantinople*, and the City of *Trebiſonde* in *Aſia*. *Poland* believing that ſhe could obtain great Advantages from the Service of this warlike People, in oppoſing the frequent Incurſions of the *Tartars*, took them under her Protection, in a Diet held in the Year 1562, ordering the Republick to pay them a certain annual Subſidy. King *Stephen Battori* judged it proper to ſettle them in *Ukrania*, where he gave them, for their Capital, the City of *Tretbimiroff*, which is upon the *Boryſthenes*, about eleven Leagues below *Kiow*.

THE *Coſſacks*, being reſpected by the *Tartars*, their wandering Neighbours, and living

peaceably in this fine Province, began to apply themſelves to Labour, and, in a little Time, the *Ukrain* was one of the richeſt Provinces of *Poland*; in the Time we are ſpeaking of, it might paſs for a large Kingdom, if we conſider its Extent, the great Number of well-built Towns they had raiſed on a ſudden, or the Richneſs of the Territory, being a Country ſo plentifully ſtored, and ſo fertile, that the *Polanders* called it, *The Land flowing with Milk and Honey.* The chief Perſons of *Poland* had fine Eſtates there, from which they drew conſiderable Revenues. The *Coſſacks* had their own General, and their Army acted ſeparately, as that of an Ally or Confederate, and not as dependent on the Crown of *Poland.* They have been able to raiſe two or three hundred thouſand Men; and the Hiſtory of *Poland* obſerves, that the Republick would have been invincible, if they had kept Poſſeſſion of this fine Country, and had not broke with the *Coſſacks*, whoſe Bravery was indiſputable; they endured all the Inconveniences of War, at all Seaſons, without accounting them Hardſhips, they were good Countrymen, and intrepid Soldiers, only a little too cruel. But the *Poliſh* Nobility having endeavoured to uſurp upon the Liberty of this brave People, and going about to treat ſome of them in the ſame arbitrary Manner with which they uſe their own miſerable Vaſſals, the generous *Coſſacks* revolted more than once, and when they took Part in this Expedition of *Demetrius*, it was but a little after their ſecond Revolt had been appeaſed

peaſed by the tragical Death of their General *Nelevaſko*. The reſt of their Hiſtory, the Manner how this formidable People has been almoſt entirely deſtroyed, and how the fine Country of the *Ukrain* is become little better than a wild Deſart, is not our Subject at preſent: But we thought it not improper to give an Idea of the *Coſſacks*, ſuch as they were at that Time, to ſhew of what Importance their Junction was to the Army which *Poland* had then ſet on Foot, to eſtabliſh *Demetrius* on the *Czarian* Throne.

THE Czar *Boris*, informed of the Rout that the *Poliſh* Army had taken, and that *Demetrius* had already ſubdued ſeveral Towns, among others *Putivl*, *Rylſk*, *Croomy*, and that he advanced towards the Province of *Reſan*, he ſent a Body of Troops againſt him, that he thought capable of ſtopping his Progreſs. While this Army uſed all Means to defeat ſo powerful an Enemy, he fell into a deep Melancholy, a Sort of Deſpair ſeemed to mix itſelf in all his Actions, and the Remembrance of the Crimes by which he had paved his Way to the Throne, threw him into a Condition, ſuch as would have excited Compaſſion in his very Enemies. Every one ſeemed to be *Demetrius*, he could confide in no body: All his fine Parts gave Way to a moſt extravagant Timidity, that would not ſuffer him to take a Moment's Repoſe, alarmed at every Noiſe, and terrified by every Object. Nevertheleſs he forgot nothing that might ſtop the Progreſs of his Enemy; his Army was as numerous as poſſible, conſidering

ing the * deplorable Condition of *Ruſſia* at that Time; and he joined to it an Expedient likely enough to have a good Effect among ſo ſuperſtitious a People; which was a Mandate of the Patriarch, to anathematize all who took the Part of *Demetrius*, whom he treated as a Cheat, an Impoſtor, and Magician.

IN the mean Time the *Ruſſian* Army, commanded by *John Gudenow*, a Relation of the Czar, by *Mieriſloff* and *Zuſki*, ſtopp'd the Rapidity of *Demetrius*'s Conqueſts, and when the People ſaw the Prince on the Throne in a Poſture of making Head againſt this Newcomer, they took freſh Courage, either thro' Fear of Chaſtiſement, if not having Succeſs, they ſhould be convicted of Infidelity; or thro' the natural Hatred that they bore to the *Polanders*.

THE Palatine of *Sendomir* thought, that it would be ſufficient to enter into the *Ruſſian* Territories, to ſee the whole Country taking the Part of him, whom he was for ſetting on the Throne, and that as ſoon as he approached the Army of *Boris*, among whom he had diſperſed his Manifeſto's, the Soldiers and Officers would deſert by whole Regiments; but

* *During the two Years that preceded the Invaſion of* Demetrius, Ruſſia *had been expoſed to a* Famine, *the moſt dreadful that ever had been known in that Empire. Mothers devoured their own Children, or fed upon their dead Carcaſſes when killed with Hunger. Corn that was ſold before for twelve Pence a Meaſure, was then worth twenty Crowns; ſo that there was ſcarce any Thing to be purchaſed but human Fleſh. Huſbands ſold their Wives, Parents their Children, and, in a Word, all the People were reduced to the utmoſt Wretchedneſs and Miſery.*

but he found the contrary, unhappily for the Intereſts of *Demetrius*; for the *Ruſſians* received him with much Firmneſs, and in a little Time his ſmall Army was attacked on all Sides, defeated, and put to Flight; ſo that gathering together what remained of it, he retired to *Putivl*, and from thence returned to *Poland*. *Demetrius* continued at *Rylſk*, ſupported only by his *Coſſacks*, and his own Courage, till the Monks, whom he had brought out of *Poland* forſook him, except two Jeſuits, whom the Order and the Pope himſelf had placed there, to have an Eye upon all the Proceedings in this Enterprize, wherein the Society and the Holy See had ſo ſtrong an Intereſt.

At length *Rylſk*, which was near being a Witneſs of the total Ruin of this raſh Enterprize, ſaw all on a ſudden a Change of Fortune. The Army of *Boris* judging with Reaſon, that Time ought not to be given to the Vanquiſhed to rally and repair their Loſſes, marched towards *Rylſk*, in Hopes of deſtroying the little Body of Troops which had taken Shelter in that Place; they attacked them in the Beginning of *March*; the Action was begun by the Horſe, that of the *Ruſſians* was bore down, and had ſcarce loſt a thouſand Men and ſome Priſoners, but they took to Flight, leaving the Infantry to the Diſcretion of the *Coſſacks* and *Poles*, who made, at firſt, a great Slaughter among them; but *Demetrius*, willing to gain the Good-will of the Soldiers, cried out aloud to give them Quarter; he gained a conſiderable Booty; and this Victory was followed by the

Surren-

Surrender of many Towns and Caſtles, among others, by that of *Bielgorod* on the *Donetz*, where *Demetrius* found many Cannon, and much Ammunition. He then took his Rout towards *Reſan*; *Livna* and *Galicz* upon the *Szeſna* ſurrendered to him; but that did not hinder the *Ruſſian* Army from going to beſiege *Croomy* upon the *Occa*, into which a Party of *Demetrius*'s Forces had thrown themſelves.

ALTHOUGH Victory had declared for him, when he had the leaſt Reaſon to hope for it, yet he durſt not attempt a ſecond Action to ſuccour this Fortreſs, becauſe if he ſhould have had any ill Succeſs, he ſaw no Means of being relieved. He contented himſelf to encourage the Beſieged by large Promiſes, and on the other Side endeavoured to intimidate the Beſiegers, by Reports that he cauſed to be ſpread of the Approach of a formidable Army.

THE Czar *Boris* could not bear up againſt the Chagrin that this Defeat of his Army near *Rylſk* gave him. He recalled his Generals *Mieriſloff* and *Zuſki*, to be informed by themſelves of the Condition of Affairs; and giving Audience to the Ambaſſadors of the Kings of *Sweden* and *Denmark*, who, as Enemies of *Poland*, had ſent to offer their Alliance and Succours againſt King *Sigiſmund*, he fell into ſo violent a Paſſion in ſpeaking againſt this laſt Prince, that he was on a ſudden ſeized with * a Bleeding at the Noſe that could not be ſtopp'd, ſo that he died in a few Days after, at the End of *April* 1605, after a Reign of ſeven Years.

BORIS GUDENOW *dies.*

THIS

* *Several Authors ſay he ended his Days by Poiſon.*

THIS Prince was born for great Deſigns, and had formed that of revenging *Ruſſia* for the Loſſes brought upon her by King *Stephen Battori*, when Death prevented the Execution of it. The Holy See, and eſpecially the Jeſuits, could not digeſt the Affront put upon them by *John Baſilowitz*, who had made Dupes of them, in the Perſon of *Poſſevin*; and it was not doubted, but they had ſpirited up this *Demetrius*, againſt whom the fertile Genius of *Boris* could find no Expedient to ſecure himſelf.

IMMEDIATELY after his Death he was interred, without any Ceremony, in the Church of St. *Michael*, near the other Czars: And the Senate, the Boyars, and Miniſters, raiſed to the Throne his Son *Theodore Boriſſowitz*, conjointly with his Mother; which ſhewed they did not believe *Demetrius* to be what he pretended; for if ſo, they might have done him Juſtice without apprehending any ill Conſequences from it; for the Son of *Boris* was of an Age and Character not to be feared; he was but fifteen Years old, was given up to his Pleaſures, and had been educated amidſt a Crowd of Flatterers, who ſought only how to gain his Favour by ſoothing his Paſſions: He had ſomething in his Behaviour and Manners very brutiſh and inſolent, leaning greatly towards Tyranny, and which promiſed nothing that was good. Therefore it is a ſtrong Preſumption, that the chief Part of the Nation looked upon *Demetrius* as an Impoſtor, by the Boyars thus preferring *Theodore* to him, altho' one ſeemed to have as much Moderation, as the other had Brutality,

THEODORE BORISSOWITZ made CZAR.

lity, in his Compoſition, and was endowed with all thoſe Talents and Virtues which form a great Prince. Be this as it may, the Conſequence ſhew'd, that every one had not the ſame Sentiments with the Boyars, or that Men are capable of the moſt execrable Perfidy when they would ſatisfy their Ambition or Revenge.

DEMETRIUS, who rely'd entirely on the Valour and good Conduct of General *Zapotſki*, charged him with the Care of ſuccouring *Croomy*, the Gariſon of which was reduced to the laſt Extremity. The Thing was difficult enough, for *Zapotſki* could not employ but eight or ten thouſand Men in this Service, and the Army of the Beſiegers conſiſted of an hundred thouſand; he therefore contrived to make Cunning ſupply the Place of thoſe Forces he wanted. He knew there was a Miſunderſtanding between the *Ruſſian* Generals, and reſolved to make his Advantage of it: He ordered a Man to advance towards the Town, who was to pretend a Deſire of getting into it, but was to take a Rout, by which he was ſure of falling into the Hands of the Beſiegers; this Man was charged with a Letter to the Beſieged, exhorting them to defend themſelves with Vigour, becauſe an Army of fifty thouſand *Polanders* was coming to their Succour. The Spy was taken, and a Report was immediately ſpread through the *Ruſſian* Camp, that an Army of an hundred thouſand *Polanders* and *Coſſacks* was approaching to force them to raiſe the Siege; *Zapotſki*, to confirm this falſe Report, cauſed a great Number of all Sorts of People to be got together,

gether, Suttlers, Servants, and Peaſants, whom he mounted on Horſeback, and ordered to be drawn out in a long Line on an Eminence, where they might be ſeen by the *Ruſſians*. The *Ruſſian* General, *John Gudenow*, judged it would be beſt to go and attack *Zapotſki*, before he could be joined by this freſh Supply; but *Peter Buſmanoff*, who was diſſatisfied with having any other than himſelf employed in this Expedition, was of a contrary Opinion; and while theſe two Generals diſputed the Matter, the laſt, on a ſudden, took off the Maſk, and cry'd with a loud Voice, at the Head of the Troops he commanded, *That* Demetrius *was the only lawful Heir to the Crown, and required thoſe who had the Love of their Country at Heart to follow him.* Whereupon he immediately went over to *Zapotſki*, with a great Part of his Troops, and above five hundred Perſons of Diſtinction. Theſe all went to *Putivl*, where they found *Demetrius*, who received them with ſo much Affability, that it compleated the Attachment they had to his Perſon. *Gudenow*, abandoned by his Army, took to Flight, with a ſmall Number, but was purſued and taken: And when he was brought before *Demetrius*, refuſing to proſtrate himſelf, he was committed to Priſon. At this Time was taken all the Baggage, all the Artillery, and all the Ammunition of the *Ruſſian* Army, with ſeventy Pieces of Cannon, among which were ſome of a moſt extraordinary Size.

The Czar THEODORE *arreſted.*

THIS Revolution that happened in the Army, was ſoon known at Court, where it occaſioned a great Conſternation; every one

immediately determined to follow that Path which his Intereſt pointed out to him, and nothing was heard but the Name of *Demetrius* thro' the whole City of *Moſcow*. He ſet out himſelf for this Capital, after having wrote to the Nobility and the People to engage them to ſhake off the Yoke of an Uſurper, aſſuring them of his Clemency, if they came immediately over to their Duty, as the Army had done, by acknowledging their lawful Sovereign. Theſe Letters produced the Effect that was expected from them; the People ran to the Caſtle, and having made themſelves Maſters of it, flung both the *Czarina* and her Son *Theodore Boriſſowitz* into Priſon.

And dies. As ſoon as *Demetrius* heard this, he haſtened his March, and arrived at *Moſcow* on the 16th of *June*. The Czar *Theodore* and his Mother were both dead; it is ſaid, that this generous Princeſs, rather than ſee herſelf expoſed to the Contempt and Inſolence of the Victor, choſe to put an End to her Days, and that after having taken Poiſon herſelf, ſhe encouraged her Son and Daughter to follow her Example. The Czar and his Mother died immediately; but there was Time enough to ſave the Princeſs, by giving her an Antidote. Others have ſaid, that *Demetrius* ſent a *Diack* with Orders to ſtrangle the Mother and Son, and then gave out that they had poiſoned themſelves.

DEMETRIUS *proclaimed Czar.* BE this as it may, *Demetrius*, upon his Entry, was proclaimed Emperor of the *Ruſſians*, Czar of *Moſcow*, *Novogorod*, &c. and King of *Aſtracan* and *Caſan*. A Detachment of *Poliſh* Horſe began the Proceſſion, having their

their Kettle-Drums and Trumpets at their Head; after them came fifty Muſqueteers, in the Middle of which was *Demetrius*'s Coach drawn by ſix Horſes, and follow'd by ſeveral other Horſes richly capariſon'd; next came the Clergy with their Banners, preceding the Biſhops who carried the Images of the Virgin *Mary* and St. *Nicholas*, the Patron of *Ruſſia*; after theſe came four Archbiſhops, who preceded the Patriarch. At ſome Diſtance came *Demetrius*, mounted on a fine white Horſe, and ſurrounded by a great Number of the great Men of the Empire. This Company conducted him to the Church of *Our Lady*, from whence, after he had paid his Devotion, the ſame Company attended him to that of St. *Michael*, where are the Tombs of the Czars, and where was interred *John Baſilowitz*, whoſe Son he was ſaid to be; but being informed that *Boris* was alſo interred in the ſame Place, he ordered his Body to be tranſported to a Chapel without the Town; and paſſing afterwards by his Palace, he turned his Head another Way, and commanded, that it ſhould be pulled down to the Ground, becauſe, he ſaid, it had been built by Magick. *Demetrius* being then arrived at the Palace of the Czars, took the Reins of Empire, and laboured to eſtabliſhed Peace both at home and abroad.

THE firſt Thing he did, was to name an Ambaſſador to go with his juſt Acknowledgments to the King, and the Republick of *Poland*. With this honourable Employment he inveſted *Athanaſius Iwanowitz Roſcloff*, High Treaſurer, to whom he gave a Train

of three hundred Gentlemen. He received Homage from all the Lords of his Empire, and about ſeventy Families ally'd to that of the Czar *Boris*, or ſtrongly in his Intereſt, were baniſhed, according to the Cuſtom in *Ruſſia*, where the Crime of one Perſon commonly involves all his Relations and Friends. This Act of Juſtice, as it would have been thought in any other Prince, was much condemned in him; as it was obſerved in the firſt Days of this Reign, that *Demetrius* had ſhewn greater Confidence in the *Poles* than the *Ruſſians*, it was ſaid aloud that he would not have baniſhed theſe Families, but to have enriched Strangers with their Spoils; which would draw others into the Country, who muſt likewiſe be rewarded at the Expence of thoſe who ſhould commit the leaſt Fault. This was what gave Riſe to a diſcontented Party, which every Day increaſed, and at the Head of which, the Knez *Theodore Baſilowitz Zuſki* had put himſelf. This Nobleman was greatly diſtinguiſhed for his Bravery, and his Prudence had raiſed him to the firſt Poſts in the Army and the Council; he was bold, enterprizing, always engaged in great Deſigns, vindictive to Exceſs, and ready to ſacrifice every Thing to an Ambition that knew no Bounds.

Zuski condemned to die.

DEMETRIUS had notice of the Plot he had formed, and of the injurious Reports he ſpread every where concerning his Birth, treating him as one raiſed, on a ſudden, out of the Duſt, and whoſe chief Deſigns were to ſubdue the *Ruſſians*, to exterminate the Nobles, and overturn the Religion of their Country.

Country. The Czar ordered him to be taken into Cuſtody, he was try'd, and condemned to Death; and great Preparations were made for his Execution; it was thought that this Example was to be made to reſtrain others from committing the like Offences, and keep the People to their Duty; but this Shew was only made, that the Czar's Clemency towards the Criminal might be the more conſpicuous: He was brought to the Scaffold, was upon his Knees, and waited only for the Stroke of the Executioner, whoſe Arm was already lifted up, when the Czar's Pardon was brought him. And *Demetrius* afterwards received him into his moſt intimate Confidence: We ſhall ſoon ſee how fatal this Moderation was to him.

DEMETRIUS judged very rightly, that *Zuſki* was not the only Perſon whoſe Friendſhip might be uſeful to him; therefore he forgot nothing that he thought might conciliate the Affections of the People to him. He had found immenſe Sums, that the Avarice of *Boris* had amaſſed together in the Treaſury, with theſe he cauſed a new Species of Coin to be ſtruck, which was diſperſed among the Publick, and now Money was ſeen to circulate in a Manner that had been a long Time unknown in *Ruſſia*. He haſtened the Ceremony of his Coronation, which had been fixed for the firſt Day of the Year, that is, the firſt of *September*; but it was now ordered to be performed at the End of *July*, after he had brought to Court the *Czarina*, Widow of *John Baſilowitz*, whom he called his Mother, and whom the Czar *Boris* had confined in a Convent, *for to Cour*

The CZARI *Widow of* JOHN BAS LOWITZ

Convent, in one of the extreme Parts of the Empire.

And how received.

DEMETRIUS went ſeveral Werſts out of *Moſcow* to meet her, and, to give the greater and more publick Marks of his Reſpect, as ſoon as he perceived the Coach ſhe was in at a Diſtance, he alighted himſelf, and went up to her on Foot, embracing her with all imaginable Tranſports of Joy and Affection: This Meeting was of great Weight to put an End to the Doubts which many had concerning his Birth, and ſeemed to ſatisfy every one, that he was the Perſon he pretended to be; thoſe who examined the moſt curiouſly into all his involuntary Motions, could find nothing in them but what ſeemed to flow from the Tranſports of an inexpreſſible Joy at ſeeing a Mother, to whoſe Pains and Care he was doubly indebted for his Life. On the other Hand, there were ſeen in the Princeſs all the Marks of Tenderneſs and Affection, which ſhew'd themſelves in her Embraces, her Tears, her Tranſports of Joy, in ſuch a Manner, that every one was perſuaded it could be only Nature that thus worked in her, knowing it muſt be very difficult to counterfeit ſuch a Part ſo perfectly, as to blind the Eyes of the moſt clear-ſighted, and deceive them, who had an Intereſt in not being made her Dupes. But this Czarina was a Woman, and what cannot that Sex do when they have a Mind to deceive? In acknowledging *Demetrius*, ſhe re-aſcended that eminent Degree of Honour from whence the Death of *John Baſilowitz* had precipitately caſt her down; and ſhe muſt have had but little

little Ambition, if ſo high a Rank, and ſo much Power, could have no Charms for her, eſpecially as ſhe was redeemed from a wretched Baniſhment to be Miſtreſs of her Fate; and what perhaps might have ſtill more Power with one of her Sex, by this feign'd Acknowledgment, ſhe would be in a Condition to revenge herſelf on the Family of *Boris*, and all its Adherents. Needed there any Thing more to make her act this Part, ſuppoſing ſhe was fully perſuaded of the Death of her Son? But if ſhe had been made to believe, that a faithful Hand had ſaved him, as *Demetrius* gave out, unknown to this Mother, how eaſily might her Tenderneſs have been deceived, if the Secret was only then revealed to her; ſhe might have really believed, that it was her Son ſhe then ſaw, for, if this was an Impoſtor, he had two Defects in Nature in common with the other, *viz.* one Arm ſhorter than the other, and a Wen in his Face, not to mention the great Reſemblance in other Reſpects between them, and the Conformity of their Ages. Theſe two Defects might eaſily have been found in two Men; but that they ſhould meet in the ſame Perſon, ſince it was impoſſible they could be counterfeited, ſeemed a Prodigy, ſuppoſing this to be without Contradiction.

DEMETRIUS followed the Coach of this tender Mother to the Palace on Foot, and bare-headed, ſurrounded by all the Lords of his Retinue, in the ſame reſpectful Manner. He was crowned two Days after, with a Pomp and Magnificence beyond any Thing that had been uſed on the ſame Occaſions by

his Predeceſſors. The Czarina, after the Ceremony, retired with the Ladies of her Court to the Monaſtery of *Tebude*, which was a Place of Retreat for young Ladies and Widows of the firſt Quality. The Czar made *Philaret*, or *Theodore Romanow*, Archbiſhop of *Roſtow*, and conferred Favours on others of his ſuppoſed Relations.

THE Ambaſſador that *Demetrius* had ſent to King *Sigiſmund* had Orders, after he had paid his Maſter's ſincereſt Acknowledgments to that Prince, and the Republick of *Poland*, to propoſe a Treaty of the ſtricteſt Alliance, and eſpecially to make War upon the *Turks*, and drive them not only from the Frontiers of *Poland*, and out of all *Hungary*, but to take from them the *Holy Land*, which he ſaw with Grief in the Hands of thoſe Infidels. And laſtly, the Ambaſſador was to deſire *Sigiſmund*'s Leave, for the Czar to marry the Daughter of the Palatine of *Sendomir*, his generous Benefactor.

SIGISMUND anſwered the Ambaſſador, that he was very ſenſible of the Acknowledgments of the Czar his Maſter; that he commended his Zeal for the Chriſtian Religion againſt the *Turks*; that he ſhould accept, very willingly, his Alliance; but that he muſt firſt deliberate on that with the Republick; that as to the Marriage of the Czar with the Daughter of the Palatine of *Sendomir*, he not only conſented to it, but ſhould be greatly rejoiced at it.

WHEREUPON the Ambaſſador eſpouſed this Princeſs, whoſe Name was *Anna Maria Mnieſki*, in the Name of the Czar his Maſter.

The

The Biſhop of *Cracovia* performed the Ceremony of the Eſpouſals. The Ambaſſador having brought the Lady Preſents to the Value of above two hundred thouſand Roubles, ſhe appeared at Court with a Magnificence ſuitable to the Rank this Marriage had raiſed her to; the King gave a very grand Entertainment on the Occaſion, at which the Ambaſſador of *Perſia* was preſent, who had arrived a little before in *Poland.*

WHILE this paſſed, *Demetrius* was running on his Ruin at home. The Conſpiracy of *Zuſki*, and what had given Riſe to it, ought to have made him more circumſpect, and cautious in managing the *Ruſſian* Nobility; but giving himſelf up entirely to two Jeſuits, that he had in his Court, who were the Reverend Fathers *Nicolas Cnermiow*, and *Andrew Lowitz*, he did nothing without their Advice, and theſe conſulted only a precipitate and imprudent Zeal. The firſt delivered the Czar's Eulogium on the Day of his Coronation, and a few Days after *Demetrius* granted to theſe Reverend Fathers a large Convent near the Royal Palace, where they had Liberty to exerciſe the *Roman Catholick* Religion. This Conceſſion very much exaſperated the Minds of the People, who were Enemies to all Religions but that of the *Greek* Church; and the Confidence which the Czar placed in the *Polanders* alone, and particularly in theſe two Jeſuits, loſt him the Affections of the great Men, who in *Ruſſia* have always a Share in the Management of Affairs, and the Diſpoſal of Offices, which are very lucrative, and in great Numbers.

Beſides

Beſides theſe, all the other Actions of *Demetrius* were carefully ſcanned; for as a wiſe * Author ſays, the Lives of great Men are expoſed to the Cenſure of the Publick in Proportion to their Elevation. Every one eaſily perceived, that *Demetrius* did not follow the eſtabliſhed Cuſtoms among the *Ruſſians*, in the Performance of his religious Duties, and eſpecially not uſing to bathe himſelf, which among them is looked upon as very unclean. Theſe Things obſerved, made them begin to doubt of his Birth; and his Marriage with a *Roman Catholick* compleated the ill Opinion they had of him.

ZUSKI, not being able to conquer the Shame and Uneaſineſs he was under for being indebted for his Life to a Man whom he thought an Impoſtor, ſought all Ways how he might find an Excuſe for the Inclination he had to repay with Ingratitude, that great Obligation which *Demetrius* had laid upon him; and at length the fine Pretext of *Love of his Country*, which has in all Ages been the Cloak for a thouſand Vices, and ambitious Deſigns, came to the Aſſiſtance of his ſcrupulous Conſcience, and taught him the Way to be innocently criminal in his own Judgment. He would ſay, that the Love of one's Country, and our Obligations to her, ought to get the better of all other Conſiderations; and therefore, as the Malecontents were without a Chief, for the Sake of his dear Country, he voluntarily put himſelf at their Head, but however deferr'd the Vengeance of the Nation till the Arrival of the Lady, whom the Czar had choſen for his Bride.

* Saluſt. in *Bello* Catil.

THE

THE Murmurings of the Malecontents were not kept ſo ſecret, but that they oftentimes reached the Ear of the Czar, who, at length, began to be apprehenſive of them; and underſtanding that they complained, above all Things, of his not placing any Confidence in his own Subjects, but that he went continually ſurrounded by a Guard wholly compoſed of Foreigners, *Germans*, and *Polanders*; he came to the imprudent Reſolution of diſbanding this Guard, and forming another of *Ruſſians*. But ſoon finding, that this Complaiſance was not ſufficient to appeaſe the exaſperated Minds of the People, he repented too late of having delivered himſelf up into the Hands of his Enemies, and to repair this Error, fell into that of adding to his new Body of Guards, ſome Companies of *Livonians*, *Germans*, *French*, *Engliſh*, and *Scotch*.

WHILE DEMETRIUS took theſe falſe Steps, *Zuſki* ſtill increaſed his Party, into which he found no Difficulty to bring the Patriarch, and the greateſt Part of the Clergy, by ſhewing them the Danger their Religion was in, upon the Ruins of which *Demetrius* was determined to eſtabliſh that of the *Romiſh* Church.

THE future Czarina was ſet out from *Cracovia* in the Beginning of the Month of *January*; but that City being three hundred *Poliſh* Leagues from *Moſcow*, and the Train and Equipage of the Princeſs being very numerous, ſhe did not arrive till towards the End of *April*. Beſides her Father, her Brother-in-Law, with their Domeſticks, and thoſe of

of the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador, a Croud of the *Poliſh* Nobility took this Opportunity to ſee the Country; and a Multitude of Traders, *German*, *Italian* and *French*, had put themſelves into the Princeſs's Train, that they might ſafely tranſport their valuable Cargoes into *Ruſſia*, of which they expected to make very great Profit.

THIS Princeſs was received in a Manner ſo ſplendid that there never had been an Example of any thing like it in that Country. *Peter Buſmanoff*, to whom the Czar had great Obligations, as before mentioned, had in Charge the Care of this Solemnity. He met her with a moſt ſuperb Retinue of *Ruſſian* and *Poliſh* Nobility, and conducted her thro' the Acclamations of vaſt Crouds of the People, accompany'd by the Noiſe of Cannons, and Sounds of various Sorts of muſical Inſtruments, firſt to the Palace, and from thence to the Convent of *Tebude*, where the Czarina Dowager was, and where ſhe was to continue till every thing was ready for her Nuptials. She remained there but four Days; on the fifth the Patriarch performed the Ceremony of bleſſing the Marriage. The Church was ſumptuouſly adorned, on the Occaſion, with a Hanging of Crimſon Damaſk, laced and fringed with Gold. The Czar had the Imperial Crown on his Head, the Sceptre in one Hand, and the Globe in the other; the Czarina, being placed by his Side, was crowned at the ſame Time, after which the new married Couple went to the Palace, with a Court as ſhining as it was numerous, where the Day and Night paſſed in ſuch Diverſions

as

as are uſual on the like Occaſions. It is no uncommon Thing for Diſorder to ſlip into Feaſts of this Kind, and it could hardly be expected to be otherwiſe at this, conſidering the Diſpoſition of the People's Minds at the Time. *Alexander Goſenſki*, whom the King of *Poland* had ſent to the Czar in Quality of Ambaſſador, with very conſiderable Preſents, arrived at *Moſcow* a little before the Czarina. The Superſcription of his Letters was found to be faulty, in that the King of *Poland* gave not the Title of *Emperor* to *Demetrius*, which had been uſed to be given to the Czars. The *Ruſſians* attributed this Omiſſion to the Contempt that the King of *Poland* had for their Monarch; the Ambaſſador endeavoured to excuſe the Miſtake, but very ſharp Expreſſions paſſed on each Side, which exaſperated both Nations. *Demetrius* refuſed to accept the Letters in publick, but knowing how much he ſtood in need of the Support of *Poland*, he diſſembled the Matter in private. This Quarrel between the two Nations was renewed at the Feaſt of the Czar's Nuptials. The Ambaſſador *Goſenski* declared, that he would not aſſiſt at it, unleſs he was placed at the Czar's Table with the ſame Diſtinction that had been ſhewn to the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador, on an Occaſion of the like Kind at *Cracovia*. The Boyars ſtrongly oppoſed this; but *Demetrius*, without having any Regard to their Arguments, allowed the Ambaſſador what he demanded. The *Polanders* rallied the *Ruſſians* hereon, and theſe could not brook it, thinking they were treated as a conquered Nation and Slaves to the *Poles*.

THE Czarina was to give a magnificent Entertainment the *Sunday* following to all the Nobility of her Court, as well *Ruſſians* as Foreigners. The Conſpirators choſe the Eve of this Feaſt for the Execution of their Enterprize. *Demetrius* had Notice of it from many Places, but intrepid in Times of Danger, and accuſtomed to Reports of this Sort, ſpread every Day, he did not ſo much as deign to double his uſual Guard, how much ſoever he was requeſted to do ſo by his moſt intimate Favourites. Nevertheleſs, altho' he took ſo little Care of his own Preſervation, yet he advertiſed the *Poles* to be upon their Guard, for he thought they were the Object of the Hatred of the People, whom he could not think capable of drawing the Sword againſt himſelf.

ON *Saturday*, at Six of the Clock in the Morning, a Company of the Conſpirators, as well Noblemen as Plebeians, ſeized on the Palace, where they found but few Guards, and thoſe in no Condition to defend it. They exhorted one another to be reſolute in exterminating the *Poles*. *Peter Buſmanoff*, awaked by the Tumult, ran almoſt naked to endeavour to appeaſe it; but was the firſt Victim to the Fur of the People: All they met, that look'd like *Polanders*, or belonged to ſuch, immediately fell beneath their Blows. *Zuski*, armed with a Sabre in one Hand, and a Croſs in the other, ran about every where to animate the People to take Vengeance; and, laſtly, to bring thoſe out of their Beds who were prevented, by Sleep, from knowing what paſſed, he ordered the great Alarum Bell

to

to be rung, and ſpread a Report thro' every Corner of the Town, that the *Polanders* had taken up Arms to maſſacre all the *Ruſſians*. At the Sound of this diſmal Bell every one got up and ran out of his Houſe; but when they heard the frightful Report, that immediately paſſed thro' every Mouth, each armed himſelf, deſigning to ſell his Life as dear as poſſible.

DEMETRIUS aroſe himſelf, and aſking what was the Matter, was anſwered by one of the Guards, who was in the Plot, that it was a Fire; but the Cries of the Dying, and of thoſe who fled for Shelter, ſoon taught him the true Cauſe of the Uproar; whereupon he armed himſelf with a Cimeter, and would have gone out of his Chamber, but was prevented, upon which he jump'd out of the Window, and when he would have got up, he found he had put his Thigh-Bone out; ſo he was taken, and *Zuski* ordered him to be conducted into the great Hall of Audience, and kept there under a ſtrong Guard, while the Conſpirators continued to ſlaughter all the *Polanders* they could meet: And ſeveral *Ruſſians* ſhared the ſame Fate, being in *Poliſh* Dreſſes. All their Riches, and thoſe of the Merchants who had followed the Czarina, became the Prey of the Populace.

DEMETRIUS was expoſed to the Inſults of thoſe who were to guard him: And a Boyar reproaching him, with being a Traitor and an Impoſtor, he cleft him aſunder with his Cimeter; ſo boldly did he maintain his high Spirit, even when overwhelmed by ſo many calamitous Circumſtances. At length *Zuski*

and his Adherents brought into his Preſence the old Czarina, Dowager of *John Baſilowitz*, whom he had treated as his Mother, and obliging this Princeſs to ſwear by the Croſs, they demanded of her whether this *Demetrius* was her real Son or no? Whereupon, ſhedding a Torrent of Tears, "ſhe owned it was "but too true, that her Son *Demetrius* had "been aſſaſſinated by Order of *Boris*, and if "ſhe had acknowledged this Man for her Son, "in that ſhe had but followed the Example of "all the People who had declared for him; "beſides indulging the Satisfaction it would "give her, to ſee the Blood of her dear "Child revenged upon that of *Boris* and his "Adherents."

DEMETRIUS *killed.*

As ſoon as the People had this Teſtimony of his being an Impoſtor, they fell upon *Demetrius*, and covered his Body with a thouſand Wounds at once. Others ſay, that the Czarina Dowager had made the foregoing Declaration, not in his Preſence, but, that being told of it, *Demetrius* deſired that he might confront her; but that *Zuski*, without deigning to give him an Anſwer, drew out a Piſtol, and ſhot him thro' the Head.

THE *Poliſh* Ambaſſador was ſecured, with the Palatine of *Sendomir*, his Son-in-law, and the young Czarina his Daughter. This Princeſs, who is very much praiſed for her Beauty, in a Moment ſaw herſelf deſpoiled of all her Riches, and the fine Jewels that *Demetrius* had preſented her with; and, being covered with a very mean Garment, was long kept in Suſpence what her own Fate was to be, hearing all round her nothing but the Cries and Groans

Groans of her ſlaughtered Countrymen; but, at laſt, ſhe was ſhut up in a Convent.

THE mangled Corpſe of the unfortunate *Demetrius* was dragged thro' the Streets, to an open Place before the Caſtle, where, with the Body of *Buſmanoff*, it was left expoſed for three Days, and then buried.

THE Boyars and Senators met immediately to ſettle the Government, and after ſome Debate, they all united in giving the Crown to the Knez *Theodore Baſilowitz Zuski*, to whom the Nation owed its Deliverance.

* STRAHLENBERG gives the following Account of this Election. "The falſe *De-*
"*metrius* being dead, and his Adherents de-
"prived of all Power, the Senators called
"all the chief Families and ancient Nobility
"to *Moſcow* to proceed to an Election.
"When this Aſſembly came to vote, the
"Majority fell upon *Baſilius Zuski* and Prince
"*John Galliczin*; but both having equal
"Votes, the Aſſembly deſired theſe two
"Princes to retire, and to give them Time
"to conſider.

"WHEN they were retired, Prince *Woro-*
"*tinski* made a Speech to the Aſſembly, re-
"preſenting to them the Neceſſity of conſi-
"dering ſome Circumſtances in ſo weighty an
"Affair: For, I. They ought to be cautious
"of chooſing one of a Family that had many
"Relations and Adherents in the Country,
"which afterwards might be prejudicial to
"others. II. That it was neceſſary to pre-
"ſcribe certain Conditions to him who ſhould

* *Hiſtori-Geograph. Deſcription of the* N. *and* E. *Parts of* Europe *and* Aſia. *Pages* 208, 209.

" be choſen, *viz.* (1.) If he had been at Va-
" riance with any Perſon before, that every
" thing ſhould be forgotten and laid aſide.
" (2.) That he ſhould make no Pretenſions
" to any Money or Eſtates of any Perſon
" whomſoever, nor commence Suit againſt
" any one, on that Account; but ſhould re-
" nounce all Demands whatſoever, in order
" to avoid the Exerciſe of unlawful Power,
" or the Occaſion of new Troubles in the
" Empire. (3.) That no new Laws ſhould
" be made, or old ones altered; nor no
" Taxes or Contribution impoſed upon the
" Publick, without the Knowledge and Con-
" ſent of the Senate.

" ALL this the Convention thought right
" and juſt, and made no Scruple to con-
" ſent thereunto. At laſt, he repreſent-
" ed, that thoſe who had given their Votes
" to Prince *Galliczin*, as an honeſt and pru-
" dent Man, had done well; but that his
" Family being too great, and of too high a
" Reputation, he deſired them to conſider
" better, and give their Opinion of it. Upon
" this, one in the Aſſembly anſwered: *Theſe*
" *Lords are of equal Merit, and we have al-*
" *ready done what our Duty requires: But to*
" *decide this Matter, let us conſult the People,*
" *to the End, that no body may have juſt Cauſe*
" *to blame us.* And with this the whole
" Aſſembly concurred. In the mean Time
" *Worotinſki* ſent a Perſon privately among
" the People to give out, that *Zuſki* was
" choſen, and that as ſoon as the *Boyars*
" came out, they ſhould proclaim him.
" When, therefore, the *Boyars* came into

" the

" the Church to conſult the People, they " all cry'd out, God ſave the Czar, *Baſilius* " *Zuſki*. This ſo ſurprized the *Boyars*, that " they thought it a Miracle, for they knew " that none of their Body had left the Aſ- " ſembly."

THUS was *Zuſki* declared Czar; he was ſoon after crowned, and received the Homage of all the People; but to juſtify his own conduct, and render the Memory of *Demetrius* yet more odious, he publiſhed a long Manifeſto, which was in Subſtance, " That *Deme-* " *trius*, whom the divine Juſtice had pu- " niſhed for his Crimes, was an infamous " Impoſtor, who would have paſſed for the " Son of the Great *John Baſilowitz*, altho' he " was no other than a vile Monk even of the " Convent, that was within the Palace, into " which he would never enter, leſt he ſhould " be known by ſome of his quondam Bre- " thren; that his true Name was *Griſka Utro-* " *poja*, who in his Youth had apply'd him- " ſelf to Study, eſpecially to that of Hiſtory " and Muſick; and that having made ſome " Progreſs in the laſt Science, he exerciſed it " the Patriarchal Church. That moreover " he was a Sorcerer, who had raiſed himſelf " to the Throne by the Art Magick; that he " was an Infidel, obſerving none of the Faſts, " nor any of the Ceremonies uſed in the " *Greek* Church; and that he had promiſed " the Pope of *Rome* to extirpate the *Greek* " Chriſtian Religion, as appears by Letters " which the Pope had wrote, to him, where- " in he exhorts him to keep ſtedfaſt to his " Promiſe of building Churches and Col-

" leges for the Jeſuits. That it appeared by
" other Letters, that this Uſurper had re-
" ſolved to enrich Foreigners with the Spoils
" of the *Ruſſians*, for he had promiſed the
" Province of *Smolenſko* to his Father-in-Law,
" that of *Novogorod* to his Wife's Brother-in-
" Law, and other Lands and Territories to
" the Sons of the Palatine of *Sendomir*; that
" he had not ſo unjuſtly put to Death ſo ma-
" ny of the *Ruſſian* Nobles, but to enrich the
" *Polanders* with what he had taken from the
" firſt; that he placed no Confidence but in
" his Foreigners; that all Acceſs to him
" was barr'd againſt the *Ruſſians*, of what
" Quality ſoever, againſt whom the inſolent
" Pages would ſhut the Doors in their Faces,
" tho' the baſeſt *Polanders* were ſuffered to
" go into the Imperial Palace at Pleaſure;
" that he had carried his Expences and his
" Luxury beyond whatever could be ima-
" gined, even ſo far as to give Orders to
" build a Throne of Silver gilt with Gold,
" which was to be ſupported on each Side by
" ſix Lions of the ſame Materials; that he
" had, by his infamous Debauchery, pro-
" faned the Convent where his future Spouſe
" had retired for ſome Days, and that after
" having made the unfortunate Daughter of
" the Czar *Boris* ſubmit to his Pleaſures, he
" had moſt filthily abuſed the Eyes and Ears
" of the religious Perſons in that ſacred Aſy-
" lum of Chaſtity. That he had unworthily
" treated ſeveral Monks, even ordering ſome
" of them to be cudgel'd; that under feign'd
" Pretences he had plunder'd their Cloiſters;
" that he had ſuffered his mercenary *Polanders*

" to

" to plunder with Impunity the Merchants " who traded to *Aſtracan*; that Heaven en- " raged at ſo many Crimes had puniſhed the " Nation that had ſuffered them, and, at " length, brought the infamous Impoſtor to " the Fate he deſerved."

THE new Czar not contenting himſelf with this, cauſed the mangled Corpſe of the Impoſtor to be taken out of the Grave and burnt, and the Aſhes to be thrown into the *Moſcua*, that nothing of him might remain; and ſent to *Uglitz* for the Body of young *Demetrius*, who had been aſſaſſinated by Order of *Boris*, to which he gave a pompous Burial in the Church of St. *Michael*; and the Patriarch having declared him a Martyr, he was enrolled among the Number of the Saints.

THE Czar *Zuſki* employed his firſt Cares to remedy the Diſorders, which are inſeparable from Revolutions of the like Sort, and to re-eſtabliſh the Tranquillity of the State. It is not to be doubted, but that the *Polanders* were incenſed to the laſt Degree, at the Inſult offered to their Ambaſſador, and the Palatine of *Sendomir*, who were both put under an Arreſt. It is true, that this was ſaid to be only as a Precaution, and to ſcreen them from the Inſolence of a licentious Mob; but who could excuſe the Maſſacre of ſo many *Poliſh* Noblemen as had periſhed in this Combuſtion, and to whom they gave no Quarter? The Czar began with publiſhing a Sort of Apology; he afterwards ſent an Ambaſſador to King *Sigiſmund*; and becauſe there were found among the Papers of *Demetrius*, and

the Palatine of *Sendomir*, Letters which proved that the Invaſion of *Demetrius* was not an Enterprize of the Jeſuits and the Palatine only, * but that the King and the Republick had a Share in it, not only by giving their Conſent and Approbation to it, but by lending real Succours; the Czar and the whole *Ruſſian* Nation thought they had a Right to complain of ſuch a Conduct, which was ſo great a Violation of the Treaties ſworn to on both Sides. Beſides all this, it appeared, that *Demetrius* had ſent conſiderable Sums of Money into *Poland*, to ſatisfy thoſe who had furniſhed him for the Expences of his Enterprize; the Czar required theſe to be reſtored, and that the King ſhould diſavow the whole Undertaking, or elſe he muſt be obliged to take Vengeance by the Way of Arms.

POLAND was torn to Pieces by a Civil War; the Confederation of *Rokeſs*, at the Head of which were *Radzivil* and *Stadniſki*, demanded the Reformation of an infinite Number of Abuſes that were crept into the Government and the Eccleſiaſtical Affairs, and

* *The Hiſtorians of theſe Times, that will have it that* Demetrius *was a Monkiſh Impoſtor, ſay, that he firſt diſcovered his Deſign to the Jeſuits of* Poland, *requiring their powerful Protection, and promiſing to eſtabliſh their Order, and the Roman Catholick Religion in* Ruſſia. *With theſe Hopes the Jeſuits took Care to inſtruct him in every Thing that might give Succeſs to ſo great an Enterprize, and found Means to intereſt Pope* Clement VIII. *in the Affair, who wrote to the King of* Poland *about it. The Palatine of* Sendomir, *gained by the Reverend Fathers, the Jeſuits, and with the View of raiſing his Daughter to the Throne, contributed not only his Money, but the Aſſiſtance of his Friends, to carry on the Enterprize. Thus it may be ſaid, that this whole Affair was the Work of* Jeſuitical Policy.

and they were eſpecially irritated againſt the Jeſuits, by whom the King was beſet, and whom they conſidered as the Authors of all their Misfortunes. On the other Hand, the States of *Sweden* aſſembled at *Upſal*, had declared King *Sigiſmund* and his Son both excluded from the Crown of *Sweden*, which they had ſet upon the Head of his Uncle *Charles*, Duke of *Sundermania*. This Prince, on his Side, was going to make good his Pretenſions to the Province of *Livonia*, and ſome other Places, at the Expence of the Royal Treaſure: Therefore it is not ſurprizing, that the Czar's Ambaſſadors ſhould find more Moderation and Temper at the Court of *Poland*, than they could have well expected. *Sigiſmund* excuſed all that had happened, by acknowledging that himſelf, and all *Poland*, had been the Dupes of *Demetrius*, whom they really thought to have been the true and lawful Heir of the Great *John Baſilowitz*, and that therefore they had not violated the Treatries made with that Monarch, in aiding his Son, as they ſuppoſed him, to remount a Throne that another had uſurped from him; that as to the Damages occaſioned hereby, it was but juſt that they ſhould be repaired on each Side, and that, in the mean Time, Conferences ſhould be held on the Means of reeſtabling the Peace.

CHARLES IX. King of *Sweden*, to whom the new Czar had alſo ſent an Ambaſſador, being delighted with ſo fair a Proſpect of drawing Succours from *Ruſſia* to ſupport his Pretenſions againſt *Poland*, conſented very readily to an Alliance between the two States.

Thus much for foreign Affairs. As to Matters at home, he had nothing to fear, but that the Suggeſtions of Strangers might be capable of drawing the People from their Duty, and of engaging them in new Deſigns, for which Reaſon the Czar cauſed all the *Polanders* and *Germans* that were diſperſed about his Dominions to be ſought out, and having got together about fifteen hundred, whom the Soldiers or the Populace robb'd of all they had, he divided them into three Bodies, ordered them to be cloathed, and gave them wherewithal to defray the Expences of their Journey ſparingly, and then ſent three hundred of them back, by the Way of *Smolenſko*, five hundred by *Livonia*, and the reſt by *Poloczk*.

A ſecond Impoſtor named DEMETRIUS.

ALL theſe wiſe Precautions ſeemed to promiſe the *Ruſſians* that Tranquillity which they had ſtood ſo much in need of, ſince their Misfortunes at the End of *John Baſilowitz*'s Reign, the Weakneſs of that of his Son *Theodore*, the Troubles of that of *Boris*, and the Calamities occaſioned by the Revolution of *Demetrius*. But a freſh Impoſtor ſtarted up, with the Name of *Demetrius*, who, although he never appeared, cauſed more Miſchief in *Ruſſia*, than he had done whoſe Name he took, and of whom he was the fatal Spectre.

THE Knez *Gregory Schacopſki* gave Riſe to this Impoſture. He was Keeper of the Seal to *Demetrius*, when he was killed; and ſeeing all in Combuſtion, and that they were ſeeking for every one who had been attached to that Prince, he ſought his Safety by Flight.

He joined himſelf with two *Poliſh* Gentlemen dreſſed like *Ruſſians*, and took with them his Way to *Putivl*, a Town always faithful to *Demetrius*, from the Time he had firſt brought it under his Submiſſion. *Schacopſki* took great Care to publiſh on the Road, that *Demetrius* was not killed, but another in his Stead, and that he had ſaved himſelf, and would very ſoon return to puniſh his ungrateful Subjects. He affected to ſhew very great Reſpect to one of his Companions, whom he would have thought to be *Demetrius*. When he arrived at *Putivl*, he aſſur'd the Inhabitants that *Demetrius* was gone to implore Succours from his Allies, and had ſent him to aſſure them, that he was living, and that he would ſoon ſee them, deſiring them in the mean Time to continue firm in their Allegiance to him: The Inhabitants, upon hearing this, offered to ſacrifice their Lives for their Sovereign.

SCHACOPSKI, very well pleaſed with this firſt Succeſs, ſent to the *Coſſacks*, to whom he gave a Meeting at *Putivl*; they came to him from all Parts: The reſt of the Partizans of *Demetrius*, who deplored his Fate, and who treated *Zuſki* as an ungrateful Man, and an Uſurper, gathered themſelves together, under the Guidance of a Boyar, named *Iſhoma*; and having learnt what paſſed at *Putivl*, ſeveral thouſand went thither, in Hopes of finding their Prince. All the Country took Part with them, and fifteen Caſtles withdrew from the Obedience of the Czar, who no ſooner heard of what paſſed in the *Ukrain*, but he went thither with all Speed,

Speed, at the Head of an Army raiſed in haſte. He imagined it would be more than ſufficient to reduce a Company of Malecontents to their Duty, who had united all by Chance, and had not yet had Time enough to put themſelves in a Poſture of Defence; but this Confidence made him deceive himſelf, for his Army was beaten, and he was forced to retire in great Diſorder to *Moſcow*.

THE Victors receiving the additional Strength of ten thouſand *Coſſacks* brought them by *Polutnich*, followed him; but at the Time that they were going to make themſelves Maſters of *Moſcow*, where all was in Confuſion, *Polutnich* ſhewed *Iſhoma* a Commiſſion from the pretended *Demetrius*, enjoining the latter to give up the Command to the firſt. *Iſhoma* was ſo piqu'd at this Affront, that having debauched near nine thouſand of the *Coſſacks*, he went over to the Side of the Czar, whom he acquainted, that there was no *Demetrius* at *Putivl*. Four thouſand more Men followed the Example of the *Coſſacks*, and abandoned *Polutnich*, who retired, with *Schacopſki*, to *Toula*, where the Czar immediately ordered them to be beſieged. This Town, where they had not had Time to get together any Proviſions, was ſoon reduced to ſo great a Famine, that the Inhabitants were forced to eat the moſt nauſeous Animals. *Polutnich* at length ſeeing they were reſolved to ſurrender, endeavoured to keep up their Spirits, by aſſuring them they would have Succours, and by proteſting to them, that he had ſeen in *Poland* a young Man, about ſix or ſeven and twenty Years of Age,

Age, who, he was told, was *Demetrius*, but that he could not take upon him to be poſitive that it was he, becauſe he had never ſeen him before; but ſaid, if they would take the Trouble to ſend into *Poland* any one who knew that Prince, they might ſoon be informed of the Truth of it. They conſented to this, but the pretended *Demetrius* never appeared. In the mean Time the Czar's Troops preſſed *Toula* ſo vigorouſly, that it was obliged to ſurrender. The *Coſſacks*, who were within, took the Part of the Victor; and the Czar, contrary to his Parole of Honour, ordered the Governour to be hanged; and loading *Schacopſki* and *Polutnich* with Irons, threw them into Priſon, where they died.

NEVERTHELESS, altho' the Perſon, who had undertaken to act the Part of *Demetrius*, had vaniſhed thus, on a ſudden; yet, as the *Polanders* had an Intereſt, that this Phantom ſhould continue in ſome Shape or other, they ſoon put another in his Place. He was taken, they ſay, from a School of *Socola*, a Town in *Ruſſia*, and upon the Noiſe that was made after the Deſertion of *Iſhoma*, who had no *Demetrius*, but in Idea perhaps, *Michawetſki*, a *Poliſh* Gentleman, conducted him to *Putivl*, where he appeared at the Head of a Body of Troops, to go and ſuccour *Toula*; but he found it taken, and the Czar's Army gone to beſiege *Coluga*, the chief Retreat of the Adherents of *Demetrius*. The *Coſſacks* that were found in *Toula*, having gone over to the *Ruſſian* Army, were ſent to this Siege. In the Way, they corrupted the Czar's Soldiers, and

and cauſed them to mutiny; the Diſorder ſpread itſelf into the Camp, ſo that the Soldiers threw down their Arms, and took to Flight; the *Coſſacks* ſeized on their Cannon and Proviſions, and carried them in Triumph into *Coluga*. The falſe *Demetrius*, ſtrengthened by this Succour, and by a great Number of *Poles* and *Ruſſians*, marched againſt his Enemy, killed eight thouſand Men, and took *Miſinowetſki*, who commanded them, Priſoner: This Succeſs gave great Credit to his Party, the neighbouring Towns and Caſtles ſtrove which ſhould ſurrender to him firſt, ſeveral thouſand *Coſſacks* came into his Camp to him, and *Wiſnowieſki* brought into him a great Number of the *Poliſh* Nobility.

THE Czar, who had got together a Body of ſeventeen or eighteen thouſand Men, but little diſciplined, was willing to try a ſecond Battle. He was entirely defeated, and five thouſand of his Men, all that were left, with much Difficulty ſaved themſelves in *Bolcoff*, from whence they were ſoon obliged to paſs over into the Army of *Demetrius*, who, after this new Advantage, had all the Country open to him, ſo that nothing hindered his March towards *Moſcow*, which he would have ſurprized, but for the five thouſand Men forced into his Army at *Bolcoff*, who deſerted, and threw themſelves into the City, which they defended like Men in Deſpair. Nevertheleſs the Burghers would have parley'd, and receiv'd *Demetrius*, if he had not inſiſted upon the Czar *Zuſki*'s being delivered up to him. In the mean Time *Baſile Zuſki*, the Czar's Uncle, got together a Body of Troops

Troops in haſte, with which he came, and encamped within four Werſts of *Moſcow*. The *Poliſh* General, who commanded the Siege, attacked him in his Camp, defeated him, and took him Priſoner: The Czar attempted another Action, but was as unfortunate as in the former. At laſt there remained no Way to get out of this Embarraſſment, but to engage King *Sigiſmund* to withdraw his Troops, and give over his Deſigns. To this End, *Zuſki* ſet the Palatine of *Sendomir* and his Daughter at Liberty, upon Condition that they would employ their Intereſt to bring this about; but *Demetrius*, who was informed of all that paſſed, and who knew how much it would forward the Succeſs of his Enterprize to have theſe Perſons in his Power, ſent ſeveral Horſe to intercept them in their Way, and bring them to him. They preſently ſaw the Impoſture, and could not but expreſs their Aſtoniſhment at the Confidence of the Man who ſo ſteadily maintained his Part, while he was perſonating this feigned Character; but the Palatine had been too ſenſibly affronted, and ill treated by *Zuſki*, to let ſo favourable an Opportunity ſlip of revenging himſelf upon him, and his Daughter could not refuſe to concur with him in it, as by this Means ſhe might re-aſcend to that high Degree of Grandeur from which ſhe was ſo lately fallen, without reckoning upon the Pleaſure it would be to her to revenge herſelf, and her Huſband, on the Cruelty of *Zuſki*. Thus after having been ſome Days in the Camp, ſhe appeared, on a ſudden, with a ſplendid Retinue in the Tent of the pretended

pretended *Demetrius*, whom ſhe acknowledged for her Huſband, and treated him, to Appearance, with the ſame Marks of Kindneſs and Reſpect as if he had been really ſo. This Step baniſhed all Doubts, and the Impoſtor was acknowledged for the true *Demetrius* every where throughout *Ruſſia*, but at *Moſcow*, *Novogorod* and *Smolenſko*.

THE King of *Poland* was willing to take Advantage of the deplorable Condition to which *Ruſſia* was reduced, to recover thoſe Places which had once belonged to that Crown. With this View he ordered his Army to advance towards *Smolenſko*, to which City he laid Siege. The *Ruſſians*, thus attacked on all Sides, could not long have reſiſted, had it not been for the Succours that the Czar *Zuſki* received from the King of *Sweden*, under the Command of *Pontus de la Gardie*, with which he was now ſtrong enough to make Head againſt *Demetrius*, but durſt not hazard a Battle to relieve *Smolenſko*. King *Sigiſmund* himſelf contributed to eaſe him in this Diſtreſs; he began to conceive a Jealouſy of the Power of *Demetrius*, and feared, not without Reaſon, that if *Zuſki* was entirely ſubdued, the *Ruſſians* would put this *Demetrius* in his Place, as they had crowned the other in the Room of *Boris*.

THIS was not what he wanted, he had not produced and ſupported this other Impoſtor, but to give the *Ruſſians* ſo much Employment at home, that they might not be in a Condition to lend Aſſiſtance to the *Swede*; and his Intention was, if he ſucceeded, to make uſe of all his Forces to conquer *Ruſſia*.

He therefore recalled the *Poles* that ſerved under *Demetrius*, who kept only his *Coſſacks*, ſome *Ruſſians*, and a few Auxiliaries that he gained among the *Tartars*. *Zuſki* began to take Breath again, and *Demetrius*, who had choſen *Coluga* for the Seat of his doubtful Empire, troubled him no more. He even thought himſelf ſtrong enough to go and ſuccour *Smolenſko*, but the *Polanders* would not ſuffer him to advance ſo far, and, as if they would ſpare him the Pains of his Journey, they met him at *Cluſin*, attacked, and defeated him: However, *Smolenſko* did not ſurrender; but the *Ruſſians*, conſidering the Train of Defeats and Misfortunes that had attended the Government of *Zuſki* for five Years together, thought that Heaven was diſpleaſed with him, and that he was therefore the Cauſe of all their Calamities: On the other Side, the Grandees and the Bulk of the People were perſuaded, that *Demetrius* was an Impoſtor, and were juſtly incenſed againſt him for having brought the *Poles* into the very Heart of *Ruſſia*. They wanted a new Maſter, and ſuch an one as might rid them of this *Demetrius*, and make Head againſt the *Poles*, or at leaſt be agreeable to them, ſo that they might not be harraſſed any longer by them. After many Deliberations, they could not think of any better Expedient to extricate themſelves out of the Troubles they were in, than to offer the Crown to *Wladiſlaus*, the Son of *Sigiſmund*, King of *Poland*. They hoped by this Means to ſave *Smolenſko*, to deſtroy *Demetrius*, and re-eſtabliſh Peace; and thought, perhaps, when

when the Danger was over, there would be no great Difficulty to get rid of their new Prince, as the *Ruſſians* had ſuch a natural Antipathy to the *Polanders*.

WLADISLAUS *choſen Czar.*

WLADISLAUS accepted the Crown, *Zuſki* was depoſed, and retired into a Convent, from whence he was taken to be delivered to the *Poles*, with all his Family; and ſoon after died of Grief, or, as ſome ſay, by Poiſon. *Demetrius* made Head againſt the *Poles* for ſome Time, till he was maſſacred at a Feaſt by the *Tartars*, to revenge the Death of *Kaſimouſki* their Chief, whom he had caus'd to be drowned. Nevertheleſs his Party ſubſiſted for ſome Years, for not only *Zarveki*, the General of the *Coſſacks*, proclaimed his Son, whom the *Ruſſians* acknowledged upon *Zarveki*'s Promiſe to aſſiſt them in driving away the *Poles*; but a new Impoſtor took the Name and Place of *Demetrius*.

A fourth Impoſtor of the Name of DEMETRIUS.

THIS was the Clerk of an Office, whoſe real Name Hiſtory has not preſerved to us; but we are told he was a Man of Intrigue, bold, enterprizing, and who wanted neither Wit nor Conduct. He firſt appeared in the Province of *Novogorod*, where he gave out, that he was the true *Demetrius*, the ſame that had eſcaped from the Hands of the Aſſaſſins employed to deſtroy him by *Boris*, the ſame who had eſcaped from *Zuſki* at *Moſcow*, and from the Snares of the *Tartars* at *Coluga*. Several hundred Soldiers joined him, and the meaner People by little and little gathering to his Party, he was almoſt aſtoniſhed himſelf to find how ſtrong he was grown. He carried his Boldneſs ſo far as to ſend an Ambaſſador

baſſador to the King of *Sweden*, to demand Succours from him, by Virtue of the Alliance between the two States, and publiſhed a Manifeſto to engage thoſe whom he called his true Subjects to return to their Obedience.

THE King of *Sweden*, amazed to ſee this *Demetrius* ariſing every Moment, like another Phœnix, from his Aſhes, ſent a Perſon, named *Petreius*, who was very well acquainted with the firſt *Demetrius*, or *Griſka Utropoja*, to examine who he was. The new *Demetrius*, apprized of this, feigned himſelf out of Order, and ſent the *Swediſh* Miniſter to his principal Secretary, who was then at *Iwanogorod*, where all the Country had acknowledged him. *Petreius* deſired him to acquaint his Maſter, that he had ſecret Affairs, of great Importance, to communicate to him; but it was of greater Importance to him not to be ſeen; wherefore the *Swede* was obliged to go away without ſpeaking to him, and without determining any Thing.

KING SIGISMUND had balanced, for ſome Time, whether or no he ſhould conſent to his Son's accepting the Crown of *Ruſſia*. His Ambition was to make that Empire a conquered Country, and although he had promiſed that *Wladiſlaus* ſhould ſoon go to *Moſcow* to receive the Homage of his new Subjects, yet he did not much haſten his Departure, but in his Stead ſent ſuch a Number of *Polanders* into the Country, that there were reckoned above ten thouſand in the City of *Moſcow* alone, in a Condition to revenge the Blood of their Countrymen, which had been

ſhed with that of the ſecond *Demetrius*. He preſſed *Smolenſko* to ſurrender to him; the Governor declared, that he was ready to open the Gates of the City to the Czar *Wladiſlaus*; but *Sigiſmund* would have the Town ſurrendered and united to *Poland*, therefore the Siege continued in this Manner for almoſt two Years; the Gariſon would not capitulate, and the *Poles* were obliged to take the Town by Aſſault, after two hundred thouſand Inhabitants had periſhed in it; ſo that *Sigiſmund* had a Town almoſt depopulated, and reduced to Aſhes.

THE POLANDERS continually repreſented to their King, that the *Ruſſians* ſought only how they might deceive them, and that it would be more glorious for him to be the Conqueror of the Country, than only Father of the Czar. He deferred, from Day to Day, the Departure of his Son; but in the mean Time, *Staniſlaus Solkouſki*, the *Poliſh* General, had received the Oath of Allegiance from the *Ruſſians*, in the Name of *Wladiſlaus*, and they had permitted him to put a thouſand Men in Gariſon in the Caſtle of *Moſcow*. The continued Delays of the Departure of *Wladiſlaus*, the Inſolence of the *Polanders*, who had forgot how much their Licentiouſneſs had coſt them ſome Years before, and the Impatience of the *Ruſſians*, who ſaw no End of their Miſeries, all together ſpurred them on to meet in great Numbers in the Place before the Caſtle, on the 24th of *January*, 1611, where they loudly complained of the Outrages they had received from the *Poles*, who ought to have protected and defended

fended them, adding at the ſame Time, that they ſhould be forced to uſe thoſe Remedies that Nature had put into their Hands, for their Safety, if ſome better Courſe were not taken. General *Solkouſki* did all that was in his Power to appeaſe them, and even ſeverely chaſtized ſome of the *Polanders*, who were the moſt culpable: But this did not ſatisfy the *Ruſſians*; and the *Polanders*, apprehending a general Inſurrection, redoubled their Guards, poſſeſſed themſelves of the principal Streets, and forbad the *Ruſſians* to aſſemble or bear Arms. This incenſed them ſo, that they all roſe, and met together in ſeveral Parts of the City, on Purpoſe to oblige the *Polanders* to divide their Forces. Thoſe who did not think themſelves ſtrong enough to reſiſt them, had Recourſe to an horrible Method to divert their Enemies. *Moſcow*, at that Time, contained above an hundred and eighty thouſand Houſes, the *Polanders* ſet Fire to three or four Parts of the Town at once, and while the *Ruſſians* ran to the Aſſiſtance of their Wives and Children, they fell upon them on all Sides, and made ſo horrid a Slaughter, that that, together with the Fire, had deſtroyed near two hundred thouſand Souls, with the greateſt Part of the Houſes in the City. The Czar's Treaſury was plundered, as well as the Churches and Convents, from whence the *Polanders* drew an incredible Quantity of Gold, Silver, and precious Stones, which they ſent into their own Country, and the common Men got ſo much Booty, and ſo rich, that, it is ſaid, ſome of them loaded their Piſtols with large round Pearls.

IN this Manner the *Polanders* remained Maſters for fifteen Days, when *Zachary Lippenow*, putting himſelf at the Head of a good Army, came and beſieged them in the Caſtle. King *Sigiſmund*, who, as has been ſaid before, had taken *Smolenſko*, might have ſent them Succours without much Difficulty, and put Things upon a good Footing in *Ruſſia*, but he returned into *Poland*, without ſending the Beſieged any Aſſiſtance, either in Men or Money. The *Polanders*, therefore, to the Number of ſeven thouſand, having left a Gariſon in the Caſtle, left *Moſcow*, and coming to their King, obliged him to advance their Pay.

AT length *Sigiſmund* undertook in good earneſt, to re-eſtabliſh his Affairs in this Empire; but none of his Deſigns ſucceeded, on Account of the Jealouſy of his Generals; ſo that at length *Lippenow*, who kept the Caſtle beſieged, reduced it by Hunger; and when that had ſurrendered, the King of *Poland* loſt all that he had in *Ruſſia*.

WHEN the Boyars and Senators ſaw the State a little in Repoſe, it was propoſed to proceed to the Election of a new Czar, as the Throne had been declared vacant by *Wladiſlaus*'s not coming to accept the Crown. In the firſt Aſſembly that convened upon this Account, it was recommended by ſome of the Members to the reſt, above all Things, to have a Regard for the Welfare of their Country in giving their Votes, ſo that all new Troubles might be avoided; and they admoniſhed them, that though the Intention of thoſe who were for promoting the Intereſt of a foreign

reign Prince might be good, and believed by them to be for the Advantage of the Empire, yet they might be miſtaken, and a foreign Power might bring Ruin on their Country; but in chuſing one of their own Body, they ſaid, they ought to take Care not to give their Votes to any that had too great a Family and Relations, or who had been inſtrumental in the late unhappy Troubles, by which ſeveral had made themſelves Friends, and others Enemies, and therefore might eaſily be the Cauſe of new Diſturbances. Laſtly, they ſaid, that he who was choſen, ſhould agree to certain Conditions drawn up by the Aſſembly, and not be crowned before he had ſolemnly ſworn to obſerve them.

AFTER others had been named in the Aſſembly, who were ſet aſide, one of the Members propoſed *Michael Theodorowitz Romanow*, Son of the Archbiſhop of *Roſtow*, a Youth of ſeventeen Years of Age, who was with his Mother in a Convent at *Caſtroma*, his Father *Theodore Romanow*, or *Philaret*, being at that Time a Priſoner in *Poland*, whither he had been ſent on an Embaſſy. This Propoſal ſoon gained the Approbation of many, for in this young Man were center'd all the Circumſtances above-mentioned, which they imagined neceſſary to preſerve the Tranquillity of the Empire, and make them a happy People. There were but three Males of his Family living; he had not been concerned in the late Troubles, and his Father being a Clergyman of known Piety and Virtue, would rather adviſe Peace, than endeavour to excite new Diviſions; of which he had given

a Proof, by a Letter which he found Means to convey from his Priſon to his Wife's Brother *Czeremetoff*, wherein he exhorted him, as a General and a Senator, earneſtly to conſider the Good of the Empire, and to perſuade the reſt of the Senate to do the ſame.

CZEREMETOFF having laid this Letter before the Aſſembly, it inſpired them with new Reſolutions at the enſuing Election, and gave Occaſion for naming the good Archbiſhop's Son, which Nomination, though none could object to, yet no one preſent could ſay any Thing as to the Qualifications of the young Nobleman. The *Caſtromian* Noblemen, who were then in the Aſſembly, had indeed ſeen him; but all that they could ſay was, that they looked upon him to be diſcreet for his Age. The Aſſembly was neither willing to ſet him aſide, on Account of his Youth, nor able to determine the Election in his Favour, till they enquired into his Character, and had ſeen him; they therefore ſent two Noblemen with a Letter to his Mother, deſiring ſhe would ſend her Son to *Moſcow* with thoſe Deputies.

THE tender Mother had no ſooner read this Letter, than ſhe began to weep, and lament her Misfortune, in that her only Son muſt be taken from her to ſhare the Fate of ſo many Czars, who had been already miſerably ſlaughtered, one after another. She, therefore, wrote a Letter to her Brother *Czeremetoff*, earneſtly deſiring him to uſe his Endeavours with the Senate, that her Son might be excuſed, being too young, and incapable of ſo high a Dignity, and having no Relations

tions that were capable of assisting him with their good Advice, for the Benefit of the *Empire*, as he himself, as well as they, would find, but perhaps too late; for which Reasons she intreated him to prevail on the Nobility to cast their Thoughts upon another Person, more capable to govern both himself and the Empire.

THIS Letter, and the Report of the Deputies, caused a great Dispute in the Assembly. Some took it amiss, and thought it very unbecoming the Mother thus to oppose the Will of the whole Assembly; others considering her Reasons, and that she was not ambitious of having her Son promoted to so high a Dignity, were the more confirmed in the Opinion they had conceived of him.

CZEREMETOFF, though he understood the Matter better than his Sister, dissembled, and pretended he would not concern himself in the Matter; but underhand he worked effectually to bring the Business about, and persuaded the Metropolitan of *Moscow* to insist in the Assembly upon chusing young *Romanow*. This Metropolitan, expecting to advance his own Interest by it, came one Day early into the Assembly, and declared, with a solemn Asseveration, that he had had a Revelation, and that if the Assembly was desirous to have a prosperous Prince to rule over them, they could have none better than young *Romanow*. This pretended Revelation, backed by so solemn a Speech, had such an Effect, that the whole Assembly desired *Czeremetoff* to write once more to his Sister, to let her Son come to *Moscow*. *Cze-*

remetoff was afraid, that if young *Romanow* ſhould come to *Moſcow*, many might diſapprove of him, on Account of his Youth, or that, by his Anſwers, and Diſcourſe, he might give Occaſion to the oppoſite Party to raiſe new Objections, which, by his Abſence, might be avoided, ſince no one there could give an Account of his Capacity; he therefore anſwered, with a feigned Humility: I muſt not oppoſe the Will of God, nor the Opinion of the Aſſembly: However, I think it ought to be taken into Conſideration, that his Mother endeavours, with Tears, to avert it: I, for my Part, will be neutral in the Caſe, leſt any body ſhould think I have more Regard for my Relations, than for the Good of the Empire, and that I may have a clear Conſcience before God, and this Aſſembly, in Caſe any Misfortune ſhould happen on Account of his Youth.

THIS Speech, accompanied with many Tears, had ſuch an Effect, that even thoſe who before had been moſt againſt it, ſaid: Why ſhould we uſe ſo many Intreaties in this Caſe, ſince we have ſo full Power from the Almighty. As to his Youth, God, who has choſen him, will alſo protect him: Let us therefore no longer debate the Matter, but acknowledge him our Sovereign; to which all agreed. Hereupon they went to the Church, and proclaimed him, to the great Satisfaction and Joy of all who were preſent, eſpecially the common People, who were mightily taken with the pretended Revelation. This was no ſooner done, than they ſent ſome of the Senators to the young Czar,

to

to intreat him to come to *Moſcow*, in order to his Coronation, which he did accordingly; and thus the Imperial Crown of *Ruſſia* firſt came into the illuſtrious Family of *Romanow*, in which it ſtill continues with double Luſtre on the Head of the preſent Empreſs ELIZABETH, Great Grandaughter of *Michael Theodorowitz*, and Daughter of PETER *the Great* of immortal Memory.

The End of the Second BOOK.



THE

THE HISTORY OF *RUSSIA*,

To the End of the Reign of the

Empreſs CATHARINE.

BOOK III.

The CONTENTS.

The Reign of Michael Theodorowitz.

MICHAEL THEODOROWITZ was called to the Throne of *Ruſſia* in the Year of our Lord 1613. He was a Prince of a moſt engaging and ſweet Temper, who delighted in the Arts of Peace, and was reſolved, if poſſible, to efface the Remembrance of all the Cruelties of his Predeceſſors: As ſoon as he had notified his Acceſſion to the King of *Poland*, his Father, the Archbiſhop of *Roſtow*, was immediately ſet at Liberty, and ſent home; where not long after the Czar his Son,

Son, upon the Death of the *Ruſſian* Metropolitan, created him Patriarch, and conſtantly treated him with the utmoſt Reſpect and filial Piety, conſulting him in all Affairs of Importance, and giving him the firſt Place in all publick Aſſemblies, which greatly raiſed the Credit of the Patriarch's Office, held in high Eſteem before.

THE Czar *Michael Theodorowitz* began his Reign by appeaſing all the Troubles within his Kingdom, and by ſtriking at the Root from whence it was apprehended others might ariſe. For a large Sum of Money he engaged the *Coſſacks* to put *Coluga* into his Hands, where the pretended Son of the ſecond *Demetrius* kept his Court; they likewiſe delivered his Mother and *Zaverſki*, who had been declared his Protector; the laſt was impaled alive, and the young *Demetrius* with his Mother, the unfortunate Daughter of the Palatine of *Sendomir*, were both drowned under the Ice. The other Impoſtor of the Name of *Demetrius*, was delivered up to the Czar by the People of *Pleſkow*, whom he had ill treated, and was hanged without the Walls of *Moſcow*.

WE have ſeen before, that *Charles* King of *Sweden* had ſent to aſſiſt the Czar *Zuſki* againſt the *Polanders*. But the *Ruſſians* not ſeconding *Pontus de la Gardie*, as they ought to have done, he retired, with ſeveral hundred *Swedes* and *Finlanders*, to ſeek at leaſt to make good the Expences the King his Maſter had been at; he therefore endeavoured to ſeize on the Places that *Zuſki* had promiſed him. He preſſed the *Ruſſians* to evacuate *Kexholm* to

him; but ſo far from doing what he required, they took from the Couriers, the Inſtrument of the Treaty he had made with them, and which he was ſending into *Sweden*, and refuſed him Entrance into *Novogorod*. This Conduct, which ſavoured ſomewhat of the *Grecian* Perfidy, determined the *Swediſh* General to take by Force, what he found he could not obtain otherwiſe; and having received a Reinforcement from *Sweden*, he took Poſſeſſion of * *Ladoga*, afterwards made himſelf Maſter of *Kexholm*, and, re-entring *Ruſſia*, went and encamped before *Novogorod*, at the Time when they were deliberating at *Moſcow* about dethroning the Czar *Wladiſlaus*. He propoſed Prince *Charles-Philip* of *Sweden* to ſucceed him, and ſome of the principal Men in the Country gave him Hopes, that this might be brought about; but having obſerved the Irreſolution and Inconſtancy of the *Ruſſians*, he thought he might puſh the Affair with a better Proſpect of Succeſs, if he appeared in a Condition to be able to ſupport him; he therefore attacked *Novogorod*, and took it by Aſſault. Thoſe who ſaved themſelves in the Caſtle were allowed to capitulate, upon Condition that they would put themſelves under the Protection of the King of *Sweden*, and would elect the Prince of *Sweden* for their Sovereign, this Prince promiſing to maintain the *Greek* Religion, and to defend them againſt all their Enemies. After this *la Gardie* put a Gariſon in the Fortreſs, and took the Oaths of all the *Ruſſians* who

* *A City which gives Name to the Lake, near which it is ſituated.*

who were found in the City; upon which the People of *Novogorod* ſent an Ambaſſador to offer the Crown to Prince *Charles-Philip*; but while theſe Things paſſed *Charles* IX. died, and his Son *Guſtavus Adolphus* ſucceeded him. This young Prince being very much embarraſſed with the Wars of *Denmark* and *Poland*, and not anſwering ſo warmly to the Solicitations of the *Ruſſians*, as they expected, the whole Affair would have fallen to the Ground, if *la Gardie* had not taken Pains to keep up the good Diſpoſition they were in. At length, Peace being made at *Knaredh*, between *Sweden* and *Denmark*, *Guſtavus Adolphus* thought ſeriouſly on the Offers made by the *Ruſſians*, and believed there was the more Likelihood of Succeſs, as all the Northern Part of the *Ruſſian* Empire ſeemed much inclined to a *Swediſh* Prince. The King, therefore, receiving freſh Inſtances from the People of *Novogorod*, anſwered with great Civility, and aſſured them, that he would ſoon come among them, for he was inclined to take the *Ruſſian* Empire for himſelf, and join it to the Crown of *Sweden*, rather than to yield it to his Brother: But this was not the Intention of the *Ruſſians*, who could eaſily penetrate into his Deſigns, when they obſerved, that he made no Mention of his Brother. For which Reaſon, willing to have a Prince of their own, without being under the Power of the *Swedes*, and not believing that both States could be well governed by one Sovereign in the preſent Conjuncture, they anſwered *Guſtavus* with much Reſpect, beſeeching him, "to ſend his Bro-

"ther

" ther *Charles-Philip* to them without Delay, " ſince his Majeſty had too much Employ " ment upon his Hands in his own King- " dom, to have Time to re-eſtabliſh the Af- " fairs of *Ruſſia*, which were in great Diſor- " der and Confuſion."

The Prince of SWEDEN *miſſes the Crown of* RUSSIA.

No Opportunity could have been more favourable; nevertheleſs it was loſt, whether the King could not bear to ſee his Brother on the Throne of ſo powerful an Empire, whether the Queen, his Mother, feared to expoſe him to the inconſtant Temper of the *Ruſſians*, or, laſtly, whether the *Swediſh* Grandees, who had conceiv'd a Jealouſy of *la Gardie*, did what they could to prevent an Affair of ſuch Importance being brought about by a Foreigner.

IN the mean Time the *Swediſh* Troops did not remain idle in *Ruſſia*; *Slange* took * *Notebourg* by Compoſition, in the Name of Prince *Charles-Philip* the intended Czar; *Everd Horn*, in the ſame Manner, made himſelf Maſter of *Coporie*, *Iamagorod*, *Iwanogorod*, and *Augdo*; and formed a Deſign upon *Pleſkow*, but miſcarried in it.

THE RUSSIANS had waited, with Impatience, for the Prince of *Sweden*; but obſerving the Contempt, or rather the Indifference, with which he anſwered their Expectations, their Inclinations towards him began to cool, and eſpecially when they thought they had Reaſon to ſuſpect, that *Guſtavus* ſought rather to extend the Limits of his own Kingdom, than to procure the Empire of *Ruſſia* for his Brother, and aſſiſt them in retrieving their

* *Now called* Slutelbourg.

their ſhattered Affairs. For theſe Reaſons they proceeded to an Election at *Moſcow*, which, as hath been ſaid before, fell upon *Michael Theodorowitz*, in Spite of all the Oppoſition that *la Gardie* could make, who was active enough among the People of *Novogorod* to engage them to take a freſh Oath to Prince *Charles-Philip*, whom the King, his Brother, at length ſent to *Wybourg*, when it was too late.

LA GARDIE having received a conſiderable Succour from *Sweden*, reinforced the Gariſon of *Novogorod*. The Inhabitants ſent Deputies to felicitate the Prince on his Arrival at *Wybourg*, and to intreat him to come to *Novogorod*. But the Counſellors, whom *Guſtavus* had ſent with his Brother, would not conſent to that, pretending that all the Places of the Empire ſhould ſend Deputies to ſhew, that they were ſatisfied with the Election, and that the Diſorders in the State ſhould firſt be quieted. The *Ruſſians* perſiſted, that the Prince ought to come and ſhew himſelf at *Novogorod*, which had formerly been the Capital of a particular Monarchy, and ſeparated from the reſt of *Ruſſia*, or at leaſt that he ſhould go to *Iwanogorod*, that it might be ſaid he had taken Poſſeſſion of the Empire. But they could obtain nothing: The *Swediſh* Counſellors kept to their Inſtructions, and the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſadors retired, but not till they had conſented to renew, upon the Croſs, the Oath of Allegiance to the Prince.

THE Inſtructions of the Prince's Counſellors imported alſo, that if the *Ruſſians* would not do what was expected from them, they

they ſhould ſeize on all the Province of *Novogorod*: *La Gardie* judged this Enterprize too delicate, not to ſay impoſſible, with ſo few Forces, which would not fail of expoſing the *Swedes* to the Inſults of the *Ruſſians*. But the new Czar, *Michael Theodorowitz*, was not reſtrained by the ſame Reaſons, and the more Intereſt the *Swedes* had in managing the *Ruſſians*, the more was he concerned to irritate them againſt thoſe who had kept from him ſo great a Part of his Subjects; and the *Swedes*, after they had conceived great Hopes of Friendſhip and Alliance with the *Ruſſians*, entered into a bloody War with them.

THE Czar ſent an Army into the Field, to recover all that the *Swedes* had taken from the Empire; and at the ſame Time ſent Miniſters to *England*, *Germany*, *Denmark*, and *Holland*, to notify his Acceſſion to the Throne; but above all, to make his Complaints of the Conduct of the *Swedes*. *La Gardie* defeated eight thouſand *Ruſſians*, who had been advantageouſly incamped to cut off his Communication with *Novogorod*. *Everd Horn* beſieged *Augdo*, which the *Ruſſians* had ſurprized; and *Guſtavus* himſelf came to *Narva*, to aſſiſt at the Taking of that Town: In a Word, the *Ruſſians* were diſtreſſed on all Sides.

THE King of *Sweden* thought he ought to take his Advantage of the bad Situation to which the Enemy was reduced, to make him enter into ſome Negotiation; and to this End employed the *Engliſh* Ambaſſador, who was then at the Court of the Czar; but to give Weight to his Remonſtrances, he came back the next Year

Year to *Narva*, with a Reſolution to beſiege *Pleſkow*; but this Enterprize did not ſucceed. *Everd Horn*, his General, was mortally wounded, and the Beſieged ſupported themſelves with ſo much Bravery againſt all Aſſaults, that the King, at length, for want of Artillery, was forced to raiſe the Siege.

THE Miniſters of *England* and *France* being choſen Mediators between the two Crowns, opened their Conferences with the *Ruſſians* at *Glebova*, where a Truce was agreed to, and the preliminary Articles of a Peace, which was concluded the next Year at *Stelbova*, by which the Czar yielded to the King of *Sweden*, *Kexholm*, and its Dependences, with all *Ingria*. Theſe enabled *Sweden* to make a ſtrong Rampart on that Side of the Empire, and cut off the *Ruſſians* from all Communication with the *Baltick Sea*; but theſe conſoled themſelves with ſeeing their Commerce more and more eſtabliſhed every Day in the *White Sea*, where the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Merchantmen came conſtantly, and with whom they choſe to traffick, rather than with any other Nations.

THE Czar forgot nothing that could be done to re-eſtabliſh Order and Tranquillity in his Empire, and publiſhed every Day ſome new Ordinance, to remedy the Abuſes that had crept into the Provinces during the late Troubles. There remained no Enemies without his Dominions, but the *Poles*, and they were too much employed by the *Turks* to give him much Uneaſineſs at that Time; but as ſoon as their Hands were at Liberty on that Side, they bent all their Force againſt

Ruſſia, whither Prince *Wladiſlaus* came at the Head of a numerous Army, pretending, that, by Virtue of his Election, the *Ruſſians* ought to acknowledge him for their Sovereign. Theſe reproached him with having abandon'd them, and ſaid, that his refuſing to come into *Ruſſia*, when his Preſence was ſo neceſſary, was ſufficient to diſcharge them from their Oath of Allegiance to him. He attacked *Moſcow*, and left the *Coſſacks* to plunder all the Country round. But finding, at length, that by the *Ruſſians* ſtanding firm by their Prince, *Michael Theodorowitz*, he had not much to expect for himſelf, he conſented to an Accommodation, and concluded a Truce for fourteen Years, the Baſis of which was, that every one ſhould enjoy what they were then actually poſſeſſed of.

RUSSIA now found herſelf at Peace with all her Neighbours, and the Czar in a Condition to put in Execution the prudent and ſalutary Meaſures he was taking for the Proſperity of his People: One of the firſt was, by marrying, to endeavour to provide for them an Heir to his Crown of his own Blood, when it ſhould pleaſe God to take him from them. The Lady, who was Miſtreſs of his Choice on this Occaſion, was *Eudocia*, the Daughter of *Lucojan Streſchnew*. Of the Proceedings in this Affair, we have the following Account given by *Strahlenberg*, which may not be unentertaining to the Reader.

The Czar MICHAEL THEODOROWITZ *marries.*

* THE Czar having declared his Intention of marrying to the Senate, the *Boyars* looked out

* *Hiſtori-Geographical Deſcription of the N. and E. Parts of* Europe *and* Aſia, p. 218, 219.

out for the moſt beautiful Ladies that were to be found, and ſent them to Court: They were received by the Grande Gouvernante of the Court, and each of them had an Apartment provided ſuitable to their reſpective Quality, till the Time of the Election. During this Interval, they all dined together at one Table, where the Czar had an Opportunity of ſeeing them in publick, and *incognito*, in order the better to direct his Choice to one of this beautiful Company. However, Recommendation had no ſmall Share in this Matter; becauſe in ſo ſhort a Time, it was impoſſible for the Czar perfectly to judge of their Humours and Paſſions. And though he often diſguiſed himſelf, and waited, among others, at Table, yet, in all Probability, this could not be done with ſo much Privacy, but every one might have a Hint to be upon her Guard, and artfully to conceal her natural Temper.

As ſoon as the Czar was determined in his Choice, the Grande Gouvernante only was made acquainted with it, and ordered to get Cloaths made for them all, and for the Bride a Wedding Suit. In the mean Time a Day for the Solemnization of the Nuptials was appointed, though none of them knew who was to be the Bride; and that Day being come, the new Cloaths were diſtributed, and the Bride then received her Nuptial Robes, which made it known upon whom the Choice was fallen. They then all paid their congratulatory Compliments to the Bride; and as ſoon as ſhe was proclaimed, the reſt were ſent home.

STRESCHNEW, the Father of the Czar's Conſort *Eudocia*, was a poor Nobleman, who living privately upon his ſmall Eſtate, about two hundred Werſts from the City of *Moſcow*, could not be ſoon informed of his Daughter's good Fortune; but ſoon after the Nuptials were over, the Czar ſent one of the Lords of his Bed-Chamber to him with ſuitable wearing Apparel, Servants, Coaches and Horſes, and every Thing neceſſary to convey him and his whole Family to *Moſcow*. When the Lord came to his Seat, he found *Streſchnew* in the Fields, where he himſelf, with others, were at Plough; and after he had ſaluted him in the Name of the Czar, and Czarina his Daughter, he acquainted him it was their Deſire he ſhould come to *Moſcow*. This Compliment very much ſurprized honeſt *Streſchnew*, who thought the Lord only jeſted with him; his Anſwer, therefore, was: My Lord, I do not know you, however I ſee you are one of our Great Czar's Court; I am but a poor Nobleman, and think it no Shame to maintain myſelf and Family in the Manner you ſee, therefore I beg you would not hinder me from taking the Advantage of the fair Weather. But the Lord delivering him a Letter from his Daughter the *Czarina*, which he deſired him to read, and to go home, and accept of the Preſents he had left for him there, he was, at length, convinced it was no Jeſt: Upon which he ſet out for *Moſcow*, where he was created a *Boyar*, and the Family continues in great Eſteem to this Day.

THE

THE Czarina *Eudocia* was as virtuous and gracious, as ſhe was fair, and, by her prudent Conduct, ſhe gained the Love of the whole Nation. In the firſt Year ſhe had a Daughter, and afterwards ſucceſſively three more. The Czar, who took it very much to Heart, that ſhe had not bore him a Son, had ſome Thoughts of being divorced from her; but his Mother prevailed upon the Senate to endeavour to divert him from ſuch a Reſolution; and they ſucceeded ſo well, that he altered his Mind; the Czarina bringing forth Prince *Alexis*, the very next Year after, ſecured the Czar's Affections to her, which continued till they were parted by Death.

A SHORT Time after the Birth of the Czarewitz *Alexis*, two Ambaſſadors arrived at *Moſcow* from the States-General of the United Provinces; the one M. *Albert Conrad*, Burgo-Maſter of *Amſterdam*; and the othe M. *John Veltdriel*, Magiſtrate of *Doccum*. The Merchants of *Holland* had for ſome Years found the Way to trade to *Archangel*, as well as the *Engliſh*; their Traffick conſiſted chiefly in exporting Tallow, Saltpetre, Corn, and ſome Sort of Skins from thence; but the jealous *Engliſh* did what they could to obſtruct their Commerce; however, they had ſettled ſome Factors there; notwithſtanding which, they found great Difficulties to bring any Corn from thence, on Account of the great Duties which the *Swedes*, who were Maſters of the *Baltick-Sea*, obliged them to pay; and there being a great Scarcity, at this Time, in the United Provinces, the States-General, at the Requeſt of ſeveral Merchants, were come to

a Reſolution to ſend a ſolemn Embaſſy to the Czar, to endeavour to gain ſome new Advantages with reſpect to this Article.

THESE Ambaſſadors went out of the *Texel* on the 11th of *June* 1630, arrived at *Archangel* on the 20th of *Auguſt*, and departed from thence, for their Journey to *Moſcow*, on the 8th of *September*. On the 10th of *November* they arrived at *Roſſokini*, about a League Diſtance from *Moſcow* upon the *Yarus*: There the Czar ſent to compliment them, by the Boyar *John Theodorowitz Thiamadanoff*, who had been Governor of *Vergoturia* in *Siberia*, and by the Secretary *John Gregoriwitz Pereneſoff*, accompanied by ſome hundred of Knezes and Boyars on Horſeback, magnificently apparel'd. They made their publick Entry into *Moſcow* in two Sledges of the Czar's, and had all the ſame Honours done them as to Ambaſſadors of Crown'd Heads. On the 24th of the ſame Month they had their Audience of the Czar. In the grand Proceſſion to which they were preceded by near ſix hundred Perſons, who carried the Preſents deſigned for the Czar, the Patriarch, and the Czarewitz, which conſiſted of Arms, Jewels, and rich Stuffs: Their Gentlemen were mounted on white * *Argamaks*, and marched two and two before thoſe who publickly carried the credential Letters. The Ambaſſadors were in a Sledge of the Czar's lined with crimſon Satin, and the two *Priſtafs*, or Introductors, were each in a Sledge beſide them. They were conducted in this Manner to

* *The* Perſian *Horſes in the Czar's Stables ſo called.*

to *Kremlin*, or the Czar's Palace, through all the Garison under Arms, drawn up in Ranks for that Purpose. They were received at the Entrance of the Hall of Audience, by the Knez *John Michaelowitz Boratinſkoy*, and by the *Diack*, or Secretary, *Mikitof Speridonow*. When they entered, the Commandant of the Caſtle proclaimed with a loud Voice, that they were the Ambaſſadors from the Moſt High and Mighty Lords the States-General, and from the Great Prince of *Orange*. The Czar was upon his Throne, with his Crown on his Head, enriched with large Diamonds and Pearls; the Sceptre in his Hand, and cloathed with a Robe finely embroidered with Gold: On his right Hand was the Patriarch, his Father, in the Habit of an Eccleſiaſtick, having on his Head a Globe of Gold ſurmounted with a Croſs; at his left Hand was a gilt Pyramid, upon which was a Crown to repreſent the Czarewitz; at the Feet of the Czar were four *Stolnicks*, or Pages of the Table, in white Robes and white Bonnets, with Chains of Gold about their Necks, and a Croſs hanging on their Breaſts, having each a golden Hatchet on their Shoulders. All round the Hall were ſeated the Knezes, Miniſters, Boyars, and fifteen Biſhops in their pontifical Robes.

WHEN the Ambaſſadors came near the Throne, the Chancellor declared to them, that his Majeſty allowed them the Honour of kiſſing his Hand: They delivered their Credentials, and made a long Speech, in which, among other Things, they congratulated his Czariſh Majeſty, in the Name of their High

Mightineſſes, and the Prince of *Orange*, upon the Birth of the Czarewitz.

THIS Embaſſy gave the Czar Occaſion to ſend one, in his Turn, to their High Mightineſſes, and the ſooner, becauſe the Truce which he had made with the King of *Poland* being near at an End, he foreſaw that he ſhould have need of the Arms, and other Ammunition, which their High Mightineſſes had made him an Offer of, by their Ambaſſadors, to obtain what they were ſent to demand, with reſpect to the Contract of Corn. The Czar named, for this Charge, *Gregory Andrewitz Olaibiew*, Gentleman of his Bed-Chamber, and Secretary *Gregory Lanowitz*, who arrived at the *Hague* on the 28th of *October* 1631.

THE King of *Poland* had not religiouſly obſerved the Truce of fourteen Years, concluded at *Diwelina*; for Prince *Wladiſlaus* had not only maintained the Title of Czar, which by the Treaty he was to have relinquiſhed, but the *Poliſh* Troops continually made Incurſions into the *Ruſſian* Provinces which are on the Borders of *Poland*, where from Time to Time they had ſeized on ſeveral Places which they found commodious for them. Whatever Complaints were made by the Czar, or his Weyvodes, to the King, or the Diet of *Poland*, they could never obtain the leaſt Satisfaction. This unjuſt Procedure made the Czar reſolve to declare War with *Poland*, without waiting for the End of the Truce, and the rather as he had received Ambaſſadors from *Sweden*, and the Grand Seignior, who ſeemed likewiſe highly exaſperated

perated againſt *Poland*. The Czar had moreover Reaſon to be diſſatisfied with the *Polanders* on Account of Religion, ſince they were continually ſending *Roman Catholick* Prieſts into his Dominions, who, according to their Cuſtom, took the Authority upon them to damn all thoſe who were not of their Sect, how good Chriſtians ſoever in all other Reſpects, and uſing all the Methods they could think of to eſtabliſh Popery in *Ruſſia*.

BEFORE the Czar's Ambaſſadors arrived in *Holland*, he had ſent an Officer, named *Leſly*, with Orders to purchaſe Arms and Ammunition, and to raiſe Troops; and the Ambaſſadors, when they came, demanded Succours of Men and Money; but the Republick, drained by a War of ſixty Years againſt *Spain*, were not in a Condition to comply with their Requeſts, and part with any Money; but they granted all that was in their Power, the Liberty of purchaſing, and carrying away what Arms and Ammunition they would, without paying the uſual Duties, on ſuch Accounts, accruing to the Government.

How juſt ſoever the War was, which the Czar declared againſt *Poland*, it was not ſucceſsful. An Army of an hundred thouſand Men beſieged *Smolenſko*, but they were conſtrained to raiſe the Siege, *Wladiſlaus*, who had ſucceeded his Father *Sigiſmund* III. coming to the Relief of that important Place. This was not all, the Year following he reenter'd *Ruſſia*, laid Siege to *Bielba*, and employed his *Tartars* to make Incurſions on all Sides. The *Ruſſian* General, *Michael Boriſ-*

ſowitz

ſowitz Szebin, and his Camp Mareſchal *Iſmael Goſſen*, were accuſed of not behaving well before *Smolenſko*, and loſt their Heads; however, this Piece of Juſtice did not re-eſtabliſh the Affairs of the Czar, who was adviſed, by his Counſellors, to make Peace with *Wladiſlaus*: But this was not found ſo eaſy to be done, as could have been deſired; proud of the Advantages he had gained, he was for giving Laws, and would not conſent to renounce the Title of Czar of *Ruſſia*, but on Condition, that the Czar *Michael Theodorowitz*, ſhould yield to him, for ever, the two Provinces of *Smolenſko* and *Czernibow*, with their Dependencies.

THE Czar, a little before this, in the Year 1633, had loſt the Patriarch *Theodore*, or *Philaret Nikititz Romanow*, his Father, and principal Counſellor. He had always ſo great a Reſpect for this venerable Prelate, that, beſides the Rank he gave him next the Throne, his Name was always inſerted with the Czar's in all publick Acts, which ran in the Names of the Czar *Michael Theodorowitz*, and of his Majeſty's Father, the moſt holy Patriarch. As he had joined the Mitre to the Sword, having embraced an Eccleſiaſtical Life, after having been a General in the Army, the affable and moderate Behaviour ſo becoming the Miniſters of the Altar, had ſo tempered and corrected the Fire of the Warrior, that his Manners appeared amiable to all that came near him. He had been an Eye-Witneſs to all the Revolutions that had happened from the Time of the Death of *John Baſilowitz*, commonly called the *Tyrant*, whoſe Wife

Wife was his Aunt. He had profited by all the Errors committed by the Czars *Theodore*, *Boris*, *Demetrius*, *Zuſki* and *Wladiſlaus*; and from their Conduct had drawn ſuch Leſſons for the Inſtruction of his Son, as effectually made him appear without any of the Faults of his Predeceſſors, ſaving only, that he had ſomewhat too high an Idea of his own Power, which made him neglect to cultivate thoſe Alliances with his Neighbours, which might have enabled him to have executed great Deſigns, and eſpecially in the Situation that Affairs were, at that Time, between *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and *Poland*.

THE Peace between the Czar and the King of *Poland*, had not been concluded above two Months, before there arrived at *Moſcow*, *Philip Cruſius*, and *Otton Brugman*, Ambaſſadors from *Frederick* Duke of *Holſtein-Sleſwick*. He had built the City of *Frederickſtadt*, upon the *Eyder*, where he was willing to eſtabliſh the Trade of Silks, the moſt important, perhaps, of any in *Europe*. He judged it proper to ſeek it at its Source, which was in *Perſia*, to which End it was neceſſary for him to maintain a Correſpondence between his little Court, and that of the *Sophy*; his Views were to carry on this Commerce either by *Narva*, or *Archangel*; but that could not be done without Leave of the Czar to bring his Merchandizes through his Dominions, which was the Occaſion of this Embaſſy, that arrived at *Moſcow*, ſoon after another from *Sweden* on the ſame Subject. The Czar granted to the Duke of *Holſtein* what he had refuſed to ſeveral other Princes, perhaps becauſe

cauſe he was pretty well ſatisfied that the Enterprize would come to nothing. While theſe Ambaſſadors were at *Moſcow*, the Czarina was brought to Bed of a Daughter, who was baptized by the Name of *Sophia*.

THE Peace which the Czar concluded with *Wladiſlaus*, King of *Poland*, reſtored his Affairs to that Tranquillity which was ſo agreeable to his Temper, ſo that having nothing to fear from without, he applied himſelf entirely to regulate all Diſorders in the State, and look into the Concerns of his own Family, and above all Things to provide for the Education of the *Czarewitz*, who was to ſucceed him in the Throne. He appointed, for his Governor, *Boris Iwanowitz Moroſou*, whom we ſhall find acting a great Part under the Reign of his Pupil.

THE Czar, *Michael Theodorowitz*, was ſo much reſpected by all his Neighbours, for his Equity, his Prudence, and his Piety, that there were ſeen at his Court all the reſt of his Reign, Ambaſſadors from all the Princes about him, as well in *Aſia* as *Europe*, who courted the Friendſhip of ſo great a Monarch. Even the *Coſſacks*, who were Allies of *Poland*, were oftentimes, during the Reign of this Prince, forced to have Recourſe to Arms, to deliver themſelves from the Tyranny of the *Poliſh* Nobility, and to preſerve the Privileges that they had acquired by the Services which they had done to *Poland*, as well againſt the *Turks* as *Tartars*. Theſe People ſeveral Times propoſed to the Czar to put themſelves under his Protection, and aſſiſt him to take Vengeance on the *Poles* for the

the Miſchiefs they had occaſioned in *Ruſſia*. But the Czar, a religious Obſerver of Treaties, and preferring the Advantages of Peace and Tranquillity, to the Tumult of War, contented himſelf with maintaining the *Coſſacks* in their good Intentions for *Ruſſia*, without coming to a Rupture with *Poland*.

DEATH, at length, put an End to this Prince's peaceful Reign, on the 12th of *July* 1645, and which may be accounted the true Glory of a Prince, to the univerſal Grief of his whole People, who deplored his Loſs like that of a Father. *Michael Theodorowitz* left but two Children, the Czarewitz *Alexis Michaelowitz*, and the Princeſs *Irene*, who was betrothed to a Count of *Holſtein*, *Chriſtiern Wolmar*; but who died without being married, in the Year 1656.

The End of the Third BOOK.

THE

THE HISTORY OF *RUSSIA*,

To the End of the REIGN of the

Empreſs CATHARINE.

BOOK IV.

The CONTENTS.

The Reigns of Alexis Michaelowitz, *and* Theodore.

THE very next Day after the Death of the Czar, the Knezes and Boyars ſet the Crown upon the Head of his Son *Alexis Michaelowitz*, without waiting for the tedious Ceremonies that were commonly made uſe of at the Coronation of the Czars; the Knez *Boris Iwanowitz Moroſou*, his Governor, not thinking it proper to give Time to unquiet Spirits to form Deſigns, and enter into Cabals againſt the Prince.



Alexis Michaelowitz.

Prince, on Account of his Youth, he being then but in the ſixteenth Year of his Age.

AFTER the Coronation of the young Czar, the Knez *Moroſou*, to whom *Michael Theodorowitz* had particularly recommended the Care of his Son, changed his Office of Governor into that of Confident and Prime Miniſter, and took upon him the ſame Authority in Affairs of State, as he had had over the Prince in the Life-time of his Father. The Czarina, Mother of the young Czar, died eight Days after his Coronation; and as this Prince had a true Regard for his Mother, he ſhewed his Affection for her, by the Favours he beſtowed on all her Family; but it not being for the Intereſt of *Moroſou* to have any Spies upon his Actions about the Court, he took Care that conſiderable Places ſhould be given to all theſe People; but they were ſuch as kept them at a Diſtance from *Moſcow*. On the other Hand, he brought to Court, and placed about the Perſon of the Prince, his own Relations, Friends, Creatures, and, in ſhort, ſuch Perſons whoſe Fortune might depend upon his.

PRINCES cannot ſee, nor do all Things themſelves, wherefore a faithful Miniſter, who has the Intereſts of the State, which are thoſe of his Prince, at heart, is an ineſtimable Treaſure; a Miniſter who ſerves the State as he ought, muſt be more careful of that, than of his own Intereſt; for any Man, if he pleaſes, may neglect his own Intereſts, but he muſt not do ſo with Regard to his Country; we are to ſerve that on its own Account, and without any particular Self-Love.

Love. It would have been happy for the young Czar, if theſe had been the Principles of *Moroſou*. He certainly loved his Prince tenderly, but it was too much with Regard to his own Intereſt; from whence all the Faults he committed. For he no ſooner took the Helm in his Hand, but his Ambition, charmed with the Proſpect before him, ſuggeſted to him all Manner of Ways to maintain himſelf in ſo brave a Poſt, and to anchor ſo well, that all the Storms, which Envy muſt inevitably raiſe againſt him, might not be able to overſet him.

To ſucceed herein, he employed two Means the moſt efficacious; the firſt was to keep the Czar, as much as poſſible, from concerning himſelf in Affairs, by continually engaging him in Parties of Pleaſure; the next was to provide a Wife for him, who, being obliged to the Miniſter for this great Fortune, might uſe all her Power in guiding the Will of the Czar to his Purpoſes. He caſt his Eyes on the Daughters of the Boyar *Ilia Danilowitz Miloſlauſki*, who was very much attached to him, but whoſe Fortune being but very moderate, he could make no great Figure. The Daughters of this Boyar were extremely handſome, eſpecially the eldeſt. *Moroſou* reſolved to marry her himſelf, which his Maſter ſhould not make Choice of, and thus he would not only become Brother-in-Law to the Czar, who for that Reaſon would be the more engaged in his Preſervation, but by the Means of his Wife ſhould be able to inſinuate into the Czarina, and by her into the Czar, what he had a Mind to.

This

This Project ſucceeded, the Daughters of *Miloſlauſki* having been invited to Court, the Czar no ſooner caſt his Eye on the eldeſt, but he was charmed, and without debating long upon the Matter, he told *Miloſlauſki* the ſame Day, that he would honour him with his Alliance, and marry his Daughter. This Compliment was accompanied by ſuch Preſents as were capable of putting the Father, the Daughters, and all the Family in a Condition of appearing at Court in a Manner agreeable to the Father-in-Law, and Allies of their Sovereign. The Czar and the young Lady were affianced, according to the Cuſtom in *Ruſſia*, on the *Sunday* before *Septuageſima*, in the Year 1647, and eight Days after, the Nuptial Ceremony was performed with all the Magnificence uſual on the like Occaſions. From that Time *Moroſou* and *Miloſlauſki* aſſociating themſelves with *Leponti Stepanowitz Pleſſeou*, firſt Judge of the * *Smenſkoi Duor*, formed a Kind of Triumvirate, and for a while governed the whole *Ruſſian* Empire.

The Czar ALEXIS MICHAELOWITZ *married.*

DURING ſome of the laſt Years of the Reign of the Czar *Michael Theodorowitz*, a new Impoſtor had begun to ſhew himſelf in *Poland*. His Name was *Timoſka Ancudina*, who was the Son of a Linen-Draper of the City of † *Wologda*. *Olearius* gives the following Account of this Man.

A counterfeit ZUSKI.

* *The Name of the principal Court of Judicature in* Moſcow.

† *This is one of the ſtrongeſt Towns in* Ruſſia, *ſituated upon the* Dwina, *on the Road from* Archangel *to* Moſcow, *a Place of great Trade.*

A particular Account of that Impoſtor.

DEMKO ANKUDINA, the Father of *Timoſka*, having obſerved ſomewhat of more than ordinary Wit in him, had brought him up to Writing and Reading, which having attained, he was looked upon as a very excellent Perſon among thoſe who have no farther Acquaintance with Learning. The Excellency of his Voice, and his Skill in ſinging Hymns at Church, recommended him to the Archbiſhop of the Place, who took him into his Service; wherein *Ankudina* behaved ſo well, that the Archbiſhop having a Kindneſs for him, married him to a Grandchild of his. This Alliance, which might have been very advantageous to him, proved the firſt Occaſion of his Ruin; for he preſently began, in his Letters, to aſſume the Quality of Son-in-Law to the *Weyvode* of *Wologda* and *Vellicopermia*. Having, after the Archbiſhop's Death, ſquandered away his Wife's Fortune, he came, with his Family, to *Moſcow*, where, upon the Recommendation of a Friend of the Archbiſhop's, he found an Employment in the *Novazetvert*, that is, the Office where ſuch as keep common Tipling-Houſes are obliged to take the Wine, ſtrong Waters, and Hydromel, which they ſell by Retail, and where they give an Account of what they have ſpent. *Timoſka* was made Receiver there, but became ſo unfaithful, that the firſt Accompt he made, he could not bring in what was due to the Czar by two hundred Crowns; and as great Exactneſs is expected in theſe Accompts in *Muſcovy*, he put his Invention upon the Rack to make up the Sum he was deficient in. To this End he went

went to one of his Fellow-Officers, named *Baſili Gregorowitz Spilki*, who had chriſtened a Child of his, and done him ſeveral Kindneſſes, when Occaſion required, and told him, that one of the chief Merchants of *Wologda*, one to whom he was very much obliged, being come to the City, he had invited him to Dinner, and would be glad to let him ſee his Wife, intreating him to lend him his Wife's Pearls and Rings, that he might preſent her in a Condition ſuitable to his Employment. The other comply'd without any Difficulty, nay, without any Thing to ſhew from *Timoſka* of his having received them, though they were worth above a thouſand Crowns. *Timoſka*, inſtead of pawning the Jewels to make up his Accompts, ſold them outright, made Uſe of the Money, and confidently averred to his Friend, that he had never lent him any. *Spilki* clapt him in Priſon, but having no Evidence to convict him, he could not hinder his being ſet at Liberty. *Timoſka* had ſome Difference with his Wife, who often reproached him with his Perfidiouſneſs, and other Vices too ſhocking to be named; ſo that fearing, on the one Side, to be called to Account for what he was in Arrear to the Czar; and, on the other, that his Wife might happily be the firſt that ſhould accuſe him, bethought him one Day to ſend his Son to a Friend of his, to ſhut up his Wife in a Stove, and to ſet the Houſe on Fire, in which his Wife was burnt.

HAVING done thus, he went into *Poland*, but ſo ſecretly, that it was thought at *Moſcow* the ſame Fire had conſumed him, with

the reſt of his Family. It was about the Year 1643, that *Timoſka* went away; but hearing in 1645, that the Czar, or Great Duke, was to ſend an Ambaſſador to the King of *Poland*, and that his being at the Court of *Warſaw* was known in *Muſcovy*, he went in the Year 1646 to *Chmielniſki*, General of the *Coſſacks*, and begged his Protection againſt the Perſecutions which he ſuffered, upon no other Account than this, that the Czar knew him to be a near Kinſman to the Prince *Theodore Baſilowitz Zuſki*.

He had Wit enough to carry on the Impoſture, and had got ſuch an Influence over *Chmielniſki*, that he began to grow conſiderable, when a *Muſcovian Poſtanick*, named *Jacob Koſlou*, who had been ſent to this *Coſſack* General, knew him, and adviſed him to return to *Moſcow*, and endeavour to make up the Sum which was due from him to the Czar, which was not ſo large, but, that having paid it, through the Interceſſion of Friends he might get his Pardon; for it was not yet known, that he pretended to be the Son of the Czar *Theodore Baſilowitz Zuſki*. But this Courſe he thought not ſafe, and, fearing he might be ſecured, he went, in the Year 1648, to *Conſtantinople*, where he abjured the Chriſtian Religion, and was circumciſed. He ſtaid not long there, but fearing to be puniſhed for ſome Crime he had committed there alſo, he went into *Italy*, and ſo to *Rome*, where he became a *Roman* Catholick. Thence he went, in the Year 1650, to *Vienna*, and from thence into *Tranſilvania*, to Prince *Ragotſki*, who gave him Letters of Recommendation

dation to *Chriſtina*, Queen of *Sweden*. This Princeſs received him kindly, and giving Credit to what he related, allowed him an honourable Subſiſtence. The *Muſcovite* Merchants, who were then at *Stockholm*, ſoon acquainted the Czar with the Impoſture that was carrying on by this Man, who now ſtuck not to give out every where, that he was the Son of *Theodore Baſilowitz Zuſki*. The Czar immediately ſent to *Stockholm* the aforeſaid *Koſlou*, who had ſeen him with *Chmielniſki*, in the *Ukraine*, to deſire the Queen to deliver up the Impoſtor; but *Timoſka*, who knew that Enquiry would be made for him, was already got away. His Man, or rather his Companion, whoſe Name was *Koſtka*, or *Conſtantine*, having ſtaid behind him on ſome Buſineſs, was taken, and ſent chained to *Moſcow*, where *Timoſka*'s Mother and Kindred were put to the Rack, and ſome of them executed. A ſhort Time after, *Timoſka* himſelf was diſcovered at *Revel* in *Livonia*, where the Queen ordered him to be arreſted; but having found Means to eſcape out of Priſon, he went, by the Way of *Holland*, to *Bruſſels*, and there ſaw the Arch-Duke *Leopold*. From thence he went to *Wittenberg*, and *Leipſick*, where he made Profeſſion of the *Lutheran* Religion, and writ himſelf his Confeſſion of Faith in *Latin*. Thence he went to *Neuſtadt*, in the Duchy of *Holſtein*, where *Peter Miklaf*, who had brought Letters from the Czar to the Duke of *Holſtein*, got him ſecured. He was carried thence to *Gottorp*, where he was well guarded, till the Czar had ſent expreſs Order for the bringing his Perſon to *Ruſſia*.

The Czar's Letters to the Duke of *Holſtein* upon this Occaſion, are inſerted at the End of this Volume.

ONE of the Deputies ſent on this Buſineſs, was *Spilki*, the ſame whom *Timoſka* had cheated of his Wife's Pearls and Rings; he deſir'd he might ſee the Priſoner, and have Leave to ſpeak to him in the Preſence of ſome Officers of the Court. But *Timoſka* behaved himſelf as if he knew him not, and would not ſpeak the *Muſcovite*, but the *Poliſh* Language, purpoſely to gravel the other, who could not ſpeak it well. *Spilki* aſked him, whether his Name was not *Timoſka Ankudina*, and whether he had not robbed the Czar's Treaſury, and committed ſeveral other enormous Crimes? *Timoſka* made him Anſwer, that it might be *Timoſka Ankudina* had robbed the Czar's Treaſury, or converted his Money to his own Uſe, but that he was not concerned in it; that his Name was *Johannes Sinenſis*, and in the *Poliſh* Language *Zuiſki*, cunningly avoiding to hint at what he ſaid before, to wit, that he was Son of the Great Duke, *John Baſilowitz Zuſki*. But when *Spilki* aſked him, whether he remembered not his Life paſt; the other derided him, gave him injurious Language, and added, that he could not acknowledge him in the Quality of a *Poſtanick*, ſince he was but a poor Shop-keeper, and Seller of Pins, alluding to his Name, *Spilki*, which ſignifies a Pin-Maker.

TIMOSKA would needs one Day intreat the Duke of *Holſtein* to appoint his Chancellor, and ſome others of his Council, to receive from his own Mouth the State of his Affairs.

They aſked him what Houſe and Family he was of, and whether he was of Kin to the Czar; why the Czar perſecuted him, and wherein he could any Way prejudice him? He anſwered, that it was known his Name was *Johannes Sinenſis*, and in the *Poliſh* Language *Zuiſki*; that at his Baptiſm he had been named *Timotheus*; that he was the Son of *Baſile Domitian Zuiſki*, and that he had been ſo named from a City of *Muſcovy*, call'd *Suia:* That he was originally a *Muſcovite*, but born and brought up in *Poland*, in the Province of *Novogarka Severſkhio*, and that he was hereditary Lord of *Hukragina Severſka*, upon the Frontiers of *Muſcovy*; that the Czar was not his Kinſman, inaſmuch as the Czar's Father had been but a Gentleman, whereas his was a Prince born, and that was the Reaſon why the Czar perſecuted him; that the Cham of *Tartary*, who was then engaged in a War againſt the King of *Poland*, would have employed him in a War againſt the Czar, but he had a greater Affection for the Country of his Predeceſſors, than to trouble her Quiet; that it was in his Power to ſend above an hundred thouſand Men into *Muſcovy*, but that God, of his Goodneſs, had diverted his Thoughts from doing any ſuch Thing. He had wrote ſomewhat to the ſame Purpoſe to the Patriarch; for the *Poſſanick*, who came from *Sweden*, having entered into a Familiarity with him, had adviſed him to write to the Patriarch, as the moſt likely Perſon to procure his Pardon, he reſolved to do it, and delivered his Letter to the *Poſſanick*, in which he wrote to the Patriarch, that

he was indeed a *Muſcovite*, and, at his Baptiſm, had been named *Timothy*, whereof the Word *Timoſka* is the Diminutive. That he had had a Deſire to enter *Muſcovy* with an Army of three hundred thouſand Men, but that he had been diverted from that pernicious Deſign by the Guardian Angel of *Muſcovy*. That hereupon he came to himſelf, and was reſolved to return into his Country; whereas had he been minded to continue his wicked Life, it had been eaſy for him to get out of the Priſon at *Neuſtadt*, but that it was his Intention to return into *Muſcovy* voluntarily, with thoſe whom the Czar had appointed to conduct him. The *Poſlanick*, who doubted not, but that upon this Letter he would have made ſuch a Confeſſion as might have convinced all who ſhould hear it, opened it, and read it in his Preſence; but he had to do with a Man, whom a ſmall Matter would not force to betray himſelf. *Timoſka* endeavoured to perſuade the Duke of *Holſtein*, that the *Poſlanick* was a Cheat, and that the Letter was counterfeited, that he had never wrote it, and to make good what he ſaid, he wrote another Letter, in a Stile and Character ſo very different from the other, that the *Poſlanick*, mad to ſee himſelf ſo abuſed, flung it in his Face; whereupon *Timoſka* took it up, and tore it to Pieces.

HOWEVER, the Diſtraction of his Conſcience was but too apparent in the Inconſiſtency of his Depoſitions, and the Declarations he had made, both by Word of Mouth and Writing. For one while, he ſaid, he was the Son of the Czar *Baſilowitz Zuſki*; and another,

another, that his Father's Name was *Baſile Domitian*, though it was known, that at that Time there were but three Lords of the Houſe of *Zuſki*, and not any of them whoſe Name was *Domitian*. Sometimes he would be thought a *Polander*, and would confidently maintain, that he could make it as clear as the Sun at Noon, that he was no *Muſcovite*, and that there was not any Thing in his Perſon, Language, or Manner of Life, which might perſuade the World that he was. Indeed his Beard was quite after another Faſhion than the *Ruſſians* ordinarily wore theirs. He had the *Latin*, *Italian*, *German*, and *Turkiſh* Languages ſo well, as to be underſtood in any of them, and he had ſuch an Art in counterfeiting all Sorts of Hands, that it would have been difficult to have convicted him by that which he wrote in his firſt Employment.

TIMOSKA perceiving, that all his Evaſions would not ſerve his Turn, fell into Deſpair, and would have killed himſelf. For, being on his Way to *Travemunde*, to be ſhipp'd off, not far from *Neuſtadt*, he caſt himſelf headlong from the Waggon, and ſhuffled himſelf under the Wheels, in Hopes they would have paſſed over his Body; but the Ground being ſoft and ſandy, his Fall did him no Hurt, and the Waggon was immediately ſtopped; ſo that he was put up in his Place again, and ſo faſtened, that he had no Chance of making another Eſcape. He ſeemed to be in very good Humour all the Way, yet ſought all the Means he could imagine to compaſs his own Death; but he was ſo narrowly watched.

TIMOSKA endeavours to make away with himſelf.

watched, that at laſt being out of all Hope to effect it, the Joy he had expreſſed before was much abated. Coming to *Novogorod*, he fell into ſo deep a Melancholy, that he was become abſolutely diſconſolate; which yet hindered not, but that amidſt the greateſt Tortures, he expreſſed an admirable Conſtancy, if that reſolute Obſtinacy, in which he perſiſted, may be ſo called.

Put to the Torture. As ſoon as he came to *Moſcow*, he was put to the Torture, in the Preſence of divers Perſons of Quality; but he impudently told them, that, of all the Boyars, he would not vouchſafe to ſpeak to any but the Knez *Nikita Iwanowitz Romanow*, and him only, as knowing him by Fame, and on Account of his Goodneſs and Courage, he ſhould be glad to have ſome Diſcourſe withal. While two Boyars were gone to find *Nikita*, *Timoſka* deſired ſomewhat to drink; upon which ſome *Quas* was preſented to him in a wooden Diſh, but he would have *Hydromel*, and that in a Silver Cup; but, after they had ſo far comply'd with his Humour, he only put it to his Lips, and would not drink. Seeing *Nikita* and the other two Boyars come in, he gave them a civil Salute, but ſtill affirmed, that he was Son of *Theodore Baſilowitz Zuſki*, tho' it was plainly proved, that he was the Son of *Demko Ankudina*, the Linen-Draper of *Wologda*, and that the Czar *Zuſki* had had no Children, and but only two Brothers, the Knez *Demetrius Baſilowitz*, and *John Baſilowitz Zuſki*, who both died without Iſſue Male: For of theſe three Brothers, who were ſent Priſoners into *Poland*, to the Election

tion of *Wladiſlaus*, in the Year 1610, with the reſt of the Czar's Kindred, the two eldeſt died there, and the third was releaſed, and ſent back into *Ruſſia*, where he died ſome few Years before this Examination of *Timoſka*. It is true, there was another Lord of the ſame Family, but he had left only one Son, named *Michael Baſilowitz Zuſki Scapin*, who died without Iſſue, when the *Swedes* took the City of *Novogorod*, in the Year 1616.

WHILE *Timoſka* endured the Torture, they brought his Mother to him, who exhorted him to acknowledge his Crime. He ſeemed, at firſt, to be moved at her Preſence, but perſiſted in affirming he knew her not, no more than he did one *John Peſcou*, with whom he had left his Son, when he quitted *Ruſſia*. This Man repreſented to him how much he was to blame, for behaving himſelf ſo in the Condition he was in, and told him, that he muſt at laſt pull off the Vizard, which he had made uſe of ſo many Years to cheat the World, and diſturb his Country, conjuring him to own his Son, and rely no longer on Eluſions and Impoſtures, which would only aggravate his Miſery, and bring a greater Weight of God's Vengeance upon him. He was ſo moved hereat, that he would not ſpeak one Word afterwards, though there were divers Perſons brought before him, who had known him while he was employed in the *Novazetvert*, or Tavern-Office.

HE was ſearched, and found to be circumciſed: The next Day they put him again to the Torture, but he would not ſpeak at all;

ſo

ſo they immediately carried him to the great Market-Place, where his Sentence was pronounced, and preſently put in Execution. *Executed.* They cut off, with an Ax, firſt, his right Arm, below the Elbow, then the left Leg, below the Knee, and afterwards the left Arm and right Leg, and laſt of all his Head. The Members were ſet upon Stakes, and the Trunk left upon the Ground, which the Dogs devoured in the Night, and the next Morning the Executioner's Servants dragged the Members to the Place where all the City Dirt was thrown.

His Man *Koſtka* was pardoned, becauſe he had confeſſed the Truth; but, in Regard to his having been unfaithful to his Prince, he was ſentenced to loſe three Fingers of his right Hand; but this Puniſhment the Patriarch got to be mitigated, and foraſmuch as the Religion of the *Muſcovites* oblige them to make the Sign of the Croſs with the right Hand, he obtained the Favour of having the Sentence executed in the left, and he was then ſent into *Siberia*. The ſame Day that *Timoſka* was put to Death, an Envoy, who was lately come from *Poland*, being to have his publick Audience of the Czar, was conducted thro' the Market-Place juſt at the Time of the Execution, that he might be an Eye-Witneſs of it, and give an Account, in *Poland*, of the Cataſtrophe of that Impoſtor, who had been looked upon there as the Son of the Czar *Theodore Baſilowitz Zuſki*. But this did not hinder the *Polanders* from afterwards producing another Impoſtor, as we ſhall ſee. But to reſume the Thread of our Hiſtory.

THE

THE Triumvirate of *Moroſou*, and his Collegues, was ſupported with ſo much Imprudence and Haughtineſs, that the People, accuſtomed to the mild and wiſe Government of the late Czar *Michael Theodorowitz*, could not tell how to bear the Inſolence of theſe Favourites. *Pleſſeou*, in his Office, ſold Juſtice, and not ſatisfied with the Preſents which he received with both Hands, he would reduce the Parties to the utmoſt Miſery by his ſtudied Delays; and as to thoſe who were accuſed of any Crimes, he had always falſe Witneſſes ready to ſerve any Purpoſes, particularly to bring in Charges againſt thoſe who were rich enough to redeem themſelves out of his Perſecutions; impriſoning and oppreſſing them, till they purchaſed their Liberties with the Ruin of their Eſtates. One of the Inſtruments of his Tyranny, was *Peter Tichonouitz Trochaniotou*, his Brother-in-Law, who was one of thoſe whom in *Ruſſia* they call *Ocolnits*, out of which Number are choſen the *Boyars*, and he had the Management of the *Puſkarſe Precauſe*, that is to ſay, was Overſeer of the Armourers, Cannoniers, and all the Mechanicks belonging to the Arſenal, who were very much oppreſſed by him; for, inſtead of paying them monthly, as they were wont to do in *Ruſſia*, where all who were in the Czar's Service were ſo punctually paid, that if they came not the firſt Day of the Month for their Money, it was ſent home to them; he, on the contrary, kept them ſeveral Months without it, forced them to compound, and to give Acquittances for the whole Sum, tho' they received but ſome Part of it.

The Oppreſſions of MOROSOU, *and his Aſſociates.*

BESIDES theſe Things, Trading was obſtructed, Monopolies granted, and no Employment could be had, but by dearly purchaſing the good Pleaſure of the Favourite *Moroſou*. One got a Patent, prohibiting the farther Uſe of the ordinary *Ells*, purpoſely to oblige the People to buy Iron ones with the Czar's Mark upon them; but inſtead of ſelling them at eight or ten-pence a Piece, as they were only worth, they could not be had under a Crown; by which Means a vaſt Sum of Money was raiſed, becauſe there was a Neceſſity for them to be had in all Parts of the Kingdom. Another contrived the Raiſing the *Poude* (that is forty Pounds) of Salt, to thirty Pence, which before coſt but twenty: But inſtead of making an Advantage of this, they found, at the Year's End, that the Dearneſs of the Salt had ſo hindered the Sale of it, that the Czar's Revenue was not only very much diminiſhed, but Abundance of Fiſh was loſt for want of ſufficient ſalting; ſo that had it not been their Deſign rather to oppreſs the People, than to promote the Czar's Service, they would ſoon have put down that new Impoſition. The Inhabitants of *Moſcow*, who had lived very quietly under the late Czar's Reign, could not but diſcover their Reſentment at theſe Concuſſions in the State.

THEY had their Aſſemblies about the Churches, at the Hours when their Devotions brought them thither, and reſolved, at laſt, to petition the Czar. And as no one ſingle Perſon would, or durſt undertake to deliver the Petition to him, they agreed to do it in a Body,

Body, as he came out of the Palace to go to his Devotion, or on ſome Party of Pleaſure. Their main Spleen was againſt *Leponti Stepanowits Pleſſeou*, and their Deſire that his Place might be filled by ſome Perſon of Honour, from whom they might expect more Juſtice. They had their Petition ready, and ſought two or three Times an Opportunity of giving it to their Prince; but the Boyars, who attended him, took it from them, and making a Report of it, as they had been inſtructed by *Moroſou*, the Petition was not anſwered, nor the People relieved. This happened ſo often, that the People at laſt reſolved to take ſome other Courſe, and make their Complaints by Word of Mouth, on the firſt Opportunity that ſhould offer itſelf.

A great Tumult of the People in Moscow.

ON the 6th of *July* 1648, they took their Advantage of a Proceſſion, which the Czar made to a Monaſtery in the City named *Sterſenſkoi*. The People were got together in the Market-Place, according to Cuſtom, to ſee him paſs by; but at his Return they broke through thoſe who attended him, and, laying hold of his Bridle, ſtopp'd him, and intreated him to hear the Complaints they had to make to him, concerning the Injuſtices and Violences committed by *Pleſſeou*, deſiring there might be put in his Place ſome Perſon of Integrity, who ſhould better ſupply ſo important a Charge. The Czar, though a little ſtartled at their Procedure, ſtill kept his Countenance, and ſeemed not a little troubled at the Grievances of his good Subjects, promiſed, that he would examine how the Matter ſtood, and that they ſhould receive Satisfaction.

faction. The People desired no more, and were going away well satisfied with that Answer, when the Boyars Friends of *Plesseou* would needs give the People abusive Language, thrust some off their Horses, and struck others with their Whips; at which being greatly incensed, they so pelted the Boyars with the Stones, that they were forced to make all the Speed they could to the Palace, whither the People pursued them so warmly, that it was much ado for the Guard to stop them while the others got into the Czar's Chamber. This Resistance of the *Strelitzes*, rather the more inflamed than abated the Fury of the People, who threatened to force the Czar's Lodgings, and take away all they found there, if *Plesseou* was not immediately put into their Hands.

MOROSOU came out into a Balcony, and endeavonred to appease the People, exhorting them, in the Name of his Czarish Majesty, to go all to their Homes, and make no farther Tumult: But they told him, that they had as much to say to him as to the other. Accordingly, some went immediately to his Palace, which was forced, ransacked, and demolished in a Moment, having thrown one of his Servants out of the Window, who had attempted to make some Opposition.

THEIR Animosity was such, that they spared not even the Images of their Saints, for which the *Russians* were always wont to have a great Veneration: But they shewed some Respect to *Morosou*'s Wife, taking away only her Jewels and Pearls, which they threw into

into the Street, and frightening her, by telling her, that if they had not looked upon her, as Siſter-in-law to the Czar, they would have cut her to Pieces.

FROM the Houſe of *Moroſou* they went to thoſe of *Pleſſeou*, *Trochanitou*, the Chancellor, and of all who had any Relation to, or Dependence on the Favourite, where they found ſuch Riches, that Pearls were ſold by Handfuls, and ſo cheap, that a Man might have bought a Hatful for thirty Crowns; and the fineſt Sables, and gold and ſilver Stuffs, were ſold almoſt for nothing.

THE Chancellor of *Ruſſia*, who had farmed the Impoſition upon the Salt, was one of the Victims to this popular Fury. He lay, at that Time, ſick in Bed, having received a dangerous Hurt by a Fall from his Horſe; but hearing that *Moroſou*'s Houſe had been ranſacked, and not doubting but that they would come next to his, he hid himſelf under a Heap of Wood, which was piled up to ſerve the Stoves; and to take off all Suſpicion, he cauſed himſelf to be covered with ſome Flitches of Bacon; ſo that he had certainly ſaved his Life, had he not been betrayed by one of his Servants, who taking Advantage of his Maſter's Misfortunes, laid hold on a good round Sum of Money, and made off to *Niſinovogorod*; but before he went away he diſcovered to the People the Place where the Chancellor, his Maſter, lay concealed. The inraged Multitude took him out by the Heels, and dragg'd him down Stairs into the Court, where they cudgelled him to Death. The Body was thrown upon

The Chancellor of RUSSIA *murdered by the People.*

the Dunghill, and the Houſe plundered of every Thing that was in it.

WHILE theſe Diſorders were committed in the City, they had Time to barricado themſelves in the Palace, againſt the Inſolencies of the People, who continued in Arms all Night between the 6th and 7th of *July*, and in ſuch a Manner, as ſhewed they only waited for Day-light to begin again. Whereupon Orders were ſent to the *German* Officers and Soldiers to meet at their ſeveral Rendezvouſes, in the City, and from thence to come to the Czar's Relief in the Caſtle. They marched with Drums beating and Colours flying, and the *Muſcovites*, inſtead of oppoſing, gave them Way, and told them, that they had no Quarrel againſt them, and knew them to be Perſons of Honour, who approved not of the Peculations of the Government.

THE CZAR, after this, ſent out the Knez *Nikita Iwanowitz Romanow*, whom he knew the People much reſpected, to endeavour to diſperſe their Aſſembly. He came to them, Cap in Hand, and told them, that he conceived they ought to be ſatisfy'd with the Aſſurance, which the Czar had given them the Day before, that he would remedy the Diſorders of which they complained: That his Majeſty had commanded him to tell them as much, and to adviſe them to go every Man to his Home, that he might the better perform what he had promiſed them. This Meſſage was well received, and the People made Anſwer, that they were not diſſatisfy'd with the Czar, but thoſe who, under his Name, abuſed his Authority, and that they

would not ſtir till they had delivered up to them *Boris Iwanowitz Moroſou*, *Leponti Steppanouitz Pleſſeou*, and *Peter Tichonouitz Trachaniſtou*, that they might revenge on their Heads the Miſchief they had done the whole Kingdom. *Romanow* gave them Thanks for the kind Anſwer they had made to his Propoſition, and told them he would acquaint the Czar with the Zeal and Affection which they expreſſed towards him; that he doubted not but Order would be taken for the Execution of thoſe three Lords, but that he could ſafely take his Oath, that *Moroſou* and *Trachaniſtou* had made their Eſcapes; and for the third, he ſhould be immediately put to Death. Accordingly *Romanow* was no ſooner returned to the Czar, but Word was ſent to the People, that *Pleſſeou* was coming to be ſacrificed; that the other two ſhould come to the ſame End, as ſoon as they were found, and that they might ſend for the Executioner to do his Office. He was ſoon found, being at the Caſtle Gate with his Servants, whence he came about a Quarter of an Hour after, leading *Pleſſeou* to the Market Place, to cut off his Head. But the People ſpared him the Trouble, falling upon him with Cudgels ſo outragiouſly, that they diſpatched him in a Moment. They dragged the Body through the Dirt, following it with all the moſt bitter Execrations that could be thought of; till, at laſt, a Monk, whom the Deceaſed had ordered to be cudgelled, cut off his Head.

PLESSEOU *put to Death.*

MOROSOU had indeed made his Eſcape; and meeting with ſome of the People who were ſearching after him, had the good For-

tune to avoid them, till, by private Ways, he got into the Caſtle again. And that it might not be thought that the Czar had conſented to the Eſcape of the others, ſome were ſent after *Trachaniſtou* to apprehend him, which was done near the *Troitſky* Monaſtery, about twelve Leagues from *Moſcow*.

TRACHANISTOU *put to Death.*

On the 8th he was brought from the *Smenſkoi Duor*, that is, the Place where his Maſter had ſat as Judge; whereupon the Czar commanded his Head to be cut off. This Execution wrought ſo much upon the People, that after they had been informed, that *Moroſou* had been ſeen in the Country, and none knew what was become of him, they forbore any farther to preſs the Czar to deliver up a Man, who, they thought, was not in his Power; and about Eleven o'Clock in the Morning every Man went to his own Home.

A great Fire at Moscow.

In the Afternoon ſeveral Houſes in the *Metroſki* and *Twerſki* Quarters were ſet on Fire; whither the People all ran, with a Deſign rather to ſteal than quench the Flames, which in a very ſhort Time had conſumed the whole Quarter of the City called *Czargorod*, reducing all within the *White-Wall* to Aſhes as far as the River *Neglina*; and then, getting over that into the Czar's Taverns and Houſes of ſtrong Waters, it grew ſo violent, that it was feared it would have buried the Palace itſelf in Aſhes. There was no Body to put a Stop to it; for thoſe whoſe Buſineſs it was, were got ſo drunk, that, lying along in the Streets, the Fire within them, together with the Smoak of that which was then in its Way, in all Appearance, to burn down the whole

whole City, choaked them as they lay. At length a Monk dragging along an heavy Burthen called to ſome to help him to caſt it into the Fire, ſaying, it was the abominable Carcaſs of *Pleſſcou*, and that nothing elſe would quench it; and, indeed, the Fire ſoon after abating, much was attributed to this pretended Miracle.

SOME Days after this terrible Accident, the Czar treated the *Strelitzes* with ſtrong Waters and Hydromel; and his Father-in-law, *Ilia Danilowitz Miloſlauſki*, invited ſeveral Citizens to dine with him, and ſpent many Days together in Entertainments. The Patriarch alſo enjoined the Prieſts and Monks to endeavour to compoſe the unquiet Spirits of the People, and to exhort them to that Reſpect and Obedience to the higher Powers which their Religion and Conſciences ought to oblige them to. All theſe Means had their deſired Effect, eſpecially when they found the Czar had filled the Places of thoſe who had been executed, with honeſt and upright Men, and ſuch as were deemed capable of the Employments they were charged withal: But *Moroſou* was not yet out of Danger; the Czar was reſolved to endeavour himſelf to bring him out of it: He therefore took the Occaſion of a Proceſſion to ſpeak to the People, having *Nikita Iwanowitz Romanow* by his Side; and told them, that he was extremely troubled to hear of the Injuries and Violences done by *Pleſſcou* and *Trachaniſtou*, under his Name, but contrary to his Intention; that he had put into their Places, Perſons of Integrity, and ſuch as being acceptable to the People, would adminiſter

niſter Juſtice equally, and without Corruption; and that they might not fail therein, he would have an Eye upon them; that he repealed the Edict about the Impoſition laid on Salt, and that he would immediately ſuppreſs all Monopolies; that they ſhould enjoy all their Privileges, which, if Occaſion were, he would augment. Whereupon the People having ſmitten their Forehead, and given his Majeſty Thanks, the Czar reſumed his Diſcourſe, and ſaid, That it was true indeed, he had promiſed to deliver up to them the Perſon of *Boris Iwanowitz Moroſou*, and acknowledged, that he could not abſolutely juſtify him, but that he could not alſo reſolve to condemn him; that he hoped, the People would not deny the firſt Requeſt he ſhould make to them, which was, that they would pardon *Moroſou*, only for that Time, as to what he might have diſpleaſed them in; that he would be anſwerable for him, and durſt aſſure them, that *Moroſou* ſhould ſo behave himſelf for the future, as that they ſhould have Occaſion to ſpeak well of him; that if they would not have him be any longer of his Council, he would diſmiſs him; but that he deſired them to look upon that Lord as one who had been a Father to their Prince, and one who having married the Czarina's Siſter, muſt needs be extremely dear to him, and conſequently, that it would be very hard for him to conſent to his Death. The Tears which accompany'd this Couclusion of the Czar's Speech, ſhewed plainly the Affection he had for that Favourite, and ſo moved the People, that they all cry'd out, *God grant his Ma-*

Moroſou pardoned.

Majeſty a long and happy Life. God's and the Czar's Will be done. The Czar conceived an extraordinary Joy hereat, thanked the People, and highly commended the Zeal and Affection that they expreſſed for him.

SOME few Days after, *Moroſou* appeared in publick, among thoſe who attended the Czar, on a Pilgrimage he was making to the *Troitſky* Monaſtery. He went uncovered from the Caſtle to the City Gate, ſaluting the People on both Sides with great Submiſſion; and from that Time he laid hold on all Occaſions to gratify and aſſiſt thoſe who apply'd to him on any Buſineſs they had at Court.

THESE Sort of Events, where the People exert their Power, are ſometimes neceſſary to re-eſtabliſh that Juſtice and good Order which inſolent Favourites, and covetous and ambitious Courtiers, have trod under Foot: And in this we find, that even the *Ruſſians*, how much they are thought Slaves on moſt Occaſions, can uſe deſperate Means to recover their Freedom, when the Oppreſſion of bad Miniſters grows inſupportable to them.

IT was not long after this Tumult was quieted before another broke out in another Part of the Kingdom, upon the following Occaſion: It had been for ſome Time, that a War ſeemed almoſt inevitable between *Ruſſia* and *Sweden*, on Account of the Diſorders committed on the Frontiers of the two States, by the Subjects of both Crowns, who each left their own Habitations, and paſſed over to the other Kingdom to avoid paying their Debts. The *Ruſſians* made great Complaints; but when his Czariſh Majeſty, in the Year 1649,

ſent an Envoy, *Boris Iwanowitz Puſkin*, into *Sweden*, to Queen *Chriſtina*, and the Affair was examined into, it was found, that there were many more *Swedes* in *Ruſſia* than *Ruſſians* in *Sweden:* Whereupon it was agreed, that this Tranſmigration ſhould be forbidden on both Sides for the future; but as the Czar, by this Means, had acquired a great Number of Subjects, he was to pay to the Queen of *Sweden* one hundred and ninety thouſand Roubles, Part in Money, and Part in Rye, and the firſt Payment was to be made in the Spring of the Year 1650. Accordingly the Queen of *Sweden*'s Commiſſary, coming into *Ruſſia* at the Time agreed on, received the Money; and an Order was ſent to *Theodore Amilianou*, a Merchant of *Pleſkow*, to provide as much Rye as amounted to ninety thouſand Crowns.

THIS avaritious Man taking this Opportunity to make an Advantage to himſelf, cauſed all the Rye, wherever it was, to be ſeized, and would not permit any private Perſon to purchaſe one ſingle Buſhel without his Leave, which they were ſure to pay dear enough for. The Inhabitants of *Pleſkow* were ſo impatient under this Oppreſſion, that they not only complained of the Covetouſneſs of the *Swedes*, but charged *Puſkin* with Prevarication in his Employment, and Perfidy to his Prince: And preſuming that this Negotiation was concluded, contrary to the Czar's Intentions, they endeavoured to engage the City of *Novogorc'* in their Quarrel, and went ſo far, that ſome of the chief Merchants having declared for them, the *Weyvode* had much ado

A Tumult at PLESKOW.

to

to prevent an Inſurrection of the whole City. Both theſe, and the others reſolved, that they would ſtop the Money, when it was to be tranſported into *Sweden*, and that they would no longer endure the Contract made for the Rye, becauſe it would in all Likelihood ſtarve the Country. With this Intention they ſent three Deputies to *Moſcow*, viz. a Merchant, a *Coſſack*, and a *Strelitz*, with Orders to know whether this Treaty was made, and put in Execution, with the Czar's Conſent.

In the mean Time, without waiting the Return of their Deputies, they ranſacked *Amilianou*'s Houſe, and tortured his Wife, to make her confeſs where her Huſband, who had made his Eſcape, had laid up his Money. The Weyvode came in Hopes to prevent the Diſorder, but was forced out of the City, and the neighbouring Nobility were invited to come in, and join with them againſt Monopolies and Patentees. The three Deputies were no ſooner returned to *Novogorod*, but the Weyvode cauſed them to be put in Irons, and in that Condition ſent them to *Moſcow*, whither, at the ſame Time, came the Weyvode of *Pleſkow*, and the Merchant *Amilianow*. Intelligence was brought, that the People of *Pleſkow* had robb'd and abuſed a *Swediſh* Merchant, whereupon the Czar ſent back the Weyvode, and with him a Boyar, to endeavour to prevent any farther Diſorders. Thoſe of *Pleſkow*, who would not at firſt receive them, at length opened their Gates; but it was only to put the Weyvode in Priſon, and affront the Boyar, who had the Imprudence,

at

at ſo unſeaſonable a Time, to treat them with ſo much Severity, that the People fell upon him with Cudgels, and purſued him to a Monaſtery, where they beat him ſo, that he was left for dead.

HOWEVER, the Czar executed the Treaty made with *Sweden*, but paid Money inſtead of Rye, ſending along with the *Swediſh* Commiſſary a good Convoy of *Strelitzes*, who were to bring him to the Frontiers of *Sweden*. He gave Order, at the ſame Time, to *John Nikitowitz Gavenſky*, to aſſemble the Nobility of the neighbouring Provinces, who, being ſupported by a good Body of Troops, beſieged *Pleſkow*, and took it: The Inhabitants being obliged to make their Peace, by delivering up the Authors of the Tumult, who were put to Death, or ſent into *Siberia*.

THE Reign of *Alexis Michaelowitz* was troubled with ſeveral Tumults and Revolts of this Sort, which, however, did not prevent his doing great Things, and maintaining two important Wars, one with *Poland*, and the other with *Sweden*.

THE Kingdom of *Poland* had been terribly harraſſed, during the laſt Years of the Reign of *Wladiſlaus*, by the Revolt of the *Coſſacks* under the Command of the famous *Chmielniſki*; but it may be ſaid, that they drew all their Misfortunes upon themſelves, by their Manner of treating the Chief of the *Coſſacks*, and the reſt of that warlike Nation. When *Wladiſlaus* died, they had penetrated a great Way into *Poland*, where they committed unheard of Cruelties and Devaſtations, and were ſo powerful, that it was thought, that who-

whoever had the Support of the *Coſſacks* might be choſe Succeſſor to *Wladiſlaus*. The Czar *Alexis* had then a fine Army on foot, which he offered the *Polanders* to employ for their Service, if they would give the Crown to him; but they not liſtening to his Propoſition, he uſed Menaces, which had likewiſe no Effect; for *France*, having intereſted herſelf to place a Prince upon the Throne, who ſhould be devoted to her, employed her Money ſo properly to engage the *Coſſacks* to withdraw during the Time of the Election, that ſhe got the Prince *John Caſimir*, Brother of *Wladiſlaus*, to be choſen, on Condition that he ſhould marry the Princeſs of *Gonzague*, his Brother's Widow.

THE new King would not meddle in the Difference between the *Poles* and the *Coſſacks*, but thought the latter ſo much in the right, that when the Nobility preſſed him to put himſelf at the Head of an Army to chaſtize the Rebels, as they called them, he anſwer'd them, that it was not well done to burn the Mills of *Chmielniſki*, or to abuſe his Wife and Children. At length, the *Coſſacks* abandoned before *Zbaras*, by the *Tartars*, their Allies, who offered to make Peace with *John Caſimir*, were forced alſo to make their Peace; but as a great Part of them could not confide in the *Poles*, they ſought Protection under the *Turks*, and ſome under the Czar.

ALTHOUGH the Czar *Alexis* had not been irritated by the Contempt with which the *Polanders* treated the advantageous Offers he made them to obtain the Crown, he would not have wanted a Subject for his declaring War

War with them. *Smolenſko*, *Kiow*, *Czernibow*, which had been adjudged to them in the laſt Treaty of Peace, were Loſſes too conſiderable for the *Ruſſians* to quietly put up with; they had not gained them, but by taking Advantage of the ſorrowful Condition to which they themſelves had reduced the Empire, by palming ſo many Impoſtors upon her; therefore had not the Czar the ſame Right, in his Turn, to profit by the deplorable State in which he now found theſe mortal Enemies of his Country? He did it with Succeſs, marching a numerous Army of *Ruſſians* and *Coſſacks* towards *Smolenſko*, which he ſat down before.

THIS Siege laſted long, which is not ſurprizing, when it is conſidered, that this is one of the ſtrongeſt Places on the Frontiers, and that the *Polanders* had furniſhed it with a large Gariſon, and every Thing neceſſary to make a vigorous Reſiſtance, foreſeeing the Rupture that was to happen between them and his Czariſh Majeſty, which this Monarch, however, did not reſolve on without the Advice of his whole Empire repreſented in Senate. After one Year compleat, the Town ſurrendered, and this Conqueſt opened a Door for the *Ruſſian* Army into the very Heart of *Lithuania*, where they beſieged *Vilna*, which held out not very long. The *Ruſſians* lived at large in this Country, and cauſed ſuch Misfortunes, as were long felt in the Great Duchy.

WHILE this Army found nothing to ſtop its Courſe almoſt to the Frontiers of *Pruſſia*, another Body more numerous, on Account of freſh

freſh Succours from the *Coſſacks*, went on with as little Oppoſition to the Banks of the *Boryſthenes*, where all the Province of *Czernihow*, and the important City of *Kiow*, returned to the Obedience of their ancient Sovereign.

THE Misfortunes that *Poland* laboured under, were very much increaſed by the King of *Sweden*, *Charles Guſtavus*, falling upon her on a ſudden. *John Caſimir* had, with very little Prudence, endeavoured to prevail upon *Chriſtina*, Queen of *Sweden*, to proteſt againſt her Abdication in Favour of *Charles Guſtavus*, her Couſin, and ſolicited the Archbiſhop of *Upſal*, and the States of the Kingdom, to take this Step in her Abſence. *Charles*, juſtly irritated at ſo irregular a Conduct, entered *Poland*, which he almoſt entirely ſubdued in leſs than three Months. His *Poliſh* Majeſty, having ſome Apprehenſions of this Blow, had made a long Truce with the *Ruſſians*, to whom he left all their Conqueſts which were not without the ancient Limits of *Ruſſia*, upon Condition that a certain Sum ſhould be paid him at different Times.

THUS the Czar, *Alexis Michaelowitz*, having the Honour to have blotted out the Shame, which the Loſs of three fine Provinces had brought upon his Country, thought he might be at Leiſure to apply himſelf to the peaceable Acts of Government; but the Jealouſy that almoſt all the Nations of *Europe* had conceived of the Progreſs of the King of *Sweden*'s Arms in *Poland*, obliged him to come again into the Field to ſtop the Rapidity of that Prince's Conqueſts. He had Reaſon

Reaſon to complain of the *Swedes*, who, in attacking their common Enemy, not ſatisfy'd with ſo many Provinces, had, by a Treaty made between *Magnus de la Gardie* and *Radzivil* appropriated to themſelves the Great Duchy of *Lithuania*, which the Czar might look upon as his Conqueſt. This was ſufficient Cauſe for him to carry his Arms into *Carelia*, *Ingria* and *Livonia*: The Troops which the Czar ſent into the two firſt Provinces made no other Progreſs there than ravaging the open Country; but were beaten in ſeveral Places. The Weight of the War was in *Livonia*, where the *Ruſſians* took *Dunebourg* and *Kokenhauſen* by Aſſault, from whence they advanced before *Riga*, which they cannonaded for ſeven whole Months, without being able to make one Aſſault, altho' they were aſſiſted by the *Polanders*: *Magnus de la Gardie* and *Helvefd*, who were in the Place, defending it with ſo much Bravery, and in many Sallies doing ſo much Damage to the Beſiegers, that they were at length obliged to raiſe the Siege; after which a Truce was made, which was ſome Time after changed into a Peace, that was concluded at *Kardis*.

Another DEMETRIUS.

TOWARDS the End of the Reign of *Wladiſlaus*, King of *Poland*, a new *Demetrius* had appeared in that Kingdom. Mere Chance, as it was ſaid, had diſcovered him, and he was ignorant himſelf of his own Birth: But it is more likely, that *Wladiſlaus*, an ambitious Prince, who could not digeſt the Loſs of the *Ruſſian* Crown, had raiſed him up, and inſtructed him how to behave, that he might ſerve for a Pretext for his declaring War with the

the Czar *Alexis*, if the *Coſſacks* had not found ſo much Employment for him, that he had no Time to put his Project in Execution, which was, as the Protector of this *Demetrius*, to endeavour to place him upon the Throne; and if he ſucceeded, to put the Crown afterwards upon his own Head.

THIS *Demetrius* was a *Coſſack*, and brought up among that People: He was well made, wanted not Wit, and ſeemed to be about 25 Years of Age. It is ſaid, that going into the Baths, in the little Town of *Samburg*, in *Black Ruſſia*, ſome Marks of an extraordinary Kind were obſerved upon his Back, that *Dmieloufki*, the Treaſurer of the Crown, being told of it, he ſent for the young Man to come to him, aſked him ſeveral Queſtions, and afterwards examined theſe ſtrange Characters; but not being able to make any thing of them, he ſent for a *Ruſſian* Pope [or Prieſt] who read plainly, *Demetrius, the Son of Demetrius*. As learned Antiquaries every Day explain their obſcure Inſcriptions according to their own Fancies, ſo theſe Characters were made to ſignify, that this young Man was the Son of *Griſka Utropoja*, the firſt Impoſtor that took upon him the Name of *Demetrius*. It was ſaid, that his Mother, the Daughter of the Palatine of *Sendomir*, had been delivered of him in Priſon, and that the Wife of a *Coſſack*, who was in her Service, being brought to Bed, at the ſame Time, had taken the Son of that Princeſs, and given hers in his ſtead; that a *Ruſſian* Prieſt having baptized the Son of the Princeſs, and ſeeing that he was likely to continue unknown, and paſs only for the Son

Son of a poor Peaſant, had imprinted thoſe Characters that were between his Shoulders with a certain indelible Liquor. This is the Romance that was founded upon the Characters which, without Doubt, were put upon the Back of the *Coſſack* for the preſent Purpoſe; and to render this Event the more miraculous, and make it believed, that Providence had a greater Hand in the Diſcovery of this young Man, it was given out, that his ſuppoſed Father and Mother were both dead, nobody knew where or when, ſo that ſome of the Domeſticks, with whom the Princeſs had intruſted the Secret at her Death, had ſought for them in vain.

IT is eaſy to detect the Impoſture of this whole Hiſtory, if we recollect that of the ſecond *Demetrius*, maſſacred by the *Tartars* at *Coluga*, and the Manner by which the Daughter of the Palatine of *Sendomir* was deſtroyed, by Order of the Czar *Michael Theodorowitz*. Be that as it may, this Impoſtor appeared at the Court of *Poland*, where he was treated as the Son of the Czar till the Death of *Wladiſlaus*, and where he had contracted a ſtrict Friendſhip with the famous * *Galga*, the *Tartarian* Prince, Priſoner of *Wladiſlaus*, to whom the King generouſly gave his Liberty, that he might not loſe the Opportunity of aſcending the *Tartarian* Throne, to which he was the next Heir.

AT the Death of *Wladiſlaus*, the Face of Affairs was entirely changed, by the Election of *John Caſimir*, eſpecially with reſpect to this *De-*

* *The Title of the next Heir to the Throne, like* Dauphins *in* France, *or Prince of* Wales *in* England.

Demetrius, who fearing he ſhould be delivered up to the Czar, with whom the King ſeemed deſirous to live in Peace, he retired to *Revel*, and from thence to *Sweden*; but not thinking himſelf in Safety there, he went into *Holſtein*, where he was put under an Arreſt.

WE have already ſeen, that the Duke of *Holſtein* had ſent an Embaſſy to *Ruſſia*, and that one of the Ambaſſadors was *Brugman* of *Hambourg*, who, in a ſecond Voyage, was charged with Letters of Credence from the Duke, in order to ſettle a Trade of Silks with *Perſia*; but he had abuſed the Confidence of his Maſter, by borrowing large Sums of Money in *Ruſſia*, of which he could give no Account. The Czar expected that the Duke ſhould diſcharge the Debts of his Ambaſſador; the Thing was reaſonable, but the Duke had not yet done it, when a *Ruſſian* Factor, who was then in *Holſtein*, at the Time that this new *Demetrius* appeared, gave the Duke to underſtand, that his Czariſh Majeſty would remit this large Debt if he would deliver the Impoſtor into his Hands; which, upon thoſe Conditions, was agreed to. The Impoſtor was tranſported accordingly to *Moſcow*, where he was confronted by an old Woman, who declared herſelf his Mother. The falſe *Demetrius* was proſecuted as a Cheat, and a Diſturber of the publick Repoſe, for which he was condemned to have his Head cut off, his Body quartered, and his Quarters expoſed on ſo many Gibbets.

THE Czar *Alexis* uſed all Methods to ſettle the Peace of his Dominions, and made all ſuch Regulations as he thought might be for

the Happineſs of his People. Altho' a Stranger to foreign Languages, yet he cauſed an Epitome of ſeveral Sciences to be tranſlated out of divers Languages into the *Ruſſian* Tongue; which he himſelf diligently read. He cauſed the Laws of the ſeveral Provinces to be collected together in one Body; but for want of a good Lawyer to digeſt them into Order, it is but an imperfect and confuſed Collection.

IN the City of *Moſcow* he built two Subburbs, *viz.* the New and Old *Meſchanſkoja*, and alſo ſeveral great Market Towns; ſuch as *Wolday*, and others; all which were peopled by *Lithuanians* and *Poles:* He endeavoured, indeed, to make himſelf more abſolute, and to graſp more Power into his Hands, but with great Circumſpection: He was the firſt who erected a Privy Council of Chancery, where Cauſes concerning his Perſon were heard. When he ſuſpected any body, he proceeded very cautiouſly, as well in adminiſtring the Torture, as in Executions: But when any one was found guilty, he cauſed him to be privately executed, as it happened to many, and no body ever knew what became of them, except ſome few, who were tortured to Death, and ſo found in the Streets. This Method, it is ſaid, his Daughter *Sophia* learned from him, in the Executions afterwards order'd by her.

THO' extravagant at firſt, he at length became a great Œconomiſt, and very much improv'd his Dominions Great Deſarts he converted into Colonies, peopling them with Priſoners taken from the *Poles* and other Nations. He alſo intended to have had Fleets in the *Caſpian* and *Black Sea*, for which Purpoſe he ſent Maſter-

Maſter-Builders and Shipwrights from *Holland* and other Places; but Heaven reſerved this great Work for his auguſt Son PETER *the Great*, who ſo truly merited the Name of *Father of his Country*; another ambitious Rebel, at this Time, giving a Check to the Deſigns of *Alexis*.

WE have already obſerved, that there were two Sorts of *Coſſacks*, the one inhabiting the Iſlands of the *Boryſthenes*, who were named *Zaporoſki*, and the other dwelling along the Banks of the *Tanais*, or *Don*, who took the Name of *Donſki Coſſacks*. Theſe have been always under the Dominion of the Czars, the others in Obedience to *Poland*. Among the *Donſki Coſſacks* was a Chief named *Stenko Razin*, who excited a horrible Rebellion againſt the Czar. The Cauſe of his Diſcontent was ſaid to be the ſhameful Death of his Brother, whom the Knez, *George Alexowitz Dolgorucki*, had ordered to be hanged. The *Coſſacks* are indeed Subjects; but then their Subjection was voluntary, and they had always Officers of their own, whom they obey'd independently of all others. The Brother of *Stenko Razin* was Chief of the *Coſſacks*, who ſerved in the *Ruſſian* Army, in the Campaign of the Year 1665, againſt *Poland*. The Knez *Dolgorucki* pretended to keep them in the Field as long as he pleaſed; but they, not uſed to be forced in their Actions, abandoned the *Ruſſian* General, and went to receive Orders from their own Chief; the Knez *Dolgorucki* took upon him to call this Chief to an Account for the Conduct of his Men, and ordering him to be arreſted, cauſed him to be hanged with a little too much Precipitation. This

The Revolt of STENKO RAZIN.

was the Pretext of *Stenko Razin* to arm againſt his Sovereign, but the principal Motive was to ſatisfy his own Ambition, ſince he not only uſed his Arms againſt the Czar, but alſo againſt the King of *Perſia*.

He firſt began his Depredations upon the River *Wolga*, where he took all the ſmall Shipping he could meet with, plundered them, and killed their Men, unleſs they would join his Company. After this firſt Act of Hoſtility, he entered, with an Army of *Coſſacks*, into all the Towns ſeated on the Banks of the River, or near them, where he plundered the Churches and Monaſteries, and from thence went directly to *Jaik*, a Town ſituated on the River of the ſame Name, which divides the Kingdom of *Aſtracan* from the Country of the *Calmucks:* Having took this Town and plundered it, he proceeded to the *Caſpian Sea*, and from thence returned to the *Wolga*, doing great Miſchief in interrupting the Fiſhery, and deſtroying many Houſes and Villages. Thence he marched to the Town of *Terki*, in *Georgia*, and farther to the Frontiers of *Perſia*, where he did great Damage both to the Subjects of the Czar and the Schah of *Perſia*.

The Inhabitants of a ſmall Town in *Perſia* being informed of his Approach, betook themſelves to a neighbouring Fort for Security; whereupon *Stenko* ſent them Word, that they had no Reaſon to fear, and invited them to return, aſſuring them, that he and his Men were not come to do them any Hurt, but to buy Proviſions and other Neceſſaries for his Troops: Upon which the People came back

back to their Town with great Confidence, and opened their Shops, where *Stenko* and his Soldiers bought what he needed with ready Money for the preſent; but, upon a Signal given to his *Coſſacks*, they fell upon the Inhabitants, and butchered them without Mercy.

To ſtop theſe cruel Proceedings, the Knez *John Simonewitz Proſoroffſki*, the Weyvode of *Aſtracan*, ſent ſome Troops againſt him. Whereupon *Stenko*, finding himſelf too weak, and apprehending no good Iſſue, aſked Pardon; which *Proſoroffſki* promiſed him, in the Czar's Name, upon Condition that he would make his Submiſſion, and demean himſelf, for the future, as a loyal Subject. Whereupon *Stenko*, with his Companions, went to *Aſtracan*, where they were kindly received; and, in Return, made many rich Preſents to the People; they made a ſplendid Appearance; for as they had rifled many Gentlemens Houſes, they had an abundance of rich Apparel, Jewels, and other Ornaments. *Stenko Razin* himſelf was not to be diſtinguiſhed from the reſt, but by the particular Marks of Reſpect that were ſhewn him, being always ſaluted by the Name of *Batſke* [Father]. He was tall, and well proportioned in his Body and Limbs, ſomewhat pitted with the Small-Pox, but not ſo as to be unbecoming; he was of a ſtately Mein and Deportment, but of a cruel Diſpoſition, as we muſt ſuppoſe by the following Story: He had with him, when at *Aſtracan*, a *Perſian* Princeſs, whom he had taken Priſoner with her Brother. The Brother he preſented to the Weyvode of *Aſtracan*, but the Siſter he kept for his Concubine.

Being one Day on board his Yacht, to divert himſelf on the *Wolga*, and full of Wine and Frolick, he was boaſting of the many Preſents he had given and received ſince he had been reſtored to the Czar's Favour: And, on a ſudden, broke out into theſe extravagant Expreſſions, ſpeaking to the *Wolga*: *Well*, ſaid he, *thou art a noble River, and out of thee have I had much Gold, Silver, and many Things of Value. Thou art both the Father and Mother of my Fortune and Advancement; but, unthankful Man that I am, I have never offered thee any thing: But now I am reſolved to manifeſt my Gratitude.* Having ſpoke theſe Words, he took the Princeſs in his Arms, and threw her into the *Wolga*, in all her rich Attire, and Ornaments of Pearl, Diamonds, and other precious Stones. What heightened the Barbarity of the Act was, that the Lady was of a moſt angelick Form, greatly admired for the Endowments of her Mind as well as Perſon, and had always behaved with the utmoſt Complacency towards him.

STENKO RAZIN, after ſome ſhort Stay at *Aſtracan*, returned with his Aſſociates to their own Homes, near the River *Don*, and carry'd ſeveral *Ruſſians* with them, who had been bribed to join with them, by large Sums liberally beſtowed by *Stenko*, and Promiſes, that if they would follow him, they ſhould fare no worſe than he did.

THE Governor of *Aſtracan* underſtanding that ſeveral Perſons, in the Service of the Czar, his Maſter, had withdrawn, and liſted themſelves among the Rebels, ſent one *Wederos*, a Captain of the *Strelitzes*, to *Stenko*, with



with Inſtructions to demand the *Ruſſians*, and order him to ſend them back, on Pain of the Czar's Diſpleaſure, which he might not ſo eaſily appeaſe as he had done before; but, perhaps, be compelled to make Satisfaction for his former Offences and his preſent together. The Captain went to obey his Orders, and to declare to *Stenko* the Reaſon of his coming; the haughty *Coſſack* would ſcarce admit him to an Audience, but when he began to inſiſt hard upon his ſending back the Men he had cauſed to revolt from their Duty, he was ſo enraged, that he drew his Sword, and threatened his Life if he dared to perſiſt any longer, and with that made towards him; but the Captain, being a diſcreet Man, when he ſaw himſelf in ſuch Danger, uſed fair Speeches, by which he ſomewhat pacify'd his Fury, and he only aſked him, *how he dared to make ſuch an impudent Demand: Shall I then*, ſaid he, *betray my Friends who have, out of pure Inclination to me, deſerted their neareſt Allies and their Fortunes? And ſhall I be threatened with Loſs of Favour to boot? Prithee, go tell thy Maſter, that I value the Czar himſelf no more than I do him: And let him know, that I ſhall be with him before he is aware on't, and reward him for his Preſumption.* The Captain was obliged to ſmother his Thoughts, and went back with the Rebel's Anſwer to the Governor, who thereupon aſſembled his Council, and deliberated on what was to be done, perceiving, by *Stenko*'s Anſwer, that he intended to make him another Viſit: And ſo it happened; for within three Days he began to march towards the *Wolga*, where he had eighty

Stroegs, and other Shipping provided, filled with Ammunition and Men; but did not at firſt commit any Act of Hoſtility. The Weyvode of *Aſtracan* called a Council a ſecond Time, wherein it was agreed, that as long as *Stenko* made no Attempt, nor did any Violence to any Town belonging to the Czar, they ſhould not oppoſe him till the whole Fleet was got together.

ABOUT fourteen Days after, the whole Fleet arrived, conſiſting of a great Number of *Stroegs*, with about ſix thouſand *Strelitzes*, well furniſhed with all Kinds of Proviſion and Ammunition. *Stenko*, by his Emiſſaries, had Intelligence of all their Deſigns; whereupon he ſo ordered it, that ſome of his own People, whom he could beſt confide in, ſhould run away, and join the Governor's Forces, under Pretence of Deſertion; when they came to the *Aſtracan* Fleet, they feigned themſelves much diſcontented with the Hardſhips put upon them, and the Abuſes they had received from *Stenko Razin:* Theſe Renegadoes were met with open Arms by the adverſe Party, who were in Hopes, by their Means, of diſcovering the Councils of their Rebel Maſter: But as ſoon as they were under Sail, and almoſt cloſe upon the Enemy, the Traitors, on a ſudden, fell upon the Officers and diſpatched them, ſurrendering the reſt, with the whole Fleet, into the Hands of the *Coſſacks*. *Stenko*, having ſo rich a Prey, immediately ordered his Men two Months Pay in Hand, with a Promiſe, for their farther Encouragement, of enjoying freely whatever they could make by Plunder.

THE Governor was not a little diſmay'd at theſe Tidings, and eſpecially when he heard how much the common People murmured againſt him, and how laudably *Stenko* was ſpoken of, not only in *Aſtracan*, but all the Towns round about, which were under the Dominion of the Czar. The *Strelitzes*, who had not received any Pay for a long Time, and had heard of *Stenko*'s Generoſity to his Men, began to mutiny, and ſo generally, that the Governor and Officers durſt not oppoſe them by any rigorous Methods, but were forced to ſooth them by fair Words and large Promiſes.

STENKO RAZIN finding himſelf grow every Day ſtronger and ſtronger, and that now, with the *Ruſſians* under his Command, he had about ſixteen thouſand Men, he landed a Part of them, and ſent ſome to *Czaritza*, and others to *Czarnojar*, but he himſelf remained with the Fleet, where he was as highly reſpected as a ſovereign Prince, and had the ſame Awe over his People. When he was warm with Liquor, few of his Officers durſt appear in his Preſence; for it was a common Thing with him, at ſuch Times, to behead a Man for a very ſmall Offence, tho' the greateſt Minion or Favourite he had. The meaner Sort were in no Danger from him, for they were wont to flatter him, and, upon a Wink, would diſpatch their Officers when he had taken any Diſlike to them. Thus, by ſhewing a greater Regard for the common Men than the Officers, he became the more dreadful and fomidable; for the ſole Command and Direction of the whole Army lay

in

in himſelf. This alſo gave ſuch Encouragement to the Rabble, that in the Space of five Days, after he had got the *Aſtracan* Fleet, his Army was raiſed from ſixteen to twenty ſeven thouſand Men, who were a mixt Multitude of Peaſants, Slaves, *Tartars* and *Coſſacks*, and Men of reſtleſs Minds from all Parts, pleaſed with the Thoughts of the free Enjoyment of Plunder. This vile Rout, ſpreading themſelves over the Country, committed many inhuman Acts, and murdered ſuch of the Gentry who could not eſcape from them, as many did, by diſguiſing themſelves in the Habits of Slaves.

STENKO, being arrived to this Pitch of Grandeur and Authority, was as much puffed up as if he had conquered the whole Empire; it is true, he refuſed the Title of King or Emperor, ſaying, that his Purpoſe was not to rule as a Lord, but to live with his Companions as a Brother, and to pull down that Tyranny and Oppreſſion which they, for many Years, and their Progenitors, for many Ages, had been forced to endure againſt all Reaſon and the Law of Nature. Notwithſtanding this pretended Moderation, he had the Impudence to diſpatch Ambaſſadors to the Court of *Perſia*, to whom he gave Inſtructions wherein he aſſumed the moſt pompous Titles, and ſtiled himſelf the *Sophy*'s *Brother*. The Buſineſs of this Embaſſy was to invite the *Sophy* to enter into an Alliance with him, and to ſupply him with Ammunition of War, and whatever elſe he might have Occaſion for, upon paying their Value. The Ambaſſadors were ordered to aſk theſe Things at firſt in gentle Terms,

but

but if they met with a Refuſal, they were to menace the *Sophy*, and give him to underſtand, that their Maſter had two hundred thouſand Men ready to invade his Territories, and that he might take an Opportunity to viſit him when he leaſt dream'd of it.

As ſoon as the *Sophy* came to underſtand, that theſe Ambaſſadors were inſtructed to threaten him, in caſe he refuſed to comply with the Demands of the Arch-Rebel their Maſter, he ſent for them, and forthwith commanded their Heads to be chopped off, and their Bodies to be thrown to the Dogs, except of one, whom he preſerved alive, that he might go back to acquaint his Maſter with the Reception they had met with at the *Perſian* Court; but this was no more than a Reprieve for the poor ſurviving Ambaſſador, who when he came to report the Succeſs of their Embaſſy to *Stenko Razin*, he fell into ſuch a Rage, that he ordered the Executioner to cut him to Pieces.

STENKO, after this, endeavoured all that he was able to increaſe his Fleet and Army, for which Purpoſe he ſent ſeveral of his Emiſſaries to debauch the *Ruſſian* Soldiers, and entice them to deſert the Czar's Service, in many Towns upon the *Wolga*, judging thoſe the fitteſt for his Turn, as they were beſt acquainted with the military Affairs of *Ruſſia*, and therefore could be the moſt uſeful in attacking any Place he ſhould have a Deſign upon. In this he ſucceeded to his Wiſhes, and having muſtered his Troops, he ſent a Body of the *Strelitzes* to *Camiſhinſka*, who pretending they were Imperial Troops, ſent by

by the Czar for the Defence of the Town, in caſe it ſhould be attacked, they were readily admitted, and ſo much confided in, that they ſoon found an Opportunity to diſpatch the Governor, and almoſt all the Officers of the Gariſon, having before ſeduced the reſt, and brought them into their Party; when this was done, a Signal was given, by firing a Gun, to *Stenko*, who came up, and ſurprized the Town, wherein he placed a Gariſon of *Coſſacks*, and removed the *Ruſſian Strelitzes* into the Navy,

TIDINGS of this coming to *Aſtracan*, occaſioned no ſmall Murmurings among the People, none knowing who was Friend, or who was Enemy; and the Weyvode *Proſoroffſki* conſidering, that the common People, who delight in Novelty, and are generally ſoon tired of the preſent Government, might form ſome Deſign of joining the Enemy, called together the Council of *Aſtracan*, to conſult what was beſt to be done in ſo dangerous a Conjuncture; what Means they ſhould take to quiet the Minds of the People, and defend themſelves from the approaching Enemy: It was concluded, that there was no better Way to remedy the former, than by conducting themſelves warily in the latter, and that by ſtopping the growing Power of the Rebels, they ſhould ſoon be able to pacify the common People at home. Upon this Reſolution ſeveral Gentlemen offered their Service to go as private Men, in that ſudden and urgent Expedition, not daring any more to put Confidence in the *Strelitzes*.

ON

ON the 10th of *April* 1670, the Boyar *Petroffki* diſpatched eight hundred Horſe under the Command of Colonel *Levonti Bogdanof*, whereof four hundred were *Ruſſians*, the reſt *Nogais*, who were to furniſh the City of *Czaritza* with Ammunition and neceſſary Proviſions, and to reinforce the Gariſon; but an Expreſs came to *Aſtracan* on the 28th, from Colonel *Bogdanof*, with News, that the *Coſſacks* had already taken *Czaritza*, and killed twelve hundred *Muſcovite Strelitzes*, who were but newly come thither before the Siege. This Account the Colonel had from a *Coſſack* whom he had taken Priſoner, and put to the Torture; upon which the Colonel marched on to *Czarnojar*.

BY this Time the Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz* had full Intelligence of all that had been done in this ſecond Revolt of the *Coſſacks*, and what were the Deſigns of *Stenko*, together with the barbarous Murders he had already committed, and the continual Ravages he was making; whereupon he gave Orders for levying new Forces, and for as many *Stroegs* as could be equipt on a ſudden: The Deputies in the Towns upon the *Wolga* did their utmoſt to compleat a Fleet of forty Sail: Upon each *Stroeg* was only one great Gun, but other Ammunition as much as was neceſſary for ſo many Men as the *Stroegs* were capable to carry. Aboard this Fleet were two thouſand ſix hundred *Strelitzes*, and five hundred Voluntiers under the Conduct of *Simeon Iwanowitz Elbof*, a Knez, who was appointed Commander in Chief of the Expedition. The Fleet left *Aſtracan* on the 25th of *May*, when

when the Citizens and common People began to murmur againſt the Governor and Officers more than ever; they even reviled him as he paſſed through the Streets, and he dared not do any Thing to check them, for Fear of greater Commotions, till he learn'd the Succeſs of *Simeon Iwanowitz*; the City being now in a weak Condition, ſince the ſending away the Forces with the Knez *Iwanowitz Elbof*, the Mob grew more and more inſolent; but on the 4th of *June*, by a Gentleman who had made his Eſcape, they got Intelligence concerning the Affairs of *Czarnojar*, and that on the ſame Day that the Knez *Elbof* had made his Appearance the Town was taken, and that the Governor and all the Officers were maſſacred, and their Bodies thrown into the River; and, what was ſtill more deplorable, that the private Soldiers, under the Knez *Elbof*, had murdered all their Officers in the Fleet, declared for the *Coſſacks*, and had ſurrendered all the Shipping into the Hands of *Stenko Razin*, although immediately before their coming to *Czarnojar* they had unanimouſly ſworn to live and die with their Leaders. The Report of theſe Things, although the Governor of *Aſtracan* endeavoured to ſmother it as much as poſſible, got Wind, and gave the Rabble Occaſion to murmur more than they had done before; they went ſo far as publickly to reproach their Superiors, ſo that they durſt not look out of their Doors or Windows, much leſs walk the Streets, or aſſemble together to conſult how they might remedy theſe Diſorders in the Town; for the People would get together

ther before the Houſes of the Magiſtrates, and cry out with bitter Railings, *Now, now the Times are altered, it will be our Turn to lord it next: Ye Villains come out, and ſhew your-ſelves to the World.*

STENKO RAZIN, having Intelligence of all this, came towards the City, and ſending in ſome of his *Coſſacks*, it was agreed to deliver up the Place to him, and he was received in it accordingly. The Knez *Proſoroffſki* being at Church, was forced thence in the Midſt of Divine Service, and hurried to the Top of a high ſquare Steeple, which ſtands in the Middle of the Caſtle of *Aſtracan*, as a Beacon to direct thoſe who navigate on the *Caſpian Sea*, or travel over the vaſt and little frequented Roads of the *Steep*. From this Steeple he was caſt headlong. It is ſaid, that *Stenko*, a little before whiſpered ſomething in his Ear, at which he ſhook his Head, which was, doubtleſs, ſomething to tempt him to take Part with the Traitor; but the faithful Knez refuſing to comply, was what brought him to this tragical End. *Stenko* ſtopp'd not here; the Brother of the Governor, and many Noblemen, and others, who would not come in to him, he put to the Sword, as alſo many *Dutch* and other Officers, and ſome Sailors, who, tho' they ran to the *Caſpian Sea*, were fetched back again to be ſlaughtered. The Churches, Cloiſters, and Houſes of the richeſt Citizens were plundered; the Writings of the Chancery burnt; the Czar's Treaſury of the Kingdom of *Aſtracan* carry'd away; many foreign Merchants, as *Perſians*, *Indians*, *Turks*, *Armenians*, being in the Town at the ſame Time,

were put to Death with the reſt: Both the Sons of the Governor *Proſoroffſki* he cauſed to be hung up by the Legs upon the Walls of the Town, and to be taken down again, putting one of them, after much Torture, to Death, and cauſing the other to be beaten half dead, and ſo carry'd to the Metropolitan. His Lady and Daughters he delivered to the Soldiers, his Companions, to take them for Wives, or uſe them as they pleaſed.

THE taking *Aſtracan* was upon the 28th of *July*, 1670, after which *Stenko* marched to *Czaritza*, and from thence to *Czaratof*, which were alſo delivered to him, and the Governors of them put to Death, together with many Noblemen; and the Treaſure of both Places taken away.

THE like happened to the Town of *Tzamatof*; from whence *Stenko* went to *Simbierſke*, which he beſieged, took by Storm, and burnt to Aſhes, after he had loſt a great Part of his *Coſſacks* before the Caſtle of that Place. The Governor of this Town was *John Bochdaenwitz Micoſlawſki*, who defended it with ſuch extraordinary Courage, that *Stenko*, hitherto Conqueror of all the Places upon the *Wolga*, was ſtopp'd here from proceeding any farther, having otherwiſe intended to have marched to the royal City of *Caſan*, which was not a great way farther than *Simbierſke*. He was not only driven back from the Walls of this Town, but ſo dangerouſly wounded himſelf, that he was forced to return to *Aſtracan*; yet were not his Emiſſaries quiet, but continually endeavouring to ſtir up the People to Rebellion. About the Town of *Oeſtiga* ſome

of

of theſe Emiſſaries were taken and hanged; but that did not deter others from doing the ſame Thing in other Places. They every where promiſed Liberty in the Name of their Maſter, and a Redemption from the Yoke, as they call'd it, of the Boyars or Nobles, who, they ſaid, were the Oppreſſors of the Country. In *Moſcow* itſelf, Men began to ſpeak openly in his Praiſe, as if he ſought the publick Good, and the Liberty of the People: A certain old Man being aſked what ſhould be done if *Stenko* approached that City, made anſwer, that the People ſhould go out and meet him with Bread and Salt, which, among the *Ruſſians*, are Tokens of Love and Friendſhip; but this coming to the Ear of the Czar, he was order'd to be hanged, as ſeveral other Well-wiſhers to the Rebels were, for an Example to the reſt: And, about the ſame time, one of *Stenko*'s principal Agents, who had gone about the Country endeavouring to ſeduce the People from their Obedience, was brought into the City, where he met with the due Reward of his Treaſon, having one of his Arms and one of his Legs cut off, and his Body afterwards hang'd on a Gibbet.

STENKO tried all imaginable Ways to draw the People into his Party; among other Devices, he prepared two Ships, one of which was finely adorned, and lined in the Inſide with Crimſon Velvet; in this, he gave out, was the Czarewitz *Alexis Alexiwitz* the Czar's eldeſt Son; who had departed this Life, on the 17th of *January* 1670, in the Palace of *Moſcow*, in the Preſence of his Father, and

was buried the next Day in the Metropolitan Church of St. *Michael*. Yet *Stenko* boldly aver'd, that this Prince was ſtill alive, and with him: And the better to colour this Falſhood, he kept in the Ship a Youth of about ſixteen Years of Age, deſcended from one of the *Circaſſian* Princes, whom *Stenko* in his former Expedition had taken Priſoner, and whom the Czar afterwards pardon'd, becauſe he had been compelled to act the Part he did. *Stenko* gave out, that this Lord Czarewitz had made his Eſcape from the Boyars and great Men, who had violent Deſigns upon him, and had ſought Refuge from him; who was come by the Czar's Order to put to Death the Boyars and Senators, who were too near his Perſon, as Traytors, and Enemies to their Country.

In the other Ship, which was lin'd with black Velvet, *Stenko* pretended was the late Patriarch *Mikow*, who, in the Year 1666, after his Condemnation, by the Patriarchs of *Alexandria* and *Antioch*, had been depoſed by the Czar, and ſent to the Monaſtery of *Biela-Oſero*.

By theſe Arts *Stenko* had ſo far advanced his Deſigns, that the whole Tract of Land about the *Wolga*, and all the Country as far as the Towns of *Accatour* and *Arſa* were engaged in his Rebellion; and the Number of Rebels were augmented to two hundred thouſand. The greateſt Part of *Czeremiſſe* and *Morduate Tartars*, and all the Peaſants in thoſe Parts, whoſe fertile Lands belonged to *Ruſſian* Lords, roſe up againſt their Governors, and hanged them or cut their Throats.

In

In ſhort, the Fury of the People carried them even into the Province of *Moſcow*.

In the mean while the Czar had given Orders to raiſe Troops in every Part; but could not bring an Army into the Field, ſtrong enough to make Head againſt the Rebels, till the Month of *September*. He gave the Command of this Army to the Knez *George Alexowitz Dolgorucki*, whoſe firſt Exploit was againſt a flying Camp of the Enemy, conſiſting of fifteen thouſand Men, whom he overthrew, altho' they fought with great Bravery, and return'd four Times to the Charge.

After this Conqueſt, General *Dolgorucki* ſettled his Quarters and Tribunal at *Arſamas*, where he executed ſo ſevere a Judgment upon the Rebels, that the Avenues to it ſeemed to reſemble the dreadful Entrance of the Poets *Tartarus*; round about it were Gallowſes, each of which were loaded with forty or fifty Men. In one Place lay Heaps of headleſs Carcaſes, almoſt cover'd in their own Blood, and in others were Wretches impaled alive, who, ſome of them, did not expire till the third Day with moſt lamentable Cries, and in bitter Agonies. Within the Space of three Months, above eleven thouſand more were put to Death by the common Executioners, after being condemned in a legal Way by hearing Witneſſes.

Dolgorucki remaining in this Place himſelf, ſent his Army out by Parties, in queſt of the Rebels, who brought them in one after another. It was happy for *Ruſſia*, and a great Mercy of God, that the Rebels were diſ-

perſed in ſeveral Places; for had ſo great a Number as two hundred thouſand kept together in one Body, it would have been very difficult for the Czar's Forces to have maſter'd them.

THE Czar, in this War, ſaw the great Advantage his Subjects might reap from Foreigners; for the Behaviour of the *Germans* was ſuch, that from them the *Ruſſians* might have learnt the Military Art. Among the Priſoners who were brought to the Knez *Dolgorucki* was a Nephew of *Stenko Razin*, and a Nun in Man's Habit, put over her Monaſtical Dreſs. This Nun had commanded ſeven thouſand Men, and acted with much Valour in the War; when taken Priſoner, there appeared not the leaſt Alteration in her, nor any Fear of Death upon the Sentence of being burnt alive being pronounced againſt her; for among the *Ruſſians* the deſerting a Monaſtery, was in thoſe Times, thought a Crime of the higheſt Nature. A little before ſhe died, ſhe wiſhed that many more had behaved themſelves as couragiouſly as ſhe had done, and then, ſhe ſaid, the Knez *George* would have found his beſt Safety in his Heels: Being come to the Place of Execution, ſhe ſigned herſelf after the *Ruſſian* Manner, with the Croſs on her Forehead and Breaſt, and then laid herſelf quietly down upon the Pile and was burnt to Aſhes.

THERE was alſo brought to Judgment one of *Stenko Razin*'s principal Counſellors and Confederates, who had his Arms and Legs cut off, after which he was beheaded, and his Body hung upon a Gibbet. The Priſoners

Priſoners were generally put to the Torture, and being examined, what they deſign'd in this Rebellion; they confeſſed, that they were to have gone to *Moſcow*, and to have deſtroy'd moſt of the Boyars, and other great Men; that their Word was *Not'ſcay*, that is to ſay, *Unexpected*, whereby they would intimate, that the Czarewitz *Alexis Alexiwitz* was come *unexpectedly* to them, as it were from Heaven.

WHEN the Rebellion was pretty well quelled in thoſe Parts, the Czar ſent the Knez *Conſtantine Zarbatoff* to diſperſe the Rebels about *Tamboff*, a Town in the Province of *Reſan*, about fifty Werſts to the North Eaſt of *Sergog*, ſituated on the River *Don*, which by the Aſſiſtance of God was ſoon effected; ſo that all the diſquieted and rebellious Countries were reduced to their former Obedience, after the Deſtruction of about an hundred thouſand Men, killed in the Field, and put to Death by the Hangman. It was a melancholy Neceſſity the Czar was under to take away the Lives of ſo many Subjects; but there are Occaſions ſometimes for ſuch an extreme Severity, and when a Sovereign is forced to ſacrifice ſome Members to ſave the Body of the State.

STENKO RAZIN, allarmed at the Loſs of his Friends on every Side, knew not where he ſhould ſeek for Safety himſelf, every one became ſuſpected by him, and he feared, that ſome of his own People might follow the Example of the Inhabitants of *Lyſko*, who had deliver'd up the Chiefs of the Rebels in that Town, in order to obtain Favour, and give him up in the ſame Manner to make

their Peace with the Czar: Therefore he betook himſelf to the Wilderneſs of *Steep*, wandering up and down, till at length, that happened to him which he apprehended, and from one of whom he thought himſelf in leaſt Danger; this was *Cornelius Jacoloff*, a Commander of the *Coſſacks*, who had remained faithful to the Czar, and who was Godfather to *Stenko*, and always ſo highly reſpected by him, that he could not imagine he had any Reaſon to diſtruſt him; but he did not conſider, that by revolting from the Obedience of his lawful Sovereign, he had loſt all Title to the Favour of good Men.

CORNELIUS JACOLOFF firſt ſtopp'd *Stenko* at *Czaritza*, from whence he convey'd him to *Moſcow*, giving him Hopes, that he ſhould ſee the Czar himſelf, and plead his own Cauſe, not doubting but he had many Things to ſay which would be of great Importance to his Czariſh Majeſty to know. His Brother *Frolka* was taken at the ſame Time, and fell into an extreme Melancholy, throwing the Blame of all that had been done upon *Stenko*; but this comforted him by telling him, that when they arrived at *Moſcow*, they ſhould have great Honours done them, and be met by all the City.

BEING come within a Werſt of *Moſcow*, they found the Triumphal Car, which was prepared for their publick Entry; this was a Waggon, in the hinder Part of which was erected a Gibbet, where he was faſten'd by a Chain about his Neck and his two Hands. His Brother *Frolka* was made to walk on Foot, chained to the Side of the Waggon. In this

this Manner they were conducted, thro' thouſands of Spectators on whom *Stenko* never once look'd, but kept his Eyes on the Ground. They were brought to the *Smenſkoi Duor*, and ſome Days after put to the Queſtion, when *Stenko* was condemned to the Puniſhment inflicted on all thoſe who are found guilty of *Leſe Majeſty*, which is to have their Arms, Legs, and Heads cut off, and their Bodies thrown to the Dogs.

STENKO ſuffer'd without a Groan, after his Sentence had been publickly read to him at the Place of Execution, and which I have, for the Satisfaction of the Reader, and to give an Idea of the Procedure of the Sovereign Courts of *Ruſſia*, placed at the End of this Volume. STENKO *put to Death.*

HIS Brother *Frolka* was alſo brought to the Scaffold, but obtained his Czariſh Majeſty's Pardon, on a Promiſe to diſcover where his Brother had hid his Treaſure under Ground.

THE Death of this notorious Rebel was immediately followed by the Surrender of *Aſtracan*, for *Sjourteous*, ſurnamed the *Devil's Whiſker*, whom the Traitor *Stenko* had left to govern that City, was poiſoned by his own Soldiers, in hopes thereby to get their Pardon from the Czar; but as there are always ſome Men, whom no Crimes, nor the juſt Puniſhment of them can deter, one of the Guards of *Sjourteous* put himſelf at the Head of thoſe who continued in the Revolt; but the *Ruſſian* Commanders ſoon hem'd them in on all Sides, and prevented their Eſcape.

THUS an End was put to this terrible Revolt, which might have had worſe Conſequences if *Stenko Razin* had joined Prudence to the Strength he did not want, or if he had had more Conduct and leſs Cruelty; nevertheleſs it coſt the Lives of many thouſand Subjects, and the Provinces to which it extended for a long Time felt the ill Effects of it, whatever Care the great Czar took to relieve his unhappy People, as much as the Neceſſity of the State would permit him.

A Revolt of the ZAPOROSKI COSSACKS *againſt* POLAND.

WHILST RUSSIA was agitated by this Rebellion, *Poland* was no leſs diſturbed. The *Zaporoſki Coſſacks* cauſed there, under the Conduct of *Doroſenſko* their Chief, as much Miſchief as the Party of *Stenko* had done upon the Banks of the *Wolga*. The weak *Michael Wieſnowieſki* was juſt elected in the room of *John Caſſimir*, who from Cardinal had been made King, and was now from King, become again Eccleſiaſtick, and made Abbot of *St. Germains* in *Paris*, and ſome other rich Abbeys.

An Alliance made between the CZAR *and* POLAND. A. D. 1672.

KING MICHAEL, at his firſt coming to the Throne, ſent an Embaſſy to *Moſcow*, and renewed the ancient Treaties with the Czar *Alexis*. At the ſame Time the *Porte*, ſolicited by the *Tartars*, who were in Alliance with *Doroſenſko*, and yet more by the ſorrowful Condition in which they ſaw the Kingdom of *Poland*, rent by the unhappy Diviſions that reigned among her Nobles, took up Arms to make their Advantage of them. The Czar not doubting but, that if the *Turks* attacked *Poland*, they would find an eaſy Conqueſt, in the Condition ſhe was, and that, elated by their

their Succeſs, they would turn their Arms againſt *Ruſſia*, ſent a Miniſter to *Conſtantinople*, to notify to the Divan this renewing of his Alliance, and to declare, that he could not avoid breaking with the Porte if they attacked *Poland*.

In the mean Time the *Tartars* and the *Coſſacks* of *Doroſenſko* continued their Irruptions, and made themſelves Maſters of a great Part of the *Ukraine*; the *Turks* pretended, that the *Polanders* had no Reaſon to complain; becauſe, ſaid they, this Province is entirely free, and its Inhabitants, the *Zaporoſki Coſſacks*, have always been under the Protection of the High *Porte*.

The TURKS *ſeek an Occaſion to quarrel with* POLAND.

It was ſaid, that the Grand Seignior would not have taken up Arms but at the Solicitation of *France*, who had many Subjects of Complaint againſt the Court of *Poland*, and who, beſides, ſought how, by Degrees, to find Employment for the Emperor, who ſhe imagined would be obliged to enter into this Quarrel, through the Intereſt he had in oppoſing every where the Progreſs of the *Turks*. All *Europe*, except *France*, were on the Side of *Poland*: It is true, the *United Provinces*, *France* and *England* were, at that Time, engag'd in a War among themſelves. The Czar promiſed *Poland* a powerful Aſſiſtance of twenty thouſand Men, which he ſent under the Command of old *Gowaſki*, whilſt another Body of *Donſki* and *Zaporoſki Coſſacks* made an Irruption into *Crimea*, which cauſed a Diverſion very favourable to *Poland*, but could not prevent the taking of the important Fortreſs of *Caminiec*; nevertheleſs as the

the *Calmucks* had Orders to march, to continue the Invaſion, that may be ſaid to have been the Occaſion of the Peace, ſuch as it was, that was made between the King of *Poland* and the *Sultan*; for *Selim Girey*, the Cham of *Tartary*, being obliged to quit *Poland*, to come to the Succour of the *Crim*, cover'd his Departure under the honourable Pretext of making himſelf Mediator of this Treaty, which was concluded in a very ſhort Time, as it uſually happens between two Powers, when one of them is intirely ſubdued. *Caminiec* and *Podolia* was to remain with the *Turks*; the *Ukraine* with the *Coſſacks*, and beſides theſe, Satisfaction was to be made to the Cham of *Tartary*, which was done by paying him eleven thouſand Crowns, and agreeing to pay a Penſion of the ſame Value: A Tribute was alſo to be ſent every Year, of two and twenty thouſand Ducats, to the *Porte*. Nothing was ſtipulated in favour of the *Ruſſians*. The *Turks* and *Tartars* took and kill'd, in this ſhort War, above three hundred thouſand *Poles*.

A Peace betwixt the TURKS *and* POLES.

WE have ſeen before, that the Diviſions among the *Coſſacks* had obliged them to ſeek Protection, one Part from *Ruſſia*, and the other from the *Grand Seignior*; when, by the laſt Treaty, *Poland* had yielded up the *Ukraine*, the *Sultan* expected, that the Czar ſhould evacuate all the Towns he poſſeſſed there, and to this Purpoſe ſent an Aga to him: The Czar told him, that *he was not capable of ſo much Baſeneſs as to ſubmit to a Mahometan Dog, and, that if the* Grand Seignior

The CZAR's *Haughtineſs to the* GRAND SEIGNIOR.

nior *threatened him with his Cymeter, he hoped he ſhould find his Sabre not uſeleſs.*

NOTWITHSTANDING this haughty Anſwer, the Divan diſſatisfied with the Peace made with *Poland*, having obliged the *Sultan* to take up Arms again, and having, for a long Time, debated whether they ſhould make War with the Czar or *Poland*, determined for the laſt, not doubting but if they conquer'd that Kingdom, the Conqueſt of *Ruſſia* would not be difficult. Nevertheleſs the *Sultan* ſent back an Ambaſſador, who was at the *Porte*, with Orders to notify to his Maſter the Czar *Alexis*, that *if he any ways aſſiſted* Poland, *his Highneſs would fall upon him with all his Forces in* Ruſſia, *where he would ſpare nothing.*

The War renewed between POLAND *and the* TURKS.

THESE Menaces produced a Letter yet more haughty than the foregoing Anſwer, and, at the ſame time, the Czar ſent a ſolemn Embaſſy to King *Michael Wieſnowieſki*, to aſſure him of his moſt powerful Protection. In ſhort, beſides the twenty thouſand he had promiſed, he had cauſed twenty two thouſand Men to advance to the Banks of the *Dnieper*, to be ready to croſs it on the firſt Orders, without reckoning the *Coſſacks* and *Calmucks*, who had made a freſh Irruption into the *Crim*, where they found Employment enough for the *Tartars*, to prevent their Thoughts of marching to the Succour of the *Turks*, as they had reſolved. The following is the *Sultan*'s Anſwer to the Czar's Letter.

"MOST Excellent of Chriſtrian Hoſpo-
"dars, *&c.* After having ſaluted you kindly,
"we declare to you, that after having re-
"ceiv'd

The SULTAN's *Anſwer to a Letter of the* CZAR.

" ceiv'd the Letter which you had wrote to
" our moſt high, moſt clement, and moſt
" glorious Imperial Majeſty, Maſter of the
" Univerſe; and equal in Power to *Alexander*
" *the Great*, (the Almighty God ſtill increaſe
" our Strength), we cauſed the ſame to be
" tranſlated and read, and we find, that in
" the Hopes of ſuccouring your Friends and
" Neighbours, you ſpeak to us in Terms,
" which are not uſual among Kings and
" Monarchs, altho', by the peculiar Provi-
" dence of the Almighty, our Imperial Houſe
" is raiſed above all others, and not accu-
" ſtomed to Expreſſions ſo hard, ſo unwor-
" thy, and ſo indecent, yet we ſhall give
" you for Anſwer, that we cannot but be
" greatly aſtoniſhed, that you, who do not
" hold the laſt Rank among Chriſtian Kings
" and Potentates, but who would not have
" obtained an Equality with them, if you
" had not employed your Cares to procure
" from our Majeſty Peace for yourſelf and
" Subjects, we cannot but be ſurpriſed, that
" you ſhould dare to make uſe of ſuch
" Terms, which not only offends our Maje-
" ſty, but might coſt you your Dominions.
" As to what concerns *Poland*, we have exe-
" cuted what we have reſolved upon, and by
" the Help of Providence, which directs all
" Things, every Thing on that Side is in
" good Condition, ſo that there is nothing
" more to be ſaid about it; but as to your
" having a Deſire to aſſiſt your good Friend
" and Neighbour the King of *Poland*, why
" did you not do it before the War, by giv-
" ing him your friendly Advice? You might

" even

" even have been a diligent and faithful " Mediator between the moſt high *Ottoman* " *Porte* and him. But at preſent when you " threaten us, that the Kings your Neigh- " bours will not ſuffer the Progreſs of our " Arms of which they are jealous, know that " we ourſelves have little Regard to it, being " ſatisfied that they are not ignorant of the " Juſtice of our Cauſe, which has made us " Maſter of ſo many Provinces, Towns, and " Countries; and ſince it has pleaſed God, " that thoſe ſhould be diſappointed who had " any ill Deſigns, be perſuaded alſo, that, as " ſoon as we ſhall be informed how you in- " tend to act towards us, you ſhall receive " Good for Good, and Evil for Evil."

THE Czar ſeeing that the Divan was reſolv'd to break the Peace, that was juſt made with the King of *Poland*, did all that he was able to keep his Word with his Highneſs, and arm againſt him all the Powers of *Europe*. To this End, he ſent Ambaſſadors to all the Courts of *Chriſtendom*, to form, if poſſible, a powerful League againſt the Enemy of the Chriſtian Name. The Miniſter he ſent to Pope *Clement* X. altho' he was a *Roman* Catholick, refuſed to kiſs his Holineſs's Toe, ſaying that ſo mean an Act was beneath the Dignity of the Prince he had the Honour to repreſent. He declared to the Pope in a Diſcourſe which he delivered in *Latin*: " That the Czar, his Maſter, had taken " a Reſolution to make War againſt the " *Turks*, to ſtop their Progreſs into *Poland*; " that he had nothing more at Heart than " to ſee all Chriſtian Princes in the ſame Diſ-

The CZAR *ſends to all the Princes of* CHRISTENDOM *to form a League againſt the* TURKS.

" poſition,

" poſition, and that they would unite againſt " thoſe Tyrants; that the Czar, his Maſter, " for that Purpoſe had ſent Ambaſſadors to " all the Potentates of *Europe*; and that he " exhorted his Holineſs to put himſelf at the " Head of ſo powerful a League, that was ſo " neceſſary for the Welfare of the Church, " and from whence all Chriſtendom might " expect ſo great Advantages."

THIS Ambaſſador of the Czar *Alexis* was greatly carreſs'd at *Rome*, the Pope aſſured him, that this Reſolution of his Sovereign was very agreeable to him; and the Cardinals *Altieri*, *Barberini*, *Orſini*, *Chigi*, and *de Heſſe*, paid him the higheſt Honours. Nevertheleſs when they were to give the Pope's Anſwer in Writing, they framed great Difficulties about the Czar's Title, becauſe the Court of *Rome* imagined, that the *Ruſſians* underſtood by this Word the ſame as Emperor. They held ſeveral Congregations upon this Subject, and it was reſolv'd, rather than to give this Potentate the Title of Czar, which was not refuſed him by any other Nation, that his Holineſs's Anſwer ſhould be ſent to his Nuncio in *Poland*, and tranſmitted by his Auditor to him.

THE other Ambaſſadors of his Czariſh Majeſty were equally well received every where, and the King of *Spain*, in particular, gave a moſt favourable Reception to the Miniſter at his Court, but all ended in nothing but empty Promiſes. The Situation of the Affairs in *Europe* at that Time, could not be more contrary than it was to the Views of the Czar, for there was not one Sovereign,

who

who had not ſuch Work upon his Hands, as prevented his entering into a Project ſo beneficial to Chriſtendom.

THE Czar had ſome Reaſon to be diſſatisfied with the King of *Poland*, nay, he had even Cauſe to diſtruſt him. Altho' he had aſſiſted him againſt the *Turk*, as ſoon as he was attacked by him, he had in no manner taken care of his Intereſts at the Concluſion of his laſt Treaty of Peace, wherein he had not even mentioned *Ruſſia*. After the Peace was made, the Miniſter of *Poland* at *Moſcow* had only preſented a ſimple Copy of the Treaty to the Czar, and had ſome Conferences, afterwards, with a *Turkiſh Chiaoux*, without informing his Czariſh Majeſty of what paſſed in them: At length the Jealouſy, or rather the natural Antipathy, which is between the two Nations, gave the Czar cauſe to doubt whether or no King *Michael* was ſincere in the Acknowledgment he made of the Services he had done him: For this Reaſon he charges his Ambaſſador in *Poland* to demand an Eclairciſſement from the King, by aſſuring him, that the *Ruſſian* Army, which was on this Side the *Dnieper*, was ready to croſs it as ſoon as the *Turks* ſhould appear beyond the *Nieſter*.

THE King of *Poland* anſwered the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador, that he had the deepeſt Senſe of Gratitude for the Services his Czariſh Majeſty had done him, by the Irruptions he had made in the *Crim*, by his *Calmucks* and *Donſki Coſſacks*, and for the Arms and Ammunition he had ſo generouſly ſent to the *Zaporoſki Coſſacks*. That altho' *Komor Orſanſki* had communica-

ted to the Miniſters of his Czariſh Majeſty, the Peace concluded with the *Turks*, and had left with them a Copy of the Articles, nevertheleſs, ſince his Majeſty deſir'd it, he had ſent one more authentick, ſealed with his Seal, to ſhew him that the Treaty contained nothing prejudicial to his Czariſh Majeſty. That, indeed, ſince the Concluſion of the Peace, there had been ſome Conferences, but that they were only to obtain the Liberty of the Hoſtages of the City of *Leopold*. Laſtly, that there was no likelihood, that this new Treaty would long ſubſiſt, but that the *Sultan* would break through it as ſoon as poſſible, upon the Advices he had received, that all the Chriſtian Powers were arming in Favour of *Poland*, of which he had reſolved upon the Conqueſt, thinking nothing more invincible than his Arms, ſince he had ſubdued the Fortreſs of *Caminiec*: Altho' neither his Majeſty, nor the Republick had given him any Reaſon to break the Peace. His *Poliſh* Majeſty beſought the Czar to give Orders to his Army, which was near *Kiow*, to join that of *Lithuania* and *Poland*, that they might go together into *Podolia*, and oppoſe with all their Strength the Efforts of the common Enemy.

THE King of *Poland* aſſembled the Diet, in which, among other Reſolutions, was taken that of intruſting the Operations of the War, and the intire Command of the Crown Army to the Grand General *John Sobieſki*, ſo that if the King followed the Army, it was merely for form ſake: But whatever Menaces had been made by the *Turks*, they did not find them-

themſelves able to appear in the Field ſo formidably as they would have had it thought they ſhould. The Plague in *Europe*, the Revolt of the Baſſa of *Aleppo* in *Aſia*, and the Fear they were under of being attacked by the *Perſians*, who had got together a very conſiderable Army, all oppoſed the Execution of their vaſt Deſigns. It was not thus on the Side of *Poland* and *Ruſſia*. The Grand General had aſſembled an Army of forty thouſand Men at *Rubieſſou*, in the Palatinate of *Bielz*, where the *Lithuanian* Army of twelve thouſand Men, beſide ſome Horſe, was to join them. The Czar had a fine Army of an hundred and fifty thouſand Men in the *Ukraine*; and *Sieſko* Chief of the *Coſſacks* had undertaken to find ſuch Employment for the *Tartars*, that they ſhould not have Time to go to the Aſſiſtance of *Huſſein* Baſſa, who was at the Head of the *Ottoman* Troops. In ſhort, the *Coſſacks* made ſo ſucceſsful an Irruption into the *Crim*, that, after they had ſlain a great Number, they brought away above twenty thouſand Priſoners, Men, Women, and Children; reduced more than forty Villages to Aſhes, and ſpread Terror through the whole Country, encamping juſt under the Place where the Cham had his Reſidence, where they remained for four and twenty Hours.

THIS Diverſion did not a little contribute to the glorious Victory obtained by the Grand General *John Sobieſki*, over the *Turks* near *Cochim*, where they were intrenched up to their Teeth; a Victory that purchas'd the Crown of *Poland* for the General, at the ſame Time that it reſtored the Honour of the Na-

tion, and obliged the *Porte* to agree to honourable Conditions of Peace, and for which *Poland* was in a great Meaſure indebted to the Succours that the Czar had lent her with ſo much Generoſity.

MICHAEL *King of* POLAND *dies*

KING MICHAEL WIESNOWIESKI dy'd at *Leopold* on the 10th of *November*, the Eve of the Day on which *John Sobieſki* obtained the Victory we have ſpoken of. The Interregnum continued till the 22d of *May* following, during which time ſeveral Candidates appeared for the Crown as uſual. There were three Parties; the firſt, which was compoſed of *Lithuanians*, and had the famous *Patz*, Chancellor of the Grand Duchy at its Head, propoſed the Prince of *Lorrain*; the Senate, a Part of the Nobles, and the *French* Faction ſupported the Prince of *Neubourg*; the third Party, the moſt formidable, being the intire Army of the Crown, was devoted to the Grand General *Sobieſki*, who publickly excited the Army to demand a *French* Prince for their King, but worked underhand all he could to place the Crown upon his own Head.

THE Czar thought alſo, that he had ſome Right to hope for this Crown for his Son; his Ambaſſador at *Rome* had already endeavour'd to bring the Pope into his Deſigns on this Account, repreſenting to him the Advantage that all Chriſtendom might expect from the Union of theſe two States under the ſame Sovereign, who might alone be able to make Head againſt the mortal Enemy of the Chriſtian Faith.

THE Affair was of a delicate Nature, the Pope had not altogether rejected the Propoſi-

tion, but had only given the Ambaſſador to underſtand, that it was not yet a proper Time to do any thing in it, King *Michael* being ſtill alive. Thoſe who were againſt *John Sobieſki*, propoſed in the Diet, that it ſhould be forbid to elect a *Piaſt*, that is to ſay, a natural *Polander*; and thoſe who were inclined to the Czar ſupported this Propoſition.

His Czariſh Majeſty offer'd the *Polanders* to unite *Poland*, *Lithuania*, and *Ruſſia*, in the ſame Manner as under the laſt of the Family of *Jagelon*, *Poland* had been united with *Lithuania*; he promiſed faithfully to maintain the *Catholick* Religion; to pay the Debts of the Nation, and to furniſh *Poland* with an Army capable of forcing the *Turks* to abandon all their Conqueſts. All theſe Offers, how advantageous ſoever they were in their preſent Condition, made no Impreſſion, unleſs it was to the Prejudice of the Czar; for the *Polanders*, who could not ſee an hundred and fifty thouſand *Ruſſians* in the *Ukraine*, without conceiving a Jealouſy of ſo mighty a Power in a Neighbour, who had never been a ſincere Friend to that Crown, diſapprov'd of what he propoſed, ſaying, he had no other View in demanding the Crown, but to take Vengeance on the *Poles* for the Ravages they had committed in *Ruſſia*.

Thus, notwithſtanding the great and uſeful Services which the Czar had done to *Poland*, in her laſt War with the *Turk*, into which he enter'd of his own Accord, through the Motives of a pious Zeal for the Chriſtian Religion, threaten'd with infinite Ills, if, during the Troubles which diſturbed that King-

dom, and put her out of a Condition to make any Reſiſtance, the Infidels ſhould have entirely ſubdued her, the *Polanders* entertained a Diſtruſt of his Czariſh Majeſty, which by degrees extreamly exaſperated the Minds of both Parties.

JOHN SOBIESKI *choſen King of* POLAND.

JOHN SOBIESKI was choſen King, who being valiant, enterprizing, and aſſiſted by the Reputation he had acquired, great Matters were expected from him to releaſe the Crown from the ſhameful Tribute, which the *Turk* had impoſed upon her, and which he exacted with Haughtineſs and Menaces. The new King ſent an Ambaſſador to the Czar, to court his Friendſhip: *Alexis Michaelowitz* had a particular Intereſt to manage Matters ſo, that the *Polanders* might not make Peace without him, otherwiſe all the Forces of *Turky*, which nothing could hinder from being very conſiderable at the opening of the Campaign, would have fell upon *Ruſſia*: Therefore his Czariſh Majeſty ſent an Army into the *Ukraine* ſtronger than the former, under the Command of General *Romadanowſki*. He divided it into three Bodies; the firſt marched towards *Czeberin*, a Town at the South Extremity of the *Ukraine* upon the River *Teſzium*, which falls into the *Dnieper* at *Kyrlow*, where the famous *Coſſack* Rebel *Doroſenſko* had his Reſidence, who having taken up Arms againſt *Poland*, had drawn the *Turks* into the *Ukraine*, and was the Author of this War; the ſecond Body took the Route of *Kaniow*, one of the principal Towns of the *Coſſacks*, upon the *Dnieper*, about thirty Leagues from *Kiow*; and the third, which was commanded

by the *Coſſack Hanenko*, advanced towards *Czirkaſſy*, a Town on the *Dnieper*, about twenty Leagues from *Kiow*; this Body of Troops had a Rencounter, on their Way, with another Body of the *Coſſacks* of *Doroſenſko*, who fought with great Fury, but were almoſt all cut to Pieces. The *Ruſſians* attacked *Czeberin*, but *Doroſenſko* who did not find himſelf ſtrong enough to maintain ſo large a Place, ſet Fire to it, and retired to the Caſtle, with Hopes of being ſoon ſuccour'd by the *Tartars*. The *Ruſſian* General contented himſelf with keeping him ſhut up in this Fort, and employed the greateſt Part of his Army in reducing all the other little Places of the *Ukraine*, and in deſtroying all the little Parties of *Tartars* that ran up and down the Country.

THE Czar, in the mean Time, to penetrate into the real Sentiments of the *Poles*, cauſed a Report to be ſpread, that the *Grand Seignior* deſired nothing more than to make Peace with *Poland*, on Condition, that that Crown would join with him to drive the *Ruſſians* out of the *Ukraine*. The *Polanders*, whoſe Jealouſy had been excited by the Conqueſts the *Ruſſians* made in that Province, fell into the Snare that was laid for them, and ſhewed, that they were not againſt ſuch an Accommodation; the Czar cauſed Complaint to be made of this to the King, by his Miniſter, and offer'd, at the ſame Time, to join his Army to his, that they might act in Concert; but nothing could get over the Diffidence there was between the two Courts, nor conquer the Jealouſy of the *Poles*, who

cared not to ſhare the Honour of a Victory with their Neighbours.

WHILE Affairs were in this Poſture towards the *Dnieper*, the King of *Sweden*, *Charles* XI. who had ſucceeded his Father, found himſelf much embarraſſed. He had taken, as that Prince had done, the Part of *France*, from whence he drew large Supplies. And to hinder the Elector of *Brandenbourg* from declaring for the *Dutch*, with whom ſhe was at War, he had ſent Troops into that Electorate, where they were beaten near *Febrberlin*, and this Battle was followed by a League made between *Denmark*, *Brandenbourg*, *Holland*, *Lunenbourg*, and *Munſter*, who all together took up Arms againſt *Sweden*. It would have been all over with that Crown, if the Czar, who maintained a ſtrict Correſpondence with the *Dutch*, had joined ſo many Enemies to carry the War into the Heart of *Sweden*, whilſt the others attacked her only in the moſt diſtant Parts, I mean, her Dominions in *Germany*. Therefore, as well to diſſuade the Czar from ſuch a Deſign, if it ſhould be ſuggeſted to him, as to be exactly inform'd of the Affairs of *Ruſſia*, his *Swediſh* Majeſty ſent a ſolemn Embaſſy to *Moſcow*.

THE Czar, who was not altogether ignorant of the Subject of the Embaſſy, was willing to give the *Swediſh* Ambaſſadors to underſtand, that altho' he had actually an hundred and fifty thouſand Men in the Field in the *Ukraine*, yet he had Troops enough to act as he would any where elſe; for this Reaſon they were to have a moſt magnificent Reception: And for that Purpoſe, were lodged for ſome Weeks at

at *Nicolſko*, about a League from *Moſcow*. The Ambaſſadors in their Way to that City, were met by twenty-four Regiments of Foot, of a thouſand Men each, and eight thouſand Horſe, of ſix different Nations, all armed, well cloathed, and well mounted. This long Proceſſion of Troops was followed by ſeveral Companies of Merchants, richly habited, and by two hundred Pieces of Cannon, of which ſome were gilt with Gold, and ſome were plated with Silver. All the *Ruſſian* Nobility preceded the Ambaſſadors, upon *Perſian*, *Turkiſh*, and *German* Horſes, finely capariſoned. This Train marched ſo ſlowly, that altho' the Proceſſion began long before Noon, it was above five Hours before the Ambaſſadors arrived at the Palace that was appointed for their Entertainment. As ſoon as they entered into the Suburbs, they found three *Priſtafs*, who receiv'd them in the Czar's Coach, while ſeventy Sumpter Horſes were diſtributed among their Retinue. The Czar's Maſter of the Horſe began this ſecond Proceſſion at the Head of a fine Company of the Nobility, magnificently dreſſed and ſuperbly mounted; among whom was the Czar's Brother: But when the Ambaſſadors were to have their Audience, Count *Oxenſtiern* would not conſent to make his Speech to his Czariſh Majeſty with his Head uncovered, which the *Ruſſians* inſiſted upon, becauſe the *Swedes* had exacted the ſame Thing from the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador at *Stockholm*, in the Year 1662. Therefore an Expreſs was to be diſpatched to the King of *Sweden* on this Account, which Count *Oxenſtiern* was not diſpleaſed with, as it

gave him the more Time to make his Enquiries.

DOROSINSKO, ſhut up in the Caſtle of *Czeberin*, preſſed the Grand Seignior, without ceaſing to ſend an Army into the *Ukraine* to drive the *Ruſſians* thence: The Emperor of the *Turks* deſired nothing more than to withdraw his Troops, with Honour, from *Poland*, and by ſome Means to engage the new King, whoſe Valour he dreaded, to liſten to Peace. Thus the *Ottoman* Army croſſing the *Nieſter*, on a ſudden, at *Sorakka*, threw itſelf into the *Ukraine*, where it ſeized on *Koſniek*, *Sciana*, *Jampul*, *Kuzſyn*, and ſeveral other little Places. They immediately ſent five thouſand Men to ſuccour *Doroſenſko*, but the *Ruſſians* having intercepted them in their March, put them all to the Sword; this irritated the Rebels to ſuch a Degree, that conſulting with the *Turks*, they agreed to pillage all the *Ukraine*, that they might drive away the *Ruſſians* for want of Subſiſtence. This barbarous Advice was but too well followed, for in leſs than a Fortnight all this fine Province, which was cover'd with a fruitful Crop, and all Sorts of Fruits, was reduced to a wild Deſart, the *Turkiſh* Army, this Year, conſiſting of near four hundred thouſand Men.

THE King of *Poland* look'd upon this Irruption of the *Ottoman* Army into *Ruſſia* in a quite different Light from the *Grand Seignior*, and imagining, that his Highneſs would not have taken this Step but with a Deſign to fall with the greater Force upon *Poland*, after he had beaten the *Ruſſians*, he reſolved to march to the Aſſiſtance of his Allies. For this Reaſon,

ſon, upon the News of the *Turks* having plunder'd the Country, taken *Ladiſzin*, where four thouſand *Coſſacks* had defended themſelves with much Courage, both in the Town and the Fort, and that from thence an hundred thouſand *Turks* were gone to lay Siege to the great City of *Human*, he advanced with the Crown Army towards *Jawaroff*, where he made four large Detatchments to find Diverſion, and give the *Ruſſians* an Opportunity not only to ſave *Human*, but alſo to take *Czeberin*, which they ſtill kept beſieged, and, at the ſame Time, to ſeize on the Rebel *Doroſenſko*.

THIS Prince alſo had a great Number of Ships ready to throw a Bridge over the *Nieſter*, and carry the Fire into the Enemy's Country: At length *Couvanſki*, at the Head of the *Calmuck Tartars*, marched into the *Crim*; but all this could not ſave *Human*: The *Turks* cauſed eight great Mines to be ſprung at the ſame Time, which opened to them a large Paſſage to begin the Aſſault, ſo that of above an hundred thouſand Men, very few eſcaped. *Romadanowſki* revenged this Maſſacre as much as he could upon the *Tartars*, commanded by the *Cham* in Perſon, who returned to the Succour of the *Crim*: The *Ruſſian* General fell upon his Army, which he entirely defeated. Nevertheleſs upon the Report of the whole *Turkiſh* Army being on their March, *Romadanowſki* thought proper to retire behind the *Dnieper*. This brought ſo much Terror to *Moſcow*, that the Czar immediately ſent a Reinforcement to his Army, of which he gave the Command to the Knez

Dol-

Dolgorucki, reſolving to put himſelf in Perſon at the Head of it. For this Reaſon he cauſed his Son *Theodore Alexowitz* to be acknowledg'd his Succeſſor before his Departure.

THE Crown Army was under the Command of the King, between *Leopold* and *Caminiec*, in order to incommode the Gariſon of this laſt Place; ſo that the *Turks*, ſeeing no more Enemies, and their Army diminiſhing every Day, thro' Sickneſs and Famine, they retook the Route of the *Danube*.

THUS the Czar loſt, all on a ſudden, the Fruits of two Campaigns, during which he had ſubdued the greateſt Part of the *Ukraine*. It was at this Time that all the Jealouſy of the *Poles* diſcover'd itſelf; they ſent a Plenipotentiary to *Kudzin*, to treat with the *Ruſſians*, of whom they complain'd, as not having obſerv'd the Treaty of *Ardeſkou*, ſince they had not reſtored *Kiow* in the Year 1670. The *Ruſſians*, on their Side, complained of ſeveral Writings of the *Polanders*, wherein they had not ſhewn that Reſpect for the Czar which was due to him, and propoſed an Equivalent for *Kiow*.

DURING theſe Diſputes, the Crown Army, which had only ſome rebel *Coſſacks* at the Head of it, of the Party of *Doroſenſko*, went on from one Conqueſt to another, till, in leſs than ſix Weeks, they had ſubdued all the *Ukraine* as far as *Kiow*. The *Ruſſians*, jealous, in their Turn, of this new Progreſs, refuſed to furniſh the *Poles*, that were incamped in the Neighbourhood of this Fortreſs, with any Proviſions, 'till upon Complaint of the King, the Czar expedited Orders to the Wey-

vode

vode of *Kiow*, not to deny any thing to the Army of the Allies; but he forgot nothing, that might prevent *Doroſenſko* from making his Peace with the King of *Poland*, becauſe the Rendition of *Czeberin* had put him in Poſſeſſion of all the *Ukraine*.

The Death of the Czar ALEXIS MICHAELOWITZ.

WHILE theſe Things happened, the Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz* died in the Year 1676, at the Age of forty-ſix; he had had two Wives, one the Daughter of *Ilia Danielowitz Miloſlauſki*, as we have ſaid before; the other the Daughter of *Cariloff Naraſkin*, to whom he was married in the Year 1671, and who ſurvived him, and lived till the Year 1694. By the firſt he had the Czarewitzes *Simon* and *Alexis*, who both died before him, the Czar *Theodore*, the Czar *John*, and the Princeſſes *Sophia*, *Catharine*, *Mary*, and *Sediaſſa*. The Children of the ſecond Venter were the Czar PETER the Great, and the Princeſs *Natalia*.

HE had beſides theſe a natural Son, whom he created a Knez, and whoſe Mother he married to a Nobleman called *Muſchin Puſchkin*; but when the Czar married his ſecond Wife, this Lady, having through Jealouſy, dropt ſome injurious Expreſſions againſt the new Czarina, both ſhe and her Son were ſent to *Aſtracan*, where they dy'd.

IT may be ſaid, without Exaggeration, that *Alexis Michaelowitz* was one of the greateſt Princes of his Time, and one of the beſt and wiſeſt that *Ruſſia* had known for many Ages. Tho' valiant, he never made War but when he could not avoid it; he was a Father of his People, and endeavour'd always

to

to make them happy, and render the Weight of his Authority as light as poſſible. What did he not do to form them for War, and put them in a Situation to be reſpected by their Neighbours, as they were all his Life time? What Expences did he ſpare to ſucceed in his Deſigns, by drawing into his Service, with large Penſions, Foreign Officers, capable of inſtructing them in all Parts of military Diſcipline? It were to be wiſh'd, that he had, at the ſame Time, obliged them to obſerve ſome of the Cuſtoms, and Manners of theſe Foreigners, which might have eſtabliſh'd a good Correſpondence between them and the other People of *Europe*; but, beſides that the Time was not yet come in which this great and uſeful Revolution was to be brought about, the great Father of Religion, the Patriarch, whoſe Credit was not yet at all diminiſhed, oppoſed to this the antient Uſages, and the Fear of ſuch Communication corrupting their eſtabliſh'd Faith. In ſhort, the Czar lov'd his People, lov'd Juſtice and Peace, and endeavour'd all the reſt of his Reign, to repair the Ills, that his Favorites and Miniſters had cauſed in his Youth, by abuſing the Confidence he had placed in them. He would ſee every Thing done himſelf, and as a Proof of his Wiſdom and Policy, it is ſufficient to obſerve how he appeaſed the Revolt of *Stenko Razin*, who without the wiſe Precautions he took, threaten'd the Deſtruction of the whole Empire. His Policy likewiſe appeared in the Treaties he made with *Sweden* and *Poland*, and in the laſt War which he declared ſo *ápropos* with the *Turks*, who,

who, without that, would have added the *Ukraine* to *Podolia*, and all *Poland* to the *Ukraine*; and what would afterwards have become of *Ruſſia*, but to be made a Prey to that inſolent Nation and the cruel *Tartars?*

I MIGHT add, as the finiſhing ſtroke to this ſhort Sketch of his Picture, that the fine Education and the great Qualities, which were afterwards diſcovered in his Children, were Indications of his own Abilities. The Greatneſs of Soul in the Czar *Theodore*, the extenſive Knowledge and great Policy of the Princeſs *Sophia*, and laſtly, that Love for Glory, for Arts, for Virtue, and for his People, that were the Characteriſticks of PETER *the Great*, were all ſo many Encomiums upon their Father.

PRINCE THEODORE ALEXOWITZ born in the Year 1657, was eighteen Years of Age when he aſcended the Throne. His Father had cauſed him to be acknowledged his Succeſſor, the Year before his Death, when he had taken the Reſolution to put himſelf at the Head of his Army in the *Ukraine*, as we have mentioned before. This young Prince found his Affairs a little embarraſſed. The War in the *Ukraine* had laſted three Years, and ſucceeded immediately to that which the Czar had been obliged to make with the *Coſſacks*, ſo that his Finances could not be in a mighty good Condition; nevertheleſs he continued his Father's Deſign upon the *Ukraine*, and with the more Vigour, as he endeavoured to bring the Enemy to a good Peace. THEODORE ALEXOWITZ *comes to the Crown.*

THE GRAND SEIGNIOR having made Peace with the King of *Poland*, who indeed aboliſhed

ed the ſhameful Tribute mentioned in the laſt Treaty, but left *Caminiec* in the Hands of the *Turks*, the Armies quitted the Field; that of *Poland*, reduced from fifty ſeven, to twenty three thouſand Men, went into Winter Quarters; and that of the *Sultan* paſſed the *Nieſter*, and the *Danube*. By one of the Articles of the Treaty, the *Turks* offer'd the *Polanders* their Aſſiſtance to retake the Provinces which the *Ruſſians* had conquered upon them; to ſay the Truth, the King had not accepted this Offer; but he did not reject it with that Cordiality which would have become a good Ally on the like Occaſion.

By another Article of the ſame Treaty, the *Turks* ſurrendered to *Poland* all that Part of the *Ukraine*, that lies on the Weſt of the *Dnieper*, reſerving to themſelves the Southern Part, which was under the Obedience of *Doroſenſko*. The *Ruſſian* Army had a fair Field opened to them, in which they found no Enemy to oppoſe their Enterprizes; ſo that in a ſhort Time, they brought again to the Subjection of the Czar, not only all the Towns in the *Ukraine*, which the *Turks* had kept to themſelves, among which was the ſtrong City of *Czeherin*, but alſo ſome other Places yielded to the *Poles*. What was of moſt Importance in this Conqueſt, was the taking of the Rebel *Doroſenſko*. This *Zaporoſki Coſſack* diſſatisfy'd, as hath been ſaid before, with *Poland*, had devoted himſelf to the *Turks* and *Tartars*, whom he invited into *Poland*, and eſpecially into the *Ukraine*. Inconſtant and a Cheat, he had often endeavoured to make his Peace with *Poland*; but always with an Intent to deceive her, and

altho'

altho' the *Grand Seignior* had ſent him the General's Staff, he ſought the Protection of the Czar *Alexis*, to whom he ſent this Mark of his Dignity, that he might hold it only from him, and afterwards he treated with the King of *Poland*; ſo true it is, that a Man who is once a Traytor, is always a Traytor, what Party ſoever he embraces; therefore thoſe who act prudently, altho' they may take their Advantage of the Treaſon, never place any Confidence in the Author of it.

THIS Expedition drew upon the Czar all the Forces of the *Ottoman Porte*, whoſe firſt Exploit was the Siege of *Czeberin*, but the *Ruſſians* receiv'd them with ſo much Valour, that they loſt, before this Town, a Part of their Army, their Baggage, and their Artillery, and retreated in Confuſion, without thinking of making another Attempt during this Campaign; but it was to be fear'd, that the *Turk* would return with his beſt Forces the next Year to revenge this Affront; for this Reaſon the Czar ſent early, in the beginning of the Year 1678, a Miniſter into *Poland*, to demand, in his Turn, the Succour which he himſelf had been ready to give his Neighbours, when diſtreſs'd: But ſo far from finding the *Poles* diſpoſed to do the like, they not only excuſed themſelves, on account of the melancholy Situation of the Affairs, which the late Troubles, and the laſt War, had brought the Kingdom into, as alſo on account of the new Treaty concluded with the *Porte*, which would be infringed by granting the Succours demanded; but the King ſent himſelf two Ambaſſadors to *Moſcow*, named *Zevorinſki* and

and *Sapieha*, to take Advantage of the Neceſſity the Czar was in, and to exact from him ſome advantageous Terms. They demanded, "That General *Doroſenſko* ſhould be put "into their Hands, as a Rebel; that *Kiow* "and *Smolenſko* ſhould be ſurrender'd; and "that Satisfaction ſhould be made them for "not joining them with a Body of thirty "thouſand Men, as had been agreed by the "laſt Treaty:" Without conſidering that the Diverſions that they had made in the *Ukraine* and in *Crimea*, had been more uſeful to the Crown Army, than the Junction of fifty thouſand Men. At length after ſome Debates, a Treaty was concluded, in which it was agreed:

I. THAT the Truce ſhould be continued for fifteen Years, comprehending the Years yet to come, and the preceding.

II. THAT the Czar ſhould pay to *Poland*, as an Equivalent for *Kiow* and *Smolenſko*, two hundred thouſand *Roubles*, half in ready Money, and the other half in the Month of *November*, during the Diet.

III. THAT his Czariſh Majeſty ſhould evacuate to *Poland* the Towns of *Vieliſſe* and *Nievel*, ſituated on the Frontiers of *Lithuania*; and as to the Reſtitution of ſome other Places, on which they could not agree, the Affair ſhould be ſpoke of in the Diet.

IV. THAT all Priſoners on both Sides ſhould be ſet at Liberty.

V. THAT a Reſolution ſhould be taken in the Diet, with reſpect to the Succours demanded, and the Junction of the Armies againſt the *Turks* and *Tartars*.

IT was found, at the Opening of the next Campaign, that they had not been deceived, concerning the Efforts that the *Turks* would make.

THEY re-enter'd the *Ukraine* more formidably than the Year before, reſolved to carry *Czeberin* coſt what it would; General *Romadanowſki*, who commanded the *Ruſſian* Army, advanced couragiouſly to the Succour of the Place, and even obtained ſome Advantages over the Beſiegers, who nevertheleſs did not raiſe the Siege, but on the contrary, having made a large Breach in the Walls, they took the Town by Aſſault, and put above thirty thouſand Men to the Sword. The taking this Place confounded the *Ruſſian* Army who retreated, the *Ottomans* purſued them as far as *Bukzin*, falling upon their Rear-Guard, but got no other Advantage over them, than defeating a few ſmall Detachments made to amuſe them, while the Body of the Army got to a Place where they were in Safety. Altho' General *Romadanowſki* had made this Retreat with much Order, and in the View of a formidable Army, yet his Conduct was not approv'd by the Czar, with whom he was in Diſgrace. Nevertheleſs, it is certain, that this Retreat obliged the *Turks* to make an End of the Campaign, for being in the Enemy's Country without Proviſions or Magazines, they found themſelves not in a Condition to undertake any thing, and therefore retreated in their Turn, beyond the *Nieſter*.

WE have ſaid above, that in the laſt Treaty, or Convention, concluded at *Moſcow*, with the Miniſter of *Poland*, the Anſwer to the

Demand which the Czar made of a powerful Succour againſt the *Turks*, was referred to the Diet. This Diet was called together at *Grodno*, in the Beginning of the Year 1679, where it was put to the Queſtion, whether the Peace newly concluded with the *Porte*, ſhould be maintained, as it was not very honourable for *Poland*, or whether it ſhould be broke, and the Army of the Crown joined to that of the Czar, that they might attack the *Ottomans* together. The Emperor's Party, the Pope's Nuncio, and a Part of the Diet were for the laſt: But the *Polanders* were for acting as cunningly as they could with the *Ruſſians*, and, therefore, as the Czar had aſked for Succours, they, imagining he could not do without them, were willing to make him purchaſe them with the Reſtitution of thoſe Places, which the *Poles* had yielded to the Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz* by the Treaty of *Ardeſkou*. For this Purpoſe the King *John Sobieſki* ſent a Miniſter to *Moſcow*, to make the Propoſition; but the Czar had too much Knowledge in Affairs to be taken in ſo: He knew what he had to expect from the jealous *Polanders*, and therefore anſwered the *Poliſh* Ambaſſador, that he was reſolved to pay no Subſidy to *Poland*, and that he required nothing but the Junction of Forces, that they might act in common againſt the common Enemy, to conſtrain him at length to agree to an honourable Peace with both States.

THE TURKS found no Advantage in a War with *Ruſſia*, ſince all the Conqueſts they could make in the *Ukraine*, were not worth a Quarter of the Expences they were at in bringing

bringing their Army into that Province; for this Reaſon, the Divan judged, that it would be for the Intereſt of the *Porte* to make Peace with the Czar; and the Sultan gave Orders to the Cham of *Tartary* to offer his Mediation to his Czariſh Majeſty. The Deſign of the *Porte*, which had juſt renewed the Truce, for twenty Years, with the Emperor of the *Romans*, was to get rid of all her Enemies, that ſhe might afterwards fall, with the greater Force, upon *Poland*, and take from her all the *Podolia*. *Spendowſki*, the Ambaſſador of the Crown at the *Porte*, had penetrated into this and given Advice of it to the King, who demanded Succours from all the Princes of Chriſtendom, and particularly from the Czar. When this Prince found himſelf ſought after, he imitated the Policy of the *Polanders*, and offered to join them with a numerous Army, upon Condition that they would renounce all their Pretenſions in *Ruſſia*. Theſe did not reject the Propoſition, but deſired the Czar to ſend a Miniſter to *Poland* with full Powers to regulate the Affair, and ſettle the Time and Place of the Junction of the Forces.

THIS Miniſter made Propoſitions, that were very agreeable, but they were ſtill accompany'd by Conditions ſo hard, that it was not difficult to diſcover, that he did not deſire they ſhould be accepted, ſo that the *Polanders* ſaw, that the *Ruſſians* ſought only to amuſe them, or that they had already made their Peace with the *Turks*, and were not willing to break it without finding conſiderable Advantages thereby; and, indeed, thoſe who made this Judgment were not deceived, for the

Czar declared, that he would prefer a tolerable Peace with the *Turks*, to the Conditions which were to accompany the new Treaty of Alliance with the *Polanders*. In ſhort, the Czar made his Peace with the *Porte*, who abandoned the *Coſſacks*, that had put themſelves under her Protection, and remained Guarantee of the laſt Treaty made between the Czar and the Cham of *Tartary*, who had engaged himſelf to put a Stop to his Subjects making any Inroads into the Provinces of *Ruſſia*.

THE Czar *Theodore* from his firſt coming to the Throne, had been too much employed in military Affairs to execute all the fine Projects he had formed, for the Good of his People, and the Embelliſhment of the City of *Moſcow*; but many Things he did in both. Faithfully attached to the wiſe Maxims of his Father, he protected, as he had done, Foreign Officers whom he drew into his Country from all Parts, and gave great Encouragement to all uſeful Arts.

HE paved the Streets of *Moſcow*, raiſed many Stone Buildings there, and took great Pains to have other Cities repaired: For the Publick Buildings, that were of Wood or Brick he cauſed to be pulled down, and new Stone ones to be built in their Room. He lent Money out of the Treaſury to be repaid in ten Years, and furniſhed Materials to private People, who were not in a Capacity to build ſuch Houſes in the City as he required. He was a great Lover of Horſes, which proved very advantageous to the Empire: For he ſent for good Stone-Horſes and Mares from *Pruſſia*,

Pruſſia, and ſet up ſeveral Studs, in convenient Places, whence in a ſhort Time, there was a Breed raiſed, ſufficient, in ſome Meaſure, to ſupply the Occaſions of the Court, as well as of the Army. Among other Regulations, he alſo introduced a new Policy, for the better Government of the City of *Moſcow*, and commanded the Streets of that City to be ſhut up at Night, and a Watch to be kept there.

THE Czar *Theodore*, at a certain Time, convened all the Nobility, and commanded them to bring their Patents and Charters of Privileges to Court, in order to have them confirmed: And when he had the Papers together, he threw the whole Heap into the Fire, and declared, that, for the future, their Liberties and Prerogatives ſhould be grounded only on Merit, and not upon Birth.

As ſoon as he was at Peace he thought of marrying, and choſe for his Bride *Opimia Routeſſki*, a Niece of the Boyar *Simon Iwanowitz Sabaroſſki*; with whom his Nuptials were celebrated with great Pomp in the Month of *Auguſt*, 1681; but this young Lady dying in the Beginning of the next Year, his chief Favourite and Privy Counſellor, *Jaſykow*, perſuaded him, notwithſtanding the weak Condition he was in, to marry almoſt on his Death Bed, another Lady, named *Martha* or *Marvea Matweowna*, the Daughter of a Nobleman called *Mathias Apraxin*, merely to hinder, if he could, the Succeſſion of PETER. The Marriage Ceremony was perform'd in the Month of *May*,

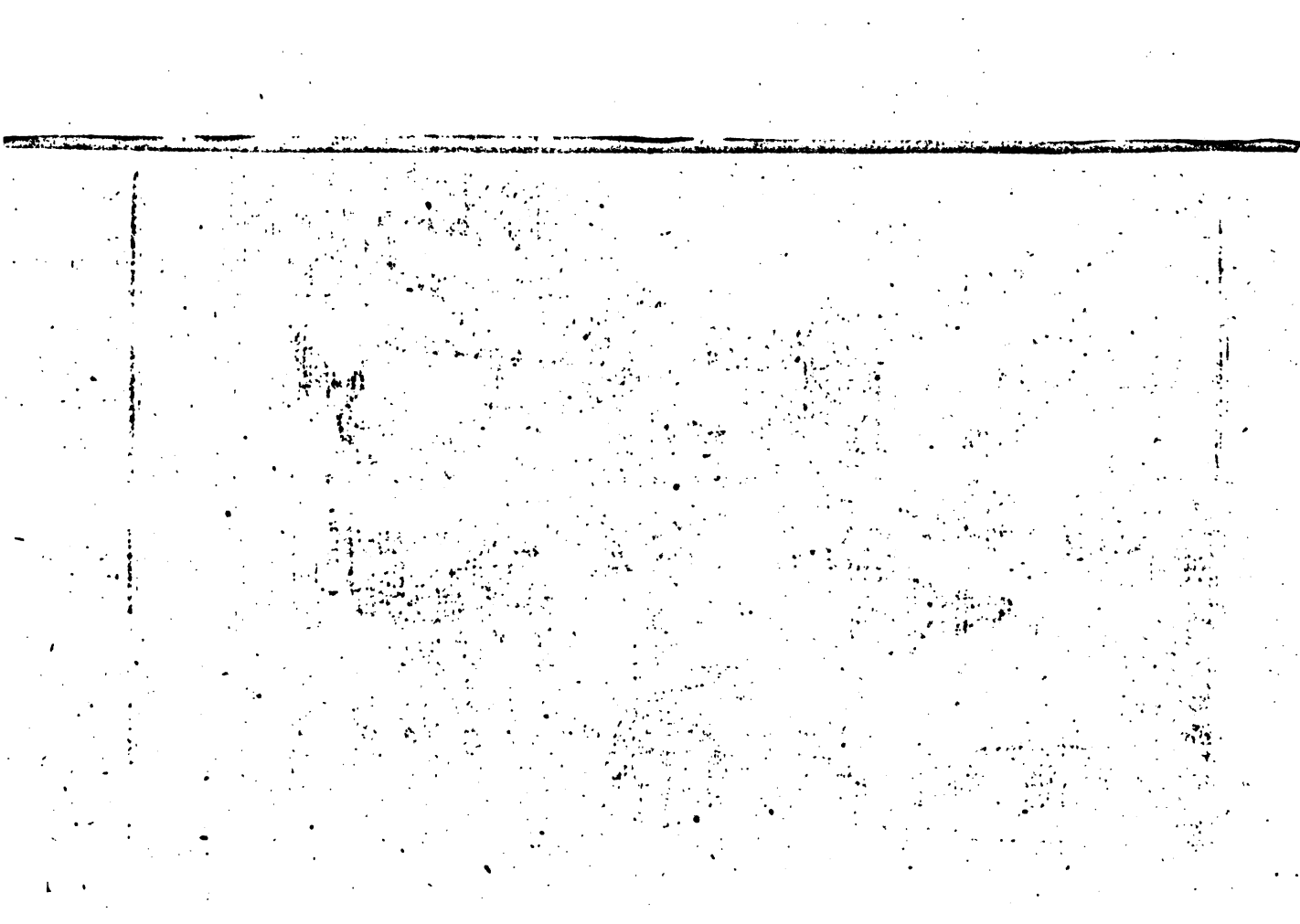
1682, with great Solemnity; but was soon followed by a general Mourning, for Death snatched this excellent Prince from his People at an Age, that prevented his doing those great Things he had designed for his Country, and to the inexpressible Grief of all his Subjects.

The Czar THEODORE *dies.*

THE Czar *Theodore Alexowitz* had no Children, but left, at the Time of his Death, two Brothers, *John* and *Peter*, the first by the same Mother, the latter but his Half-Brother, so that most People imagined *John* would have been appointed his Successor; but *Theodore* having a greater Regard for the Welfare of his Country, than for a bad Custom, which in spite of all Objections prefers the Right of Primogeniture to all other Considerations, and judging his Brother *John* who was but weak in his Understanding, as well as his Sight, unfit to hold the Reins of Government, and provide for the Necessities of a State just emerging from the Barbarism in which it had been plunged by the savage Manners of its antient Sovereigns, declared Prince *Peter* for his Successor, who by his worthy Actions acquired the Sirname of *Great*, and by the happy and well-judg'd Alterations he made in the Usages and Manners of the *Russian* Nation, well deserved the Title that was given him of *Father of his Country*.

The End of the Fourth BOOK.

THE





Peter the Great presents Truth, Religion and the Arts to ancient Russia; Petersburgh is seen at a Distance and y^e Ancient Modes giving Place to the New.

THE HISTORY OF *RUSSIA*,

To the End of the REIGN of the

Empreſs CATHARINE.

BOOK V.

The CONTENTS.

The Beginning of the Reign of PETER *the Great.*

AS I have already wrote the Hiſtory of the Life of *Peter* I. in three Volumes, I ſhall refer to thoſe for a particular Detail of the Circumſtances of that great Emperor's Reign, contenting myſelf, in this Place, to preſent the Reader with a Recapitulation of what hath been ſaid in that Work, adding what hath come to my Knowledge ſince that was publiſh'd.

PETER THE GREAT came to the Throne, upon the Death of his Brother *Theodore*, in the Year 1682, when not above ten Years of Age; but a Rebellion that was ſoon after raiſed, by the turbulent Spirit of the Princeſs *Sophia*, his Half-Siſter, would not allow him the quiet Poſſeſſion of it, till his elder Brother *John* was proclaimed Czar in Conjunction with him, which was done the Year following.

THE Czars being both very young, the Princeſs *Sophia*, who was a Woman of a maſculine Spirit, and great Policy, got the Adminiſtration of the Government into her own Hands; but the Traytor *Couvanſki*, Preſident of the * *Strelitzes*, who had been one of the chief Inſtruments in the Revolution lately brought about, preſuming upon the Power he found himſelf poſſeſſed of, was very troubleſome, and even had the daring Ambition to aſpire at placing the Crown itſelf on the Head of his own Son. The Princeſs *Sophia* and her Favourite Prince *Galliczin*, ſoon found Means to rid themſelves of this inſolent Man, and puniſh him for all his Crimes at once, even thoſe which ſhe had conſented to herſelf; but not till he had let looſe his *Strelitzes* to plunder and murder all who were not of his Party in *Moſcow*, and had driven the Imperial Family to ſeek Shelter in the *Troitſky* Monaſtery, about ſixty *Ruſs* Miles from the City, from whence the Princeſs ſent an Invitation to all the Boyars to an intended Feaſt, and particularly to *Couvanſki*,

* *Theſe were eſtabliſh'd Forces, or Guards, like the* Janiſſaries *among the* Turks, *of which* 20,000 *were uſed to be quarter'd in* Moſcow.

who

who yet continued his Cruelties at *Moſcow*, which ſhe artfully ſeemed to approve; but contrived to have him way-laid in the Road to the *Troitſky Monaſtery* by two hundred Horſemen, who, according to their Inſtructions, carried him and his Son into an Houſe, and cut off both their Heads at the ſame Inſtant.

THE STRELITZES, when they firſt heard an Account of this, began to mutiny, and vowed Revenge againſt the Government, that had deprived them of their Chief. The Court, ſeeing the Danger with which the State was threaten'd, raiſed their other Forces, who bore an implacable Hatred to the *Strelitzes*, than whom they were much better diſciplined, and were commanded by *German* Officers, againſt whom, or any regular Force, the *Strelitzes* were little able to ſtand; ſo that their Hearts ſinking, and finding themſelves without a Leader, they made Offers of Peace, which being accepted, the Czars immediately returned to *Moſcow*, accompanied by the Nobility and *German* Officers: And the *Strelitzes* meeting them, proſtrated themſelves at their Feet, and begged for Mercy; the Czars thereupon making a Sign that they forgave them, the penitent Soldiers poured forth Tears of Joy, to ſee their Sovereigns returned to their Capital in ſo mild a Diſpoſition.

THIS Commotion being quieted, the Princeſs *Sophia* thought of making new Regulations in the State, and of giving Laws to her Sovereigns, and the very ſame Day created her Favourite Prince *Galliczin* Grand Chancellor,

cellor, and *Wrenimienk*, which anſwers to the Poſt of Firſt Miniſter.

GALLICZIN was one of the ableſt Stateſmen, and moſt polite Man in *Ruſſia*, which he nobly reſolv'd ſhould make a Figure with the reſt of *Europe*; for this Reaſon, in the Diſpoſition of the principal Offices in the State he regarded Merit more than the mere Pretenſions of high Birth, and the Intereſts of particular great Families, which drew upon him the Hatred of many, but that did not hinder him from exerting his Authority. He adviſed, at this Time, a Treaty with *Sweden*, and ſoon after the Concluſion of the Peace with that Crown, came to an Accommodation with the *Poles*, who gave up their Pretenſions to the *Ukraine*, the Duchy of *Smolenſko*, and other Territories conquer'd by the *Ruſſians*; the Czars, on their Part, being to make War on the *Precops*, and prevent their Incurſions into *Poland*.

THE TURKS preparing to enter *Crimea*, Prince *Galliczin* named ſeveral Lords as proper to command in the Expedition againſt them; but the Boyars, who were his Enemies, under Pretence of doing him Honour, inſiſted that no one was ſo fit for that Command as himſelf, which he was obliged to accept of, tho' much againſt his Inclination, being a much greater Stateſman than Soldier, and knowing that tho' he had many Difficulties to encounter, and but a raw and undiſciplined Army to lead againſt the Enemy, if any ill Succeſs ſhould happen, it would be all imputed to him, notwithſtanding he uſed the utmoſt Precaution.

THE

THE RUSSIANS having joined the *Hettman* of the *Coſſacks* in the *Ukraine*, they took the Field together on the firſt of *May* 1687, with an Army of three hundred thouſand Foot, and an hundred thouſand Horſe; but having no Succeſs, the Army was diſbanded, and Prince *Galliczin*, to excuſe himſelf, threw all the Blame of the Miſcarriage upon *John Samuelerrich*, Hettman of the *Coſſacks*, who was therefore depoſed, and ſent into *Siberia*: *Mazeppa*, who had formerly been a Page to *John Caſimir*, King of *Poland*, being choſen *Hettman* in his Room.

PRINCE GALLICZIN, at his Return to *Moſcow*, notwithſtanding he had done ſo little, was received by the Princeſs with all the Marks of Favour he could wiſh, and took upon him the Management of Affairs with as much Authority as ever. This great Favourite, and the Princeſs Regent, not a little alarmed at the ſurpriſing Genius they diſcover'd in the young Czar PETER, took all the Ways that were poſſible to ſtifle in him thoſe Seeds of Virtue which afterwards grew up and flouriſhed with ſo much Glory to himſelf and his Country. The Princeſs had before this deprived him of his Governor *Meneſius*, a *Scotchman*, well qualified for that Employment, becauſe he was not to be brought over to her Intereſt; and now they engaged him in ſuch Company, and ſuch Diverſions as they imagined would give him little Reliſh of any thing that might make him capable of thwarting their Deſigns, or of being willing to take upon himſelf the Trouble of Government: And as for his

his Brother *John*, he had neither Capacity nor Conſtitution to undertake any thing to diſturb them.

PETER marries.

IN the mean Time, the Friends of the Czar *Peter*, apprehending their Deſigns, uſed their Endeavours to counter-plot them, and having got Prince *Galliczin* out of the Way on a ſecond Expedition to the *Crim*, they found Means to prevail upon *Peter* to marry in his Abſence, being now in the 18th Year of his Age. The young Lady he made Choice of was named *Ottokeſa Federowna*, Daughter of the Boyar *Feoder Abrahamowitz*, which bold Stroke greatly encreaſed the Party of the Czar PETER, all the young Men, whoſe Fathers followed the Princeſs, declaring for him.

A Conſpiracy againſt his Life.

BY this Marriage, Prince *Galliczin*, at his Return, found all his Meaſures broken; but being ſupported by the Princeſs's Authority, they made a bold Attempt againſt the Life of *Peter*, the Princeſs foreſeeing, that this Brother, if not timely prevented, would one Day not only be the Ruin of all her ambitious Deſigns, but perhaps oblige her to return to the Convent, from whence ſhe had withdrawn herſelf, contrary to the uſual Cuſtom of thoſe who have once taken Refuge there. Princeſs *Sophia* and *Galliczin*, in order to accompliſh their Ends, brought *Mazeppa*, the new *Hettman* of the *Coſſacks*, into the City of *Moſcow*, with five hundred of his principal Officers, in order to aſſiſt them, tho' under Pretence of doing him Honour, and preſenting him to do Homage to the Czars. They had moreover pitched upon *Theodore*

The-

Thekelavitau to be the principal Inſtrument in the bloody Enterprize.

THIS Man had been raiſed, by the Princeſs, to the Dignity of Preſident of the *Strelitzes*, in the room of *Couvanſki*, and had promiſed a punctual Obedience to all her Commands. At the Time when the Plot was ripe for Execution, the Czar *Peter* was at one of his Country Houſes, called *Obrogenſko*, upon the River *Yarus*, about a League from *Moſcow*; thither he went at the Head of ſix hundred of his *Strelitzes*, all Men, as he thought, to be relied on; but whilſt he was giving his Orders, two of the Number, ſhocked at the Toughts of ſtaining their Hands in the Blood of their Sovereign, ſtole off privately, and gave the Czar Notice of the Plot againſt him, by which early Intelligence, he found Means to get off, and ſecure himſelf in the *Troitſky* Monaſtery. *Thekelavitau* was puniſhed with Death, and the Princeſs *Sophia* not only loſt her Authority, but was confined all the reſt of her Days. Her Death did not happen till fifteen Years after, during which Time, ſeveral Commotions were raiſed in her Favour.

ALTHO' the Name of the elder Brother *John*, was mentioned with *Peter*'s in the Beginning of all publick Acts, yet the latter ſeemed to have all the Authority of the Government in himſelf; but did not give many Preſages at this Time, of being the great Prince he was afterwards found to be; taking Delight in many idle and cruel Diverſions, and being very much governed by his young Favourite *Boris Galliczin*, a near Relation of Prince

Prince *Galliczin*, but Maſter of none of his good Qualities or Talents, being a Debauchee himſelf, and introducing none but ſuch to the Czar's Favour. However the *Naraſkins*, the Czar *Peter*'s Relations by his Mother, at length found Means to remove the Favourite, and put themſelves in his Place; but theſe being fond of the antient Cuſtoms of their Country, were for deſtroying ſeveral wiſe Regulations made by the great Prince *Galiczin*; they again forbad all Foreigners coming into *Muſcovy*, who had been encouraged by Prince *Galliczin*, and were reducing Things apace to their antient State of Ignorance and Tyranny, if theſe Misfortunes had not been prevented by *Peter*'s caſting his Eye on a new Favourite, one M. *Le Fort*, to whom was owing the firſt Foundation of the *Ruſſian* Grandeur, and from whom *Peter* imbibed ſuch Notions of Virtue, and Propriety, as made him afterwards one of the greateſt Princes that ever reigned, either in that Country, or any other.

THE Manner of this *Le Fort*'s coming into *Ruſſia*, I have given an Account of, in the firſt Volume of my Life of *Peter*, from M. *de la Motraye*, who ſeems to have been the beſt informed upon that Subject. *Peter*, who from his Childhood had always a ſtrong Inclination to all military Affairs, diſcourſing one Day with M. *Le Fort*, on the Cuſtoms of foreign Countries, and particularly of *Denmark*, from whence he laſt came, aſked him ſome Queſtions concerning the King of *Denmark*'s Guards, and what he thought of his own, bidding him ſpeak his Mind freely. *Le Fort* took this Occaſion to inform him of the Diſ-

cipline and Manner of cloathing Troops in other Countries, with which *Peter* was ſo well pleaſed, that he ordered his Army ſhould be diſciplined and cloathed according to his Directions, and entered himſelf into it, even in the meaneſt Poſt, that of a Drummer, ſtrictly forbidding his Captain to remember he was Czar; he ſerved with all due Submiſſion, lived upon his Pay, and lay in the Tent of a Drummer, till promoted to the Degree of a Serjeant, which was not till he deſerved it, in the Judgment of his Officers, whom he would puniſh if they judg'd too favourably of him.

Peter enters into the Army as a Drummer.

Made a Serjeant.

WHEN PETER found himſelf furniſh'd with Soldiers better diſciplined, he reſolved to leſſen the Strength of the *Strelitzes*, who were too much attached to the Princeſs *Sophia*; and now to the utter Extinction of all the Hopes of that Siſter and her Party, the Czarina was deliver'd of a Son, who was named *Alexis Petrowitz.*

The CZAREWITZ *born.*

THE CZAR highly pleaſed with the Foreigners whom M. *Le Fort* had procured for his Guards, conſulted the ſame Gentleman about introducing others into *Ruſſia*, of different Profeſſions, that he might cultivate Arts and Sciences among his People: In order to which *Le Fort* adviſed his Czariſh Majeſty to make ſome new Regulations in his Finances, which anſwered ſo well, that it put it in his Power to encourage Foreigners to leave their own Country, and ſettle in *Ruſſia*, where ſoon appeared a great Number, eſpecially *Germans*, *Scots*, and *French*, both experienced Soldiers, and Men ſkilful in other Sciences.

PETER *regulates his Revenues, and encourages Foreigners.*

LE

LE FORT, altho' he adviſed the Czar to give this Encouragement to Foreigners, did not forget to recommend ſuch of the Natives of *Ruſſia* to Preferment whom he himſelf, or ſome of thoſe Foreigners had taken Pains to qualify for the moſt profitable Employments. Among others *Alexander Menzikoff*, juſt then taken into Favour by the Czar, was indebted to him for being qualified for the great Poſts he afterwards enjoy'd.

IN the Year 1691, *Peter* put away his Wife, having ſome Suſpicion, as was pretended, of Diſloyalty in her, and cauſed her to be cloſely confined all the reſt of her Life. The Year following an Embaſſy was ſent, by the two Czars, to *China*, in order to ſettle a Trade with that Nation. About the ſame Time *Peter* preſented the *Ruſſians* with a Scene that was intirely new to them. Having diſcourſed with his Favourite M. *Le Fort* concerning Shipping, that ingenious Gentleman gave him ſo high an Idea of the Advantages that the Maritime Powers of *Europe* reaped from their Naval Affairs, that from that Inſtant, he reſolved to turn his Views that Way; and immediately gave Orders to ſome *Hollanders* who were at *Moſcow*, to build ſeveral ſmall Veſſels, and afterwards four Frigates of four Guns each, with which he often diverted himſelf upon the *Periſlanſky* Lake, and cauſed now and then Mock-Fights to be performed thereon, in which he acted as a Sea Captain, and from thenceforward took that Title upon him.

The firſt Riſe of Ship-building in RUSSIA.

THE Year following [1695] the *Ruſſians* having declared War with the *Turks* and *Tartars*,

tars, *Peter* commanded ſeveral Galleys, and other Veſſels to be built and equip'd on the River *Veronis*, which, with ſome open Boats of the *Donſky Coſſacks*, he employed in the Siege of *Azoph*. The ſame Year beheld the firſt Campaign of the two moſt formidable Monarchs of *Europe*, *Peter* I. Czar of *Muſcovy*, and *Muſtapha* II. Emperor of the *Turks*. The Czar, in this Expedition, entered himſelf as an Enſign only, but had an Army of eighty or ninety thouſand well diſciplined Men divided into two Bodies, one to attack the Town of *Azoph*, and the other to ſupport the *Donſky Coſſacks*, and make Head againſt the *Tartars* if they ſhould attempt to throw any Succours into the Town; but this the *Turks* were able to do by Water, and, making frequent Sallies, held out a reſolute Defence for above two Months, during which Time the Czar *Peter* was every where, ſaw all Things done himſelf, and made his Remarks upon what happened.

PETER's *firſt Campaign.*

Becomes an Enſign.

THE *Ruſſians* had conſtantly the better when they ſkirmiſhed with the Enemy, and began to play their Battery with good Succeſs, when the Progreſs they had made was all rendered fruitleſs by the Treachery of an Engineer, who being ill uſed by the Boyar he ſerved under, nailed up the Cannon upon the Batteries he was intruſted with, and deſerted in the Night-Time to the Enemy, which forced the *Muſcovites* to leave the Place for that Year, and turn the Siege into a Blockade. Soon after *Peter*'s Return to *Moſcow*, the Czar *John* died, which was in the Month of *February*, 1696.

Goes a ſecond Time againſt AZOPH.

PETER, now ſole Monarch of *Ruſſia*, having employed ſeveral *Venetians* and others to build more Ships at *Veronis*, and finding them in a good Condition to fall down the River *Don*, went a ſecond Time againſt *Azoph*, and acted with great Boldneſs and Vigour aboard his own Fleet. When the *Turks* came before the Bar, he laid an Ambuſcade behind a ſmall Iſland, and then, making a Shew of retiring, fell upon them, and took and ſunk ſeveral of their Veſſels, beating them back over the Bar. His Czariſh Majeſty having largely recruited his Army, which was under the Command of General *Gordon*, a *Scotchman*, the Siege was carry'd on with ſuch Reſolution, that the Enemy finding themſelves diſappointed of the Relief they expected and every way diſtreſſed, were obliged to ſurrender the Place.

Takes and ſinks ſeveral TURKISH *Veſſels.*

AZOPH *ſurrendered.*

THE Czar finding by Experience the great Advantage of a maritime Force, reſolved to eſtabliſh a Navy, that ſhould not only ſecure his Conqueſts, but enable him to meet and oppoſe the *Turks* in the *Black-Sea*; for this Purpoſe, he ſent for Workmen from *Holland* and *Italy*, to build Ships and Galleys, and uſed ſuch extraordinary Methods to defray the Expence of it, that the *Ruſſians*, who were naturally great Enemies to all Innovations, expreſſed much Uneaſineſs, and this gave an Opportunity to the diſcontented Party among the Boyars, to form a Conſpiracy, wherein it was agreed to aſſaſſinate the Czar, to releaſe the Princeſs *Sophia* out of Priſon, and put the Crown upon her Head; after which the Conſpirators were to reſtore the *Strelitzes*, who had been removed from their Poſts, on the

PETER reſolves to build a Fleet.

Account of *Couvanſki*'s Rebellion; and laſtly, they were to maſſacre all Foreigners, and the Czar's new Favourites, who, they imagined, put him upon theſe Things which were ſo diſagreeable to them: But this Plot was diſcover'd by two Captains of the *Strelitzes*, who diſcourſing together, were touch'd with Remorſe, and immediately ran to the Czar at his Favourite *Le Fort*'s Houſe, and laid the whole Matter open to him, upon which the Conſpirators were all ſeized and puniſhed according to their Demerits. After which his Czariſh Majeſty prepared for his Travels, reſolving to viſit ſeveral Foreign Countries for the Improvement of his own.

In order to which, he apppointed M. *Le Fort*, now made a Lieutenant General, and Admiral of his Fleet, together with Count *Gallowin* Governor of *Siberia*, and M. *Woſtriſeſtyn* Privy Counſellor and Secretary of State, his Ambaſſadors Extraordinary to the *States-General* of *Holland*, and went himſelf *incognito* in their Train, that he might have the better Opportunity of making his Obſervations, without being embarraſſed with the Ceremonies he was to expect if he made himſelf known.

Peter ſets out on his Travels.

He left the Adminiſtration of the Government, during his Abſence, to three Boyars, his Uncle *Naraſkin*, Prince *Galliczin*, and *Peter Procoroſky*, to whom likewiſe he intruſted the Care of the Czarewitz *Alexis* his Son. Which done, he ſet out with the Grand Embaſſy for *Riga*, in the Month of *May* 1697. The Governor of this City paid great Reſpect to the Embaſſy, but refuſing to ſhew the Fortifications to *Menzikoff* and

Comes to RIGA.

General *Le Fort*, with whom the Czar intended to have ſatisfied his own Curioſity, he was ſo much incenſed, that he ſaid to his Favourites, *He hoped he ſhould ſee the Day, when he ſhould be able to refuſe the ſame Thing to the King of* Sweden *himſelf*. And this was afterwards, in a Manifeſto he publiſhed, given as one Reaſon, tho' certainly not a very good one, for declaring War with the *Swedes*.

Next to KONINGSBERG.

THE CZAR came next to *Koningſberg*, in the King of *Pruſſia*'s Dominions, then Elector of *Brandenbourg*, where he had all the Honours ſhewed him he could deſire, and having diſcovered himſelf to the Elector, his Yachts were ordered to attend him, and nothing was deny'd him that he was willing to ſee or to have. It was in his Way hither, that he had Advice of the Elector of *Saxony*'s being choſen King of *Poland* in the Room of *John Sobieſky*, deceaſed, and that the Cardinal Primate had proteſted againſt the ſaid Election, in Favour of the Prince of *Conti*, who lay before *Dantzick*, with a Squadron of *French* Men of War. The Czar, as ſoon as he receiv'd this Advice, ſent Orders to his Ambaſſadors then in *Poland*, to maintain the Right of Election, and to aſſure King *Auguſtus*, that he had 60,000 Men in Readineſs to ſerve him. He likewiſe ſent Orders to his Troops in the *Ukraine*, and about *Smolenſko*, to advance towards the Frontiers of *Lithuania*, to keep that great Duchy in his Intereſt. The favourable Interpoſition of ſo powerful a Prince as the Czar, it is thought, had a great Influence on the *Poles* at this Time, but was a Step, that the Court of *France* could never forgive.

THE

THE CZAR taking leave of *Koningſberg*, came next to *Dantzick*, in which City, and moſt other Maritime Places, his Czariſh Majeſty had very handſome Preſents made to him under the Shew of doing it to the Ambaſſadors, who were complimented with the higheſt Marks of Reſpect, but his Majeſty would not ſuffer any Ceremony to be paid to himſelf. He went round the Towns privately to view them, attended by the Governor, or ſome few of the moſt conſiderable Perſons, but without a Guard, or other Attendance. He had ſo great Deſire to be in *Holland*, that he tarry'd not long at any of the Sea Ports in the *Baltick*, and but a few Days at *Hambourg*. On his approaching the Frontiers of the *United Provinces*, the *States-General* appointed Deputies to receive the *Embaſſy* with very conſiderable Preſents, and the greateſt Marks of Honour that could be ſhewn on the like Occaſion. Before the Ambaſſadors arrived at *Amſterdam*, his Czariſh Majeſty left them, and enter'd that City *incognito*, accompanied only by a few Merchants whom he had known at *Moſcow*, and who, having private Notice of his coming, went out to meet him. The Magiſtrates alſo having ſome Intimation of it, deputed ſome conſiderable Perſons to wait on him, with Offers of all Things neceſſary and ſuitable to his Dignity; and had alſo prepared a magnificent Houſe for his Reception, but he was not to be perſuaded to accept of it, chuſing a little Houſe on the *Eaſt-India* Company's Wharf or Ship-Yard, where he enter'd himſelf as a common Carpenter, and was enrolled

To DANTZICK.

Comes to HOLLAND.

rolled in the Liſt of Workmen, by the Name of *Peter Michaelhoff*. Here he lived ſeveral Months with two or three of his Favourites, whom he took to be Partners with him in learning the Art of Ship-Building, but was obſerved to be more induſtrious, and work with greater Aſſiduity than any of his Companions, who, as M. *Fontenelle* obſerves, had not, indeed, any Motives comparable to his, which were to increaſe the Wealth and Glory of his Country. He work'd for the greateſt Part of the Day with the Carpenter's Broad Axe, among the *Dutchmen*, wearing the ſame Sort of Habit that they did, for the better Diſguiſe; and at other Times would divert himſelf with ſailing and rowing upon the Water.

THE CZAR himſelf continued at the *Hague* for ſome Time after the Ambaſſadors were departed, that he might have a particular Interview with King *William*, on the Deſign which he had formed of coming to *London*. During the Time of his Czariſh Majeſty's Stay in *Holland*, he received the agreeable News of his Army's having obtained a Victory over the *Turks* and *Tartars*: Which was preceded by another Advantage gained at Sea, over the *Tartars*, who, thinking to ſurprize *Azoph*, had ſent a large Number of Half-Galleys, with other Veſſels full of Troops, to execute their Deſign on that Place. About the ſame Time that he received this News, he had an Account of the Death of *Charles* XI. King of *Sweden*, and of the Acceſſion of his Son *Charles* XII. to the Throne of his Anceſtors.

IN

To ENGLAND.

IN the Middle of *January*, his Czariſh Majeſty embarked at *Helvoetſluys* for *London*. While his Majeſty was in *Holland*, he had ſeen ſeveral *Engliſh* built Ships, whoſe Beauty and Proportion pleaſed him much better than the *Dutch* Ships, and underſtanding likewiſe that the *Engliſh* worked by Plan and Rule, while the People of *Holland* knew very little of the Theory of Ship-Building, he reſolved to come over hither, that he might improve his Knowledge herein, to the utmoſt Perfection.

A handſome Houſe was provided for his Czariſh Majeſty at the Bottom of *York-Buildings* near the Water-Side, which not being ſo agreeable to his Humour or the Deſign of his coming over, as one below Bridge, a very neat one was fitted up for him belonging to Mr. *Evelyn*, with a Back-Door into the King's Yard at *Deptford*, where he would often take up the Carpenters Tools and work with them; he frequently converſed with the Builders, who ſhewed him their Draughts, and the Method of laying down by Proportion any Ship or Veſſel of what Body ſoever they required, with which his Majeſty was wonderfully pleaſed, and thought he had miſpent all the Time he had employed on that Account in *Holland*, ſaying he ſhould never have learned his Trade if he had not come into *England*.

HE had ſeveral Interviews with King *William*, and her late Majeſty, then Princeſs *Anne* of *Denmark*, and ſeveral of the *Engliſh* Nobility, but was more pleaſed with the Converſation of the then Marqueſs of *Carmarthen*, than any other, with whom he delighted to talk of maritime Affairs, and who would row and

ſail with him on the Water, and gave him all the Knowledge he could in the Affairs of the Shipping. In return of which, when he had ſettled a free Importation of *Tobacco* with ſome of our Merchants here, it was on Condition, that my Lord *Carmarthen* ſhould have five Shillings for every Hogſhead of *Tobacco* ſo imported.

THE King to divert his Majeſty ſent Admiral *Mitchel* along with him to *Portſmouth*, to put the Fleet out to Sea, which lay at *Spithead*, where he was entertained with a Mock Engagement, which he had alſo ſeen in *Holland*, but not ſo much to his Satisfaction as this, which gave him ſo great Pleaſure, that he declared he thought an *Engliſh* Admiral a happier Man than a Czar of *Muſcovy*.

DURING his Stay in *England*, he went to ſee the Univerſity of *Oxford*, was once to viſit the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, at his Palace at *Lambeth*, and went many Times to ſee our Cathedrals and Churches, to obſerve the Order of our eſtabliſhed Religion, and had alſo the Curioſity to view our Quakers, and other Diſſenting Meetings in the Time of their Service. He went to view the *Tower* of *London*, where he ſeemed much pleaſed with the Armoury, and the Manner of Coining Money. He was ſhewn the two Houſes of Parliament when ſitting, and was prevailed upon twice or thrice to go to the Play, tho' this was a Diverſion he had not much Taſte for. His Czariſh Majeſty uſed to dreſs after the *Engliſh* Faſhion, ſometimes like a Gentleman, and ſometimes like a Sailor, going abroad with little Attendance, and when the Mob began

to

to gaze at him, he would always quit the Place.

WHEN his Czariſh Majeſty left *England*, King *William* gave him Leave to take any of his Subjects into his Service, that he ſhould have Occaſion for, and made him a Preſent of a fine Yacht, called the *Royal Tranſport*. In ſhort, his Majeſty approved ſo well of all he had ſeen in *England*, eſpecially relating to our Shipping, that he reſolved to have nothing but *Engliſh* built Ships in his Country, and thereupon took ſeveral *Engliſh* Ship-Builders and Artificers to be employed in the Navy he was about to eſtabliſh, among the reſt Captain *John Perry*, recommended to him as a Perſon capable of ſerving him in ſeveral of his Deſigns, particularly in that of making a Communication between the Rivers *Wolga* and *Don*, the Diſtance of which Communication is about one hundred and forty *Ruſs* Miles, by way of two other ſmall Rivers, the one called the *Laſia*, which falls into the *Don*, the other the *Camiſhinka*, which falls into the *Wolga*; upon theſe two ſmall Rivers Sluices were to be placed to make them navigable, and a Canal of near four *Ruſs* Miles, to be cut through the dry Land, where the two ſmall Rivers come neareſt to one another. This was a fine Undertaking of the Czar, by Means of which a Trade was to have been open'd with *Perſia*, by the *Caſpian* and *Black-Seas*, beſides the great Advantage it would be to the *Ruſſians*, in caſe of a War with the *Turks*.

HIS CZARISH Majeſty, after having been more than four Months in *England*, went back

The CZAR *leaves* ENGLAND.

back again to *Holland*, and from thence to the Court of *Vienna*, where the next Day after his Arrival, he had a private Audience of the Emperor *Leopold* at the Palace *de la Favourita*. Upon the 29th of *July* the Grand Embaſſy had their publick Audience, to which they were conducted in a very magnificent Manner, and were treated very ſplendidly at the Emperor's Expence. Whilſt his Czariſh Majeſty was thus on his Travels, conciliating to himſelf the Affections of the greateſt Powers of *Europe*, making Obſervations, and learning Arts for the Advancement of the Proſperity and Glory of his own Country, Intelligence coming frequently to *Moſcow*, that he was extreamly pleaſed with what he met with in Foreign Countries, and intended to make great Alterations in his own Affairs as ſoon as he came home, the diſcontented Party, who were in the Princeſs *Sophia*'s Intereſt, took a Handle from thence to infuſe ſtrong Jealouſies into the Minds of the People, which were greatly fomented by the Prieſts, that his Majeſty would ſubvert their holy Religion, and by bringing Foreigners among them, deſign'd to oppreſs his natural Subjects; upon which a Conſpiracy was form'd to declare the Throne vacant, and place his Siſter thereon in his Stead.

Another Conſpiracy.

WHEN the Czar firſt had an Account of this Rebellion, he was preparing to ſet out from the Court of *Vienna* to *Venice*, which State, as well as *Rome*, he had intended to viſit, if this News had not made him alter his Reſolution, and ſent him directly to *Moſcow*, where he arrived with Expedition and Secrecy,

cy, to the Confuſion of his Enemies, a great Number of whom he ordered to be executed in an exemplary Manner. The very Name of *Strelitzes* he commanded to be aboliſhed and changed into that of *Soldatee*; a great Number of them were put to Death, and ſeveral baniſhed into *Siberia*, and other remote Parts of the Kingdom. PETER *ſettles his Army.*

HIS CZARISH Majeſty next turned his Thoughts on reforming his People and Government; he began with eſtabliſhing his Guards, which were thoſe Regiments that were ſettled in the Room of the *Strelitzes*, and put his whole Army on a new Footing, directing a new Manner of diſciplining them agreeable to what he had ſeen abroad. After which he went down to *Veronis* to view the Ships that were building in his Abſence, and to haſten the Equipment of the Fleet, that he deſigned for the *Black-Sea*. As ſoon as he came thither, he made the *Engliſh* his chief Maſter-Builders, and ordered that for the future no Ship ſhould be built but after the *Engliſh* Models. Immediately upon his Arrival, he put a fifty Gun Ship upon the Stocks from a Draught he had made himſelf, and when he had proceeded a little Way on it, he left it to be carried on by two young *Ruſſian* Gentlemen who had travelled with him, and learnt the Art of Ship-Building in his Company; ordering them to take Advice from the *Engliſh* Ship-Builders when they had Occaſion; he alſo left Orders with his Admirals to get the Ships and Galleys, that were already built, rigged and in readineſs to be carried down to *His Navy.*

Azoph,

Azoph, whither he intended to go with them the next Spring.

Buries his Favourite LE FORT.

HIS CZARISH Majesty had scarce Time to settle the Affairs of his Navy at *Veronis*, before he was hastened to *Moscow* by a Misfortune which might be accounted so to his whole Country, that was the Death of his Favourite *Le Fort*: A Man who had highly deserved all the Honours that he had or could confer upon him. The Czar was sensibly touch'd with the Loss, and order'd the most magnificent Pomp to attend his Funeral Obsequies, at which he assisted himself, crying with a loud Voice, *That he had lost his Father.* This worthy Minister left at his Death, which was but in the 46th Year of his Age, near a Million of *Roubles*, all acquired without Oppression or Corruption. He married into a very rich Family, the Head of which he had saved, as he had several others, from the Rage of his Master. He was *disinterested*, *humane*, *just*, *sober*, *generous*, and *brave*. Never was Servant more beloved by his Prince, or more deserving it. And what is not very common with Favourites, he gained his Master's Esteem by his Merit only.

THIS melancholy Office over, his Majesty chose a new Set of Lords to be of his Council; and instituted the Order of *St. Andrew*, Prince *Menzikoff*, being the first on whom he conferr'd it. About the same Time [*Anno* 1699.] by the Mediation of King *William* the Third, his Czarish Majesty prolonged his Truce with the *Turks* for twenty-five Years, and the next Day after the Ratification of it declared War with *Charles* XII. the young

Declares War with the King of SWEDEN.

King

King of *Sweden*, as his Allies the King of *Poland* and *Denmark* had done before.

THE CZAR's true Motive for entering into this War, was the Hopes of recovering *Ingria*, formerly taken from the *Ruſſians* by *Guſtavus Adolphus*, by the Poſſeſſion of which Province, he ſhould be enabled to have a Port on the Eaſt Side of the *Baltick-Sea*, to complete his great Deſign of opening new Ways between that and the *Euxine* and *Caſpian* Seas, and from thence to the Northern Ocean, which was to be done by cutting Canals to unite the Rivers *Wolga*, *Tanais*, and *Dwina*.

WHILE his Army and Fleet were preparing for the enſuing War, he began his intended Reformation in the Church and State. He aboliſhed the Office of Patriarch, who had aſſumed a moſt unreaſonable Power and State, and made himſelf ſole Head and Governor of the Church. He afterwards reformed the Government of the Provinces, and the Abuſes in his Revenues. He altered the Commencement of the Year from the Firſt of *September*, to the Firſt of *January*. He ſet up ſeveral Schools; but one Method he took to preſerve Arts and Sciences among his People, was indeed a little cruel, which was confining the Profeſſors of them in his Country, by denying them Paſſports to return to their own.

THE CZAR's Forces being in Readineſs, in the Year 1700, he appeared before *Narva* with an Army of an hundred thouſand Men, hoping that if he could take this Town, he ſhould open a Paſſage to the *Baltick*. It was on the Firſt of *October* that he ſat down before it, a Seaſon very rigorous in thoſe cold Climates.

mates. The Command of his Army was given to the Duke *de Croy*, a *German*, and he took no higher a Poſt than that of Lieutenant himſelf. In this Army he had only a Body of thirty thouſand Men, who were the Soldatee, formed out of the old *Strelitzes* and *Germans* that were worth any thing; the reſt were a rude Number drawn from the Wilds and Foreſts, who had never ſeen a Battle or regular Siege.

Becomes a Lieutenant.

THE King of *Sweden*, enraged at the Treatment he met with from three powerful Monarchs falling upon him at once, having firſt reduced the King of *Denmark* to ſue for Peace, which was concluded by the Treaty of *Travendal*, croſſed the Sea with two hundred Tranſports, and landed at *Pernaw* in the Gulph of *Riga*; after he had relieved that Town, beſieged by the King of *Poland*, who quitted it upon *Charles*'s Approach, he marched directly to *Narva*, with four thouſand Foot, and four thouſand Horſe, and with this ſmall Number, beat the Czar's Army of above an hundred thouſand Men. Twenty thouſand *Muſcovites* were kill'd on the Spot, and the reſt with their Generals *de Croy*, *Dolborouky*, *Gallowin*, and *Fredorowitz*, ſurrendred themſelves to the young Heroe then but eighteen Years of Age, and laid their Arms at his Feet.

The famous Battle of NARVA.

PETER himſelf was gone at this Time, to haſten the March of forty thouſand Recruits from *Pleſkow*; but thought it would be to little Purpoſe with ſuch raw and undiſciplin'd Men to engage the Victor juſt fleſhed with the Conqueſt of an hundred thouſand, ſo retired

tired to the Place from whence he came, and from thence went back to *Moſcow*, which was moſt terribly alarmed at the News of this Battle; but the Czar was ſo far from being diſpirited, that he would often ſay, "I ex- "pected to be beaten by the *Swedes*, and may "again, but they in Time will teach us to "beat them." Which proved true.

AFTER the Battle of *Narva*, his Czariſh Majeſty ſent Anſwers to two Letters he had receiv'd, one from the King of *England*, and the other from the *States-General*, to let them know he would accept of the Mediation they had therein offer'd him to come to an Accommodation with *Sweden*, and that he ſhould impatiently expect their Ambaſſadors for that Purpoſe; but in the mean while, he loſt no Time in making Proviſions for the War, and while his Preparations were making ready, he purſued with great Vigilance the Reformation of his People. He began firſt with ordering the *Muſcovites* to be ſhaved, which was not done without Difficulty, the *Ruſſians* having always had a great Veneration for long Beards. He next obliged them to alter their Dreſs, which was ridiculous and cumberſome, and forced them to comply with the Faſhions of the *Poles* in their Habits, pretty much like thoſe of *France* and *England*. Conſidering the frequent and dreadful Examples that were made of executing Women for the Murder of their Huſbands, out of Pity to his People, he reſolved to remove, as much as was poſſible, the Occaſion of it, which he took to be their coming together without any Liking or Affection for

The Czar reforms the Cuſtoms and Manners of his People.

one

one another, Matches being made, and young People joined in Wedlock by the mere Authority of their Parents, without any Regard to their own Inclinations. The Czar therefore order'd, that no young Couple ſhould marry, for the future, without their own good Liking and Conſent; and that all Perſons ſhould be admitted to viſit one another at leaſt ſix Weeks before Marriage; which Order was very agreeable to the younger Sort, and made them conceive a much better Opinion than they had before of Foreigners, from whom his Majeſty had learn'd theſe Cuſtoms.

THE CZAR's next Regulation was to retrench the Equipages of the Boyars and other great Men, and a Draught being made of ſeveral thouſand unneceſſary and ſupernumerary Attendants, they were all ſent to the Army; to which his Majeſty was going himſelf with all Expedition; and in order the better to concert Meaſures againſt the enſuing Campaign, an Interview was agreed upon between him and his Ally *Auguſtus*, King of *Poland*, which was held at *Birſen* a ſmall Town in *Lithuania*, wherein it was agreed, that King *Auguſtus* ſhould furniſh the Czar with fifty thouſand *German* Troops, which he was to hire of the Princes of the Empire, and the Czar was to pay them; who, on his Side, agreed to ſend a like Number of *Muſcovites* into *Poland*, to be trained up in military Diſcipline, and in two Years Time was to ſupply King *Auguſtus* with three Millions of Rix-Dollars.

An Interview between the Czar and King AUGUSTUS *at* BIRSEN.

THE King of *Sweden* informed of theſe Things, haſtened into *Livonia*, where he gave

a

a ſignal Overthrow to the Duke of *Courland*, who commanded the *Saxon* Army, in the Room of King *Auguſtus*, then ill in Bed: He afterwards took *Mittaw* the capital City of *Courland*, and all the reſt of the Towns in that Duchy yielded to him at Diſcretion. At *Birſen*, where the Czar and the King of *Poland* had met to contrive his Ruin, he firſt formed the Scheme of dethroning *Auguſtus:* And found but too many of his own Subjects ready to lend him their Aſſiſtance; for, as *M. de Voltaire* obſerves, the chief Subjects of this Country, proud of their Freedom, may be ſaid to be Tyrants over their King, whom they chooſe more to increaſe their own Authority than with an Intent to be govern'd by him. The King of *Poland* was drove to ſuch Straits, that he found he muſt either loſe his Crown, or preſerve it by a Battle, for which he prepared, and his *Saxon* Troops being all arrived from the Frontiers of his Electorate, and the Nobility of the Palatinate of *Cracow* coming in a Body to offer him their Services, he met the King of *Sweden*, on the 19th of *July*, 1702, in a large Plain near *Cliſſau*, between *Warſaw* and *Cracow*, with twenty thouſand Men, *Charles* having not above half that Number. Upon the firſt Diſcharge by the *Saxons*, the Duke of *Holſtein*, who commanded the *Swediſh* Horſe, received a Cannon Ball in the Reins, and fell by the Side of *Charles* XII. his Brother-in-law.

The Battle of CLISSAU.

THE King of *Poland* behaved with great Bravery, but Fortune was on *Charles*'s Side, who obtained a complete Victory; the Camp, Colours, Artillery and *Auguſtus*'s War Cheſt,

were all left to him, and he himſelf fled before the Conqueror, who purſued him to *Cracow*, and afterwards was reſolved to follow him farther without allowing him any Reſpite, but his Horſe fell under him, and broke his Thigh, which confined him to his Bed for ſix Weeks, and occaſioned a Rumour of his Death to be ſpread all over *Europe*. This Piece of falſe Intelligence gave freſh Spirits to the Followers of King *Auguſtus*, who made his Advantage of it, and aſſembling all the Orders of the Kingdom at *Marienbourg*, and then at *Lublin*, the Diet ſwore Fealty to him, and promiſed to maintain fifty thouſand Men for his Service; but when *Charles* was recovered of his Wound, he overturned all before him, and called together an Aſſembly at *Warſaw*, to oppoſe that of *Lublin*, and continued ſo firm in his Reſolution of dethroning *Auguſtus*, that he ſaid, *if he ſtay'd fifty Years he would not leave* Poland *till he had accompliſhed it.*

AT the ſame Time, ſome of the King of *Sweden*'s Generals repreſented to him the Miſchiefs the *Ruſſian* Troops were doing to his, who daily engaged with them, and oftentimes greatly to the Diſadvantage of the *Swedes*, in *Livonia*, *Eſthonia* and *Ingria*. The Field Mareſchal General *Czeremetoff* had twice defeated a Body of Men under General *Schlippenbach*'s Command, and afterwards purſuing them over the River *Embach* in *Livonia*, put them entirely to the Rout. His Czariſh Majeſty himſelf, next marched at the Head of his Army, and took the Fortreſs of *Oreſcheck*, or *Nottebourg*, which was the Capital of *Ingermania*,

The Czar beats the SWEDES *in* LIVONIA.

Takes NOTTEBOURG.

germania, lying on the Gulph of *Finland*, upon an Iſland, a little below where the *Neva* runs out of the Lake *Ladoga*. This had been taken from the *Ruſſians* by *Guſtavus Adolphus*, in the Year 1614, to which Fortreſs his Czariſh Majeſty afterwards gave the Name of *Slutelbourg*. His Forces next under the Command of Lieutenant General *Baur*, made themſelves Maſters of *Marienbourg*, which was, indeed, but meanly defended by a few *Swediſh* Troops, and of itſelf no very ſtrong Place. Among the Priſoners taken in this Town, was *Catharine*, who afterwards became Empreſs of *Ruſſia*, and whoſe Hiſtory will be the Subject of the other Volume of this Work.

ON the twentieth of *September*, 1702, News being brought to *Moſcow* of the taking of *Nottebourg*, *Te Deum* was ſung three Days after in the principal Church there, and in the Beginning of the Month of *December*, his Czariſh Majeſty made his triumphal Entry into that City. Not long after his Majeſty took the Town of *Nieſchantz* in *Ingria*, and obſerving, that about a *German* Mile lower down, the River *Neva*, dividing itſelf into ſeveral Branches, formed a Number of little Iſlands, this, from the Conveniency of the Situation, firſt inſpired him with the Thoughts of building a City there, which ſhould give him a Footing in the *Baltick* Sea; he went thither himſelf to ſound the River, and view the Iſlands. After a Skirmiſh with ſome *Swedes*, about the Iſland of *Retuſari*, he got Poſſeſſion of the Place, and built the Fort there, called *Cronſlot* or *Cronſtadt*. Being more and more pleaſed with the Situation of the neighbour-

And NIESCHANTZ.

ing Country, he purſued his Reſolution of building the City of *Peterſburgh*, and in the Month of *May*, 1703, where, at that Time, ſtood only four or five Fiſhermens Huts, he raiſed the firſt Houſe. He iſſued forth his Orders, that a great Number of Men from all Corners of his vaſt Empire ſhould repair thither to put his Deſign in Execution. The Place pitched upon is inacceſſible from the Depth of the River *Neva*, and the Country's being a Moraſs all round it. He was oblig'd to break through Foreſts, to open Ways, to dry up Moors, to raiſe Banks, before he could lay the Foundation of this new Town. The whole was a Force put upon Nature, but there were no Difficulties that he could not ſurmount, no Toils, but he would undergo to raiſe the Grandeur of his Nation. While this Work was carrying on, it is computed that no leſs than an hundred thouſand Men periſhed in the Place, for want of Proviſions, in a Country deſolated by War, and where the uſual Supplies by the Lake *Ladoga* were oftentimes retarded by contrary Winds.

PETERSBURGH *built.*

THE Plan of the Works was drawn by the Czar's own Hand, who was an excellent Draughtſman: The City beginning by Degrees to be built, his Majeſty obliged not only the Nobility, but Merchants and Tradeſmen of all ſorts, to go and live there, and to trade in ſuch Commodities as they were ordered. This was not at all pleaſing to the Perſons of Diſtinction, who, in *Moſcow*, had not only very large Buildings within the City, but alſo Country Seats and Villa's about it: However, as the Place was convenient, and a-

greeable both to the Deſign and Humour of the Czar, he paid no Regard to the Complaints of thoſe, who preferred their own Eaſe and Luxury, to the Advantage of their Country. Artificers, Mechanicks, and Seamen were invited hither to encourage Shipping, and the Affairs of the Navy; and the Workmen having worked the Time out that was appointed by his Majeſty, they were hired to build for the Boyars, and ſome of them even built Houſes for themſelves, and ſettled at *Peterſburgh*; to which they were greatly encouraged by every Man's being allowed to pitch upon the Spot that pleaſed him beſt. So that in one Year's Time, about thirty thouſand Houſes were erected.

WHEN CHARLES XII. was told of theſe Buildings, while he was in *Poland*, he anſwered, "That the Czar might amuſe himſelf if "he pleaſed, with ſuch Employments, but "he ſhould ſoon take them from him, and, "if they were worth it, he would keep them, "if not, he would ſet Fire to them." But he little underſtood the growing Power, and great Abilities of the Prince he oppoſed.

KING AUGUSTUS daily driven every where before the *Swedes*, ſent an Embaſſy to *Peter*, to conclude a Treaty of Alliance offenſive and defenſive with him, which with many other Things he had done was ſo contrary to the Inclination of the *Poles*, that in the Aſſembly held at *Warſaw* in the Year 1704, he was declared uncapable of wearing the Crown of *Poland*, and it was agreed that the Throne was vacant: Notwithſtanding a Letter ſent by the Czar to the Cardinal Primate,

AUGUSTUS II. *King of* POLAND *depoſed.*

mate, and the Senators of the Republick of *Poland*, declaring all thoſe his Enemies, who perſiſted in oppoſing their lawful Sovereign, and that he would puniſh them as ſuch wherever he found them, and would not forbear till he had rooted them, like Weeds, out of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and great Duchy of *Lithuania*. This Letter had no Effect upon the confederated Nobility, though ſome of them repreſented, that it deſerved to be maturely conſidered, becauſe of the fatal Conſequences the March of a *Ruſſian* Army into *Poland* might be attended with; but prudent Conſideration being inconſiſtent with their Deſigns, they reſolved to go on, and proceed to a new Election, which would have fallen upon Prince *James Sobieſki*, recommended by the King of *Sweden*, if that had not been prevented by his being ſurpriſed and forcibly carried off with his Brother *Conſtantine*, as they were hunting not far from *Breſlaw* in *Sileſia*, by a Party of Horſe privately ſent by *Auguſtus*, who afterwards confined both the young Princes at *Leipzick*. Upon which two other Candidates were nam'd for the Throne, Prince *Alexander Sobieſki*, and the Prince of *Conti*, the firſt of whom was favour'd by *Charles* XII. but this generous young Prince, preſſed to accept of the Crown which his Father had worn before him, abſolutely refuſed it while his elder Brother lived, and the few Voices that appeared for the Prince *Conti*, beſides the Cardinal Primate, made way for another Candidate, which was *Staniſlaus Leſcinſky*, the Palatine

latine of *Posnania*, * who was then a young Lord, endowed with great Virtues and Merit, and who was soon declared King of *Poland*, and Grand Duke of *Lithuania*.

AUGUSTUS when he heard of this Election of *Stanislaus*, assembled the Council at *Sendomir*, and declared him a Rebel and Traytor to his Country; but while he was contending with his Rival by vain Declarations, the King of *Sweden* every where routed his *Saxon* Troops. The Czar *Peter* grew every Day more and more formidable; and, having a well disciplined Army, had made himself Master of *Dorpt*, and on the 21st of *August*, 1704, took *Narva* by Assault, after a regular Siege. The *Swedes*, the same Year, uneasy to see the Works of *Peterſburgh* and *Cronſlot* go on with such Success, attacked the last Place, but were repulsed.

NARVA *taken by the Czar.*

I MUST, in this Place, insert an Incident which came to my Knowledge, since the Publication of my Life of *Peter*, which shews what great Care that Prince took in settling the least Affairs relating to his Marine; the Account I receiv'd from a Gentleman who had it from Captain *Colville* himself, who was Master of an *English* Vessel the first of any Nation, that put into the Harbour of *Cronſlot* as soon as it was finished. When this Gentlemen arrived within Sight of the Harbour, and made a Signal for a Pilot to come on Board him, a Person in a common Sailor's Habit obey'd his Summons, and brought the

* *At present Duke of* Lorrain, *and Father to the Queen of* France, *Consort of* Lewis XV.

Veſſel ſafe into the Harbour; but the Captain, obſerving, as ſeveral Gentleman came, as it ſeemed, to view his Ship out of Curioſity, as the firſt that came into that Port, that they paid a more than ordinary Reſpect to the Pilot, he imagined he was ſome Man of Conſequence, and, as it proved, perhaps the Czar himſelf, for which Reaſon he likewiſe uſed him with ſomewhat more Ceremony than he ſhould have ſhewn to a common Pilot, which his Czariſh Majeſty taking Notice of, aſk'd if he knew who he was? The Captain anſwer'd, that he had not the Honour to know him, but if he would give him Leave to gueſs, he took him to be the Great Czar of *Muſcovy*. Well, ſaid the Czar, you are not miſtaken, but that ſhall not excuſe you from paying what is due to me as a Pilot. I deſire, Sir, you will give me the uſual Fee that is paid upon theſe Occaſions, and let it not be more or leſs than you would have given to another, becauſe whatever that is, it ſhall be fixed as the Price to be given to all Pilots for bringing a Ship into this Port for the future. The Captain preſenting his Majeſty with ſome Pieces of Money to the Value of about three Half Crowns *Engliſh*, aſſured him he thought that would be a very proper Rate to be taken, and was what he ſhould have offer'd to another. The Czar ſeemed very well pleaſed, did the Captain the Honour to ſtay and dine with him, and ſhewing the Money to ſome of his Courtiers, aſked, *Which of them had earned ſo much that Day?*

In the Year 1705, the Czar having review'd his Troops, and put every thing in order,

order, prepared to open the Campaign. The Velt Mareſchal *Czeremetoff* marched before with eighteen or twenty thouſand Men, and his Majeſty followed at the Head of his Army, entering *Lithuania* by the Palatinate of *Poloczk*. After this followed the Battle of *Gemaurthoff*, in which Action the *Ruſſians* loſt five or ſix thouſand Men, the Velt Mareſchal was wounded, but the Victory was dearly purchaſed by the *Swedes*, who loſt General *Lindtſchioldt*, Major General *Wrangel*, Colonel *Horn*, two Lieutenant Colonels, many Captains both of Horſe and Foot, a great Number of Subalterns, and near two thouſand private Men.

THE CZAR was at this Time at *Vilna*, with his Army, which he reviewed in the Preſence of the Grandees of *Poland*, who could not ſufficiently admire in how ſhort a Time that Monarch had diſciplined his Troops. The firſt Deſign of the Czar was to march his Army along the *Duna*, and form the Siege of *Riga*; but this Check that he received, and an Account that *Leuwenhaupt*, fearing to be overpower'd by Numbers, had put Gariſons into *Mittaw* and *Bautſke*, which he had placed in ſuch a Manner, as to be always ſure of a Retreat to *Riga*, made his Czariſh Majeſty change his Reſolution, and the rather, becauſe the King of *Sweden*, and King *Staniſlaus* had convoked a General Diet at *Warſaw*, to put the laſt Hand to the grand Deſign of crowning the latter, which made it neceſſary for the common Cauſe, to endeavour to trouble that Aſſembly, whereupon the Czar publiſh'd a Manifeſto to declare why

why he came into the Heart of *Poland* with an hundred thouſand Foreign Troops, and to let them know that he would defend his Brother and Ally King *Auguſtus* to the Utmoſt of his Power.

His Czariſh Majeſty had been received a few Days before at *Vilna*, the Capital of *Lithuania*, by the Referendary of the Great Duchy in the Name of King *Auguſtus*, and all the States; felicitating his Country on having ſo powerful a Protector, who had generouſly undertaken to defend them from the Ruin that the *Swedes* would bring upon it without his Aſſiſtance.

The Czar's Troops marched divided into three Bodies, that of the Velt Mareſchal *Czeremetoff* was between the *Wilia* and the *Duna*, in *Courland*; the *Hettman Mazeppa*, to whom his Czariſh Majeſty had juſt given the Order of *St. Andrew*, was with fifty or ſixty thouſand *Coſſacks* entered into *Black Ruſſia*, to join the Party of *Auguſtus*, and the Velt Mareſchal *Ogilvi* led that in which the Czar was in Perſon into *Lithuania*, and which was as ſtrong as that of the *Coſſacks*. While the Czar was here, two unſucceſsful Attempts were made by the *Swedes* againſt *Cronſlot*, and his new City of *Peterſburgh*; but his Czariſh Majeſty made himſelf Maſter of all *Courland*, the King of *Sweden* not vouchſafing to ſend one Man to defend it, he was ſo much employed in the Buſineſs of continuing the Diet at *Warſaw*, and in his Deſign of crowning his King of *Poland*; which the Czar did what he could to prevent; when he came to *Grodno*, he fortify'd the Place, eſtabliſhed Magazines, furniſhing them

them not only with what he found in the Country, but with Things that he ordered to be tranſported from the Provinces of *Pleſkow*, and *Smolenſko*. On Account of the Diſpoſitions, that his Czariſh Majeſty made for the Preſervation of *Lithuania*, a Rumour was ſpread that he would take that Opportunity of uniting the Great Duchy to his own Dominions, by which Means the oppoſite Party thought to draw from him the Nobility of *Lithuania* and Upper *Poland*, who held out for King *Auguſtus*. This Prince had got together an Army of twenty thouſand Men in *Saxony*, but it was almoſt impoſſible to bring them into *Poland*, all the Paſſages were ſo well guarded. However, he was ſo ſtrongly preſſed, by General *Patkul*, who was, at that Time, Ambaſſador with him from the Czar, and by the Accounts that he received from *Warſaw*, that he could not but be ſenſible how neceſſary his Preſence was in that Kingdom; therefore he expoſed himſelf to the almoſt inevitable Danger of being taken by his Enemies that he might join his faithful Ally. He left *Dreſden* incognito, went to *Dantzick*, from thence to *Grodno*, and afterwards to the Army of his Czariſh Majeſty. At *Grodno* a Farce was performed, but ſuch an one, ſays Monſieur *de Fontenelle*, as was at leaſt inſtructive, and not unfit to be acted by Kings.

HIS Czariſh Majeſty, purſuant to the Laws which he had preſcribed to himſelf, would never advance in military Dignities beyond what his Merits might claim: And having requeſted King *Auguſtus* to take upon him the Command of his Army, he cauſed the

the *Ruſſian* General *Ogilvi* to propoſe in publick the filling up of two vacant Poſts of Colonels. *Auguſtus* ſaid he was not well enough acquainted with the *Ruſſian* Officers to know how to make a proper Choice; therefore deſired *Ogilvi* to name two whom he thought worthy thoſe Employments. *Ogilvi* named Prince *Alexander Menzikoff*, and *Peter Alexowitz*, meaning the Czar himſelf. The King of *Poland* ſaid he knew the Merits of *Menzikoff*, and would forthwith diſpatch his Commiſſion; but for the other he was not inform'd of his Services, but after four or five Days Solicitation, he made *Peter Alexowitz* a Colonel.

The Czar made a Colonel in his own Army.

THE CZAR, after this, left his Troops to his Ally, and went himſelf to put an End to a Rebellion raiſed in the Province of *Aſtracan*, the Chiefs of which was ſent to *Moſcow*, and there executed; but his Czariſh Majeſty had no ſooner left King *Auguſtus*, but this Prince began to liſten to ſome of the Grandees of *Lithuania*, who being very uneaſy to ſee their Country ruined by the *Ruſſians*, endeavour'd to raiſe Suſpicions, which much diminiſhed the good Underſtanding that had been between theſe two Sovereigns. The firſt Effect of this appeared in the Order that King *Auguſtus* ſent to arreſt *Patkul* in *Saxony*, who was ſuſpected to be working ſecretly to reconcile the Czar and the King of *Sweden*. On the 12th of *February* 1706, the *Swediſh* General *Renchild* with about ten thouſand Men, and *Shullembourg* with about twice the Number of *Ruſſians* and *Saxons*, met at a Place called *Fravenſtad*, and, in an Engagement that

that did not laſt a Quarter of an Hour, *Renchild* gained a compleat Victory over the latter.

THE Loſs of the Battle of *Fravenſtad* quite diſcouraged the Party of King *Auguſtus* in *Poland*, and put *Charles* XII. in a Condition to drive the *Ruſſians* out of *Lithuania*, where the Nobility being weary of maintaining both Friends and Foes, began to declare apace for the new King. The Czar was at *Smolenſko*, at the Head of twenty thouſand of his beſt Troops, to which General *Mazeppa* had joined thirty or forty thouſand *Coſſacks*; for the preſent Poſture of Affairs made the Czar think of the Defence of his own Dominions; beſides, had he been ever ſo willing to aſſiſt *Auguſtus*, he was not to do all alone, and ſuffer his Army to periſh by Hunger and Cold, to ſay nothing of the Seizure of *Patkul*, whoſe Releaſe he demanded, without vouchſafing to give Audience to the Biſhop of *Cujavia*, who was ſent by King *Auguſtus* to ſound him, and learn his Sentiments concerning his leaving him, after having done ſo much for him. Prince *Menzikoff*, ſome Time after, wrote him a Letter, in which he told him, that the Czar his Maſter had not withdrawn his Troops from *Lithuania*, but to re-eſtabliſh them in a better Air, and to return to his Aſſiſtance the next Campaign. *The Battle of* FRAVENSTAD.

CHARLES XII. having now joined his General *Renchild*, entered into *Saxony*, where he brought the Hereditary Dominions of *Auguſtus* into ſuch Danger, and lay'd the Country under ſuch heavy Contributions, that the unfortunate King of *Poland* was forced to treat privately

vately with him, and by a Treaty sign'd by his two Plenipotentiaries in the *Swedish* Camp at *Alt-Ranstadt*, he not only renounced his Crown, but was forced to acknowledge *Stanislaus* as lawful King, and promised not to remount the Throne even after the Death of the other. He was also to renounce all his Treaties with *Muscovy*, to restore the Princes *Sobieski* with Honour, and to deliver up *Patkul* as a Traytor to his Country.

King AUGUSTUS *forced to renounce the Crown of* POLAND.

WHILE this Treaty was secretly negotiating, Prince *Menzikoff* brought thirty thousand Men to join the Army of *Augustus*, who was in the utmost Confusion for fear the *Muscovites* should discover what he was about; but how great was his Perplexity, when he beheld ten thousand *Swedes*, under the Command of General *Meyerfeldt*, approaching him at *Calish*, near the Palatinate of *Posnania?* He would have been glad to have declined the Engagement lest he should irritate a Conqueror, but too much incensed already. In this Extremity he sent one he could trust, to the *Swedish* General, to let him partly into the Secret of the Negotiation, and to desire him to withdraw; but this served only to hasten the Battle, which whether won or lost, was to be alike fatal to him.

VICTORY was now on the Side of the *Russians*; the *Swedes* and their Allies being encompassed on all Sides, were obliged to throw down their Arms and beg for Quarter; but when *Augustus* was entering into *Warsaw* in Triumph, *Pfingster*, one of his Plenipotentiaries, presented him with the fatal Treaty of *Alt-Ranstadt*, before mentioned.

WHEN

WHEN his Czariſh Majeſty heard of this extraordinary Affair, and of *Patkul* his Ambaſſador and General's being impriſoned, it is eaſiy to imagine what Thoughts he entertained of ſuch Conduct. This Treachery of his Ally thwarted all his Deſigns, and obliged him to retire to the Frontiers of his own Dominions, that he might ſecure his Conqueſts in *Ingria*, and *Livonia*. *Narva* was ſtrongly fortify'd, and his People worked inceſſantly at *Peterſburgh*, but he endeavoured, above all, to bring as many Veſſels as poſſible into the Gulph of *Finland*.

THE *Swediſh* Admiral made a new Attempt, with little Damage, on the Fortreſs of *Peterſburgh*, and his Czariſh Majeſty, in Imitation of the Policy of the great *Hannibal*, carry'd the War into their own Country, by beſieging *Wybourg*; but the *Swedes* uſed ſuch Vigilance in ſuccouring the Place, that his Deſign was rendered impracticable; he therefore retired into Winter Quarters, and called about him his moſt experienced Generals, to conſult with them how to prevent the ill Conſequences of what might be expected from what had paſſed in *Saxony*, and while his Army was recruiting, he took Pains to ſecure the Intereſt of thoſe *Polanders*, who had as much Reaſon as himſelf to complain of King *Auguſtus*'s having abandoned them.

IT was at one Time propoſed in the Czar's Council, to retaliate the King of *Sweden*'s Uſage of *Patkul*, whom he had put to Death in a cruel Manner, to treat the *Swediſh* Officers, who were Priſoners at *Moſcow*, in the ſame Way; but the Czar reſolved on a more honourable

nourable Revenge, and having gained the Principal of the *Poles* over to his Intereſt, he was requeſted by them to take the Republick under his Protection, which he agreeing to; it was reſolved to call an Aſſembly at *Leopold*, at which, in the Month of *February* following, a great Number of the principal Grandees of *Poland* were found. In this Aſſembly, it was reſolved to renew the Confederation of *Sendomir*, and the grand Queſtion was, *Whether they had any King or not?* Which paſſing in the Negative, they talked of declaring the Throne vacant, and it was agreed to write to all Foreign Potentates, to deſire them to forbear acknowledging any Perſon for King of *Poland*, till the Republick had notify'd to them what Prince they had elected. In the ſame Aſſembly, the General of the Crown read a Letter from the Czar, wherein he aſſures them, that he will enter into no Treaty of Peace, but in concert with the Republick: And ſoon after came himſelf to *Leopold*, with the *Czarewitz* his Son, then ſeventeen Years of Age, Prince *Menzikoff*, and ſome other Miniſters. His Majeſty was received publickly, with much Ceremony, and the higheſt Marks of Reſpect and Confidence. Well ſatisfy'd with the Aſſurances he had received, in this Meeting, of their inviolable Attachment to his Intereſts, he returned to *Zolkiew*, the Quarters of Prince *Menzikoff*, with that Favourite and the Czarewitz *Alexis*. And as a Report had been ſpread, that his Majeſty had a Deſign to propoſe his Son, in the Diet of *Lublin*, which was ſummoned to meet ſoon after, for King of *Poland*, to prevent any Suſpicions of that kind,

Kind, he ſent the *Czarewitz* to *Moſcow*, and to ſhew his Readineſs to execute the Treaty he had concluded with the Republick, he immediately ordered eight hundred thouſand Florins to be payed to the *Poliſh* Troops: That is to ſay, five hundred thouſand to the Army of the Crown, and the reſt to that of *Lithuania*.

FROM ZOLKIEW the Czar wrote to ſeveral Potentates, complaining of the Cowardice and Treachery, as he called it, of King *Auguſtus*, of the infamous Treaty of *Alt-Ranſtadt*, and of the Violation of the Law of Nations, by the King of *Sweden*.

THE Aſſembly being met at *Lublin*, after many Debates, the Throne of *Poland* was declared vacant, and a Diet called for a third Election. His Czariſh Majeſty hereupon wrote a Letter to the Council to exhort them to Unanimity and Diſpatch, urging the Neceſſity of chooſing a new King, and to let all the World ſee, that they looked upon *Staniſlaus* as Palatine of *Poſnania*, and not their Sovereign. After much canvaſſing the *Interregnum* was publiſhed, and the Primate took upon him the Regency of the Republick: But, in the mean time King *Staniſlaus* was acknowledged by moſt of the Princes and States of *Europe*, and, leaving *Charles* XII. in *Saxony*, he came into *Poland*, with General *Renchild*, at the Head of ſixteen *Swediſh* Regiments, and was owned as their Sovereign through every Place that he paſſed.

THE King of *Sweden* having now largely enriched his Military Cheſt with the Spoils of *Saxony*, and augmented his Army to the Num-

ber of fifty thouſand, beſides the Troops of *Lewenhaupt*, and *Craſſau*, ſought all Ways to bring the Czar to an Engagement; but *Peter*, ſeeing how largely he had increaſed his Forces, although he had before determined to give him Battle, thought it would be dangerous to run that Hazard in a Country without a Head, and divided into Factions; beſides, he was juſt then informed of Propoſitions made to the King of *Sweden* and *Staniſlaus*, by the Miniſter of the *Porte*, who was ſent by the *Sultan* to offer to join them in an offenſive Alliance againſt *Ruſſia*; that they might force his Czariſh Majeſty to interfere no longer in the Affairs of *Poland*. The Divan ſaw with Regret, *Azoph* in the Hands of the Czar, and wanted only a Pretext to break with him. Moreover, *Charles* openly declared, that he intended to make *Ruſſia* the Theatre of the War, and did not doubt but he ſhould find many Revolters among a People become uneaſy by the Alterations, that were made every Day in the Cuſtoms and Manners of their Forefathers. The Czar, upon this Intelligence, thought it would be moſt adviſeable to withdraw, with his Army, to the Frontiers of his own Country, and by this Retreat, *Staniſlaus* was left in peaceable Poſſeſſion of almoſt all *Poland*.

HIS CZARISH Majeſty from thence went to *Moſcow*, where his Preſence was abſolutely neceſſary, as well to give Orders for the Repairs to be made on Account of a dreadful Fire, that had deſtroyed at leaſt fifteen hundred Houſes, as to puniſh in an exemplary Manner, thoſe who were concerned in the late Tumult at *Aſtracan*. He afterwards gave Orders

ders to augment his Troops on the Borders of the *Black Sea*, and on the Frontiers of *Tartary*, that he might deſtroy all the Hopes of the *Turks*, in threatning to declare War againſt him. *Peter* had not been at *Moſcow* for two Years before, and was therefore received with all poſſible Demonſtrations of Joy and Reſpect. He held ſeveral Councils, in which he gave many neceſſary Orders relating to Affairs in the different Provinces, and had the Satisfaction to ſee the laſt Hand put to the *Royal Diſpenſary*, which was a ſuperb Building, and one of the greateſt Ornaments of the City of *Moſcow*. From hence the Drugs and Medicines were furniſhed for the Army and Fleet. Dr. *Areſkine*, a *Scotchman*, chief Phyſician to the Czar, was the firſt Director of the Houſe, with an yearly Penſion of fifteen hundred Ducats. His Czariſh Majeſty likewiſe ſaw with Pleaſure, the Hoſpital for ſick Perſons finiſhed, which was a Structure of Wood on the Banks of the River *Jonſa* in the *German Slabeda:* On one Side of which was a Manufactory of Cloth, which was at firſt put under the Direction of a Draper, who was ſent for, by his Majeſty, from *Holland*; and on the other Side the River *Moſcua*, was a Glaſs Houſe for making large Looking-Glaſſes. Thus did the Czar *Peter* provide for the Honour and Welfare of his Subjects at home, even while he was deeply engaged in Wars and Negotiations abroad.

HIS CZARISH Majeſty had but juſt celebrated the firſt Day of the new Year [1708.] when Advice was brought him from Prince *Menzikoff*, that the King of *Sweden* was in

Motion to re-enter *Lithuania*. *Peter*, whoſe Scheme was always to keep the Enemy as far out of his own Dominions as poſſible, made haſt to *Grodno* to diſpute the Paſſage of the *Niemen* with the *Swedes*, ſince they could not be hindred from paſſing the *Viſtula*, from whence *Charles* XII. with his Army marched with much Speed towards *Lithuania*, in ſpite of all the Obſtacles he met in his Way. The Czar was in *Grodno*, when the King of *Sweden*, with about ſix hundred Men, approached the Town. The *Ruſſians*, taking this Handful of Men to be the Vanguard of the *Swediſh* Army, marched out at the North Gate, while *Charles* entered at the South; but the Czar, ſoon underſtanding to how ſmall a Number he had quitted the Town, ſent a Detachment of two thouſand Men to ſurprize the King; but they were forced to retire, and the moſt favourable Opportunity, that they had ever had of making their own Conditions with the Enemy, was loſt.

The Czar goes to GRODNO.

THE CZAR gave Orders to the ſeveral Bodies of his Troops to rendezvous in the Palatinate of *Minſki*, but ſeeing he had neither Magazines, nor a ſafe Retreat there, he thought proper to draw off his Forces towards the *Dnieper*, where he might wait for the Enemy behind good Lines, and attack him with Advantage, after he was fatigued with a long March over a deſolate Country. The King of *Sweden* inform'd of the Rout the *Ruſſian* Army had taken, reſolv'd to intercept it in its March; but the good Management of the Czar obliged him to change his Purpoſe, and confined him for

ſome

ſome Time in the Palatinate of *Wilna*: During which Time his Czariſh Majeſty ſent General *Baur* to lay the *Poliſh Livonia* waſte, from whence he went into *Swediſh Livonia*, where he ravaged and pillaged every Place, formed a large Magazine, and poſted his Men along the *Duna*, of which he remain'd Maſter, notwithſtanding the Neighbourhood of *Leuwenhaupt*. General *Goltz* had Orders to go with fifteen thouſand Men to *Volhinia* to join twelve thouſand *Coſſacks*, that they might take the *Swedes* in Flank in their Motions, which Meaſures and others were attended with ſuch good Succeſs, that the *Swedes* were obliged to canton their Army, and encamp till the Month of *May* for want of Forage and other Neceſſaries; beſides which, altho' no Battle was fought, their Numbers were very much diminiſhed; whilſt the Czar, with his greatly augmented, croſſed the *Dnieper*. His Majeſty ſoon after intending to go to *Peterſburg* to haſten the Equipment of his Fleet, which was deſigned to be very conſiderable, but falling ill at the Inſtant he was ſetting out, he was carried to *Smolenſko*, leaving the Care of his Army to the Generals *Czeremetoff*, *Menzikoff*, *Galliczin*, *Allard*, *Repnin*, and *Pflug*, who were at *Mohilow*.

SINCE the Poſſeſſion of *Narva*, and his Building *Peterſburgh*, his Czariſh Majeſty had raiſed his Marine to that Power, that his Fleet at this Time made a Deſcent in *Finland*, without the *Swediſh* Admiral daring to enter upon Action with her, and a great Number of Barks laden with Proviſions for *Stockholm* were taken and carried to *Peterſburgh*. During his

Czariſh Majeſty's Illneſs, was fought the Battle of *Holowzin*, which was ſaid to be the moſt glorious Action *Charles* XII. had been engaged in, and that wherein he ſhewed the greateſt Skill, and was expoſed to the moſt Danger. He forced the *Ruſſians* to repaſs the *Dnieper*, and ſtaid himſelf ſome Time about *Mobilow*, as well to refreſh his Army, as to conſult what Meaſures were to be taken in an Enemy's Country, unknown to him, into which he was juſt upon entering, with a Deſign to purſue the *Muſcovites*, even to their Capital; but the Czar being recovered, arrived in his Army two Days after this Action, and quitted it no more till he had intirely defeated the King of *Sweden*, who now finding his Army much weakened, ſent Orders to General *Leuwenhaupt* in *Courland*, to come and join him with all the Troops he could get together, which not coming up ſo ſoon as he expected, and being weary of the Place where he was, every Thing being extreamly ſcarce, he reſolv'd to paſs the *Dnieper*, and, it may be ſaid, ran headlong upon his own Ruin. It was here the Czar waited for him, not ill pleaſed to find his Enemy on that Side the River, in a Country where he was neither to hope for Succours, nor a ſafe Retreat. Soon after this, happened the Rencounter of *Czarnanapata*, in which the King of *Sweden* loſt a great Number of Men, and Prince *Galliczin* behaved ſo well, that his Czariſh Majeſty honoured him with the Honour of St. *Andrew*. A few Days after, the *Coſſacks* and *Ruſſian Calmucks*, ſupported by ſeven thouſand Dragoons, fell upon the Baggage of the Left Wing of the

Swedes

Swedes; two *Aides de Camp* were killed fighting near the King's Perſon, and he himſelf had a Horſe ſhot under him; and while one of his Equeries was preſenting him with another, both the Equery and Horſe were ſhot upon the Spot. Notwithſtanding theſe and many other Difficulties, *Charles* XII. advanced almoſt as far as *Smolenſko*, lying in the great Road to *Moſcow*; but not finding ſo many Adherents, and ſo much Proviſion as in *Poland*, he ſaw it was impracticable to march directly to the Capital of the Czar's Dominions, as it may be ſuppoſed he thought no great Difficulty, when he made this haughty Anſwer to a *Poliſh* Gentleman, by whom the Czar had ſent ſome Overtures of Peace; *That he would treat with his Brother* Peter *at* Moſcow. Diſappointed in this Hope, he turned on a ſudden, towards the *Ukraine*, thinking he ſhould be able to ſupport his Troops by the Aſſiſtance of *Mazeppa*, Hettman of the *Coſſacks*, who had entered into a private Treaty with him, and deſign'd to revolt from the Czar, who not knowing of this, but being informed, that the King of *Sweden* had left a Body of his Forces under the Command of General *Craſſau* with *Staniſlaus* in *Poland*, to reduce the whole Kingdom to his Obedience; and had ordered, as is before ſaid, *Leuwenhaupt* to leave *Livonia* and *Courland*, and join his own Army, his Czariſh Majeſty thought it abſolutely neceſſary to prevent this Conjunction, if poſſible; therefore when *Leuwenhaupt* had paſſed the *Dnieper*, he went with Prince *Menzikoff* and General *Goltz* to meet him, and came to an Action with him, on

the 7th of *October*, in which fifteen hundred *Ruſſians* were killed, and very few *Swedes*. The latter, in all Appearance, would have gained a complete Victory, had it not been for the Preſence of the Czar, who, when he ſaw his Troops begin to fall back, ran to the *Coſſacks* and *Calmucks*, poſted in the Rear of the Army, and ordered them to fire on all thoſe who ſhould offer to run away, and not to ſpare even his own Perſon, if he ſhould be ſo cowardly: By this Means he ſtopt his Army, which was already in great Confuſion, and General *Leuwenhaupt*, ſeeing the *Ruſſians* began to rally, thought fit to continue his March to join the King according to his Orders; but this the Czar was to prevent, if poſſible, which occaſioned the noted Battle of *Lezno*, wherein his Czariſh Majeſty ſhewed great Courage and Conduct, appearing in the Places of greateſt Danger, and animating his Men by his Preſence, and the Example of his own Bravery; ſo that he put *Leuwenhaupt* to flight, and the King of *Sweden* had nothing left but to join the Traitor *Mazeppa*, who was ready to deliver up *Batturin*, his Capital, to him, if his Soldiers would have come into his Deſign; but they proteſting againſt it, he was glad to throw himſelf into the *Swediſh* Camp, with about two thouſand Men, that remained faithful to him, and *Batturin* was afterwards, by the Czar's Order, burnt to the Ground, in Reſentment of the Hettman's Treachery, who was alſo hung up in Effigy: Which done, the principal Men among the *Coſſacks* made choice of a new General or Hettman, which fell upon *John Skoropatſky*, and he, immediately

The Battle of LEZNO.

ately after, accompanied by a great Number of Officers, went and proſtrated himſelf at the Feet of his Czariſh Majeſty, who confirmed the Election.

CHARLES XII. was now at a Diſtance from all Places, from whence he could expect Relief, except from *Staniſlaus* in *Poland*; but that Prince found too much Employment there, and knew too well the Hazard it would be to attempt to march into the *Ukraine*, to give him any Aſſiſtance, when the *Muſcovites* could ſo eaſily ſtop his Paſſage. Every thing conſpired to ruin the King of *Sweden*'s Army. The Winter of this Year [1709,] was ſo very ſharp, that above two thouſand of the *Swediſh* Soldiers periſhed merely by the Extremity of the Weather; notwithſtanding which Abatement of *Charles*'s Strength, the Czar, by his Miniſter for Foreign Affairs, Count *Golowin*, made ſome Propoſitions to Count *Piper*, for an Accommodation on very eaſy Terms; but *Charles* abſolutely refuſed to treat, renewing his Intentions of penetrating as far as *Moſcow*, and went with this View, at the latter End of *May*, and lay'd Siege to *Pultowa*, being in great Hopes of ſupplying the Wants of his Army by the Conqueſt of that Place; where the Czar had lay'd up great Quantities of Proviſions; but neither the Valour of the *Swedes*, nor the Intelligence that the Traitor *Mazeppa* had in the Town, could give him Succeſs; or prevent Prince *Menzikoff* from throwing Succours into the Place. *Charles*'s Reſolution increaſed with the Difficulties of the Undertaking, he preſſed the Siege warmly, and had already taken the Courtine, when he received

King of SWEDEN *beſieges* PULTOWA.

a

a Wound in his Heel, and was, immediately after, told that the Czar was coming up with an Army, at leaſt double the Number of his, conſiſting of freſh Troops well cloathed and fed, and now thoroughly experienced in the Art of War. The King of *Sweden*'s Wound prevented his acting with the ſame Vigour as uſual, he found himſelf incloſed between the *Boriſthenes* and the River of *Pultowa*, hemmed in by a large Army, and under a Neceſſity of making his Way through the Enemy, or periſhing by Hunger. In this Extremity he reſolv'd on Battle. Accordingly on the 27th of *June* 1709, very early in the Morning, the Action between the two Armies began. About twenty-five thouſand *Swedes* came out of their Trenches, and marched directly againſt the Czar's Army, which was then forming its Camp. The Generals, who had moſt of them been at the Battle of *Narva*, put their Subalterns and Soldiers in Mind of that Day, when eight thouſand *Swedes* had overcome a hundred thouſand *Muſcovites* in their Intrenchments. The King, on account of his Wound, was obliged to be carried in a Litter at the Head of his Foot, while the *Sweuiſh* Horſe, with their wonted Fury, fell upon the Enemy's Squadrons, forcing the *Muſcovites* to fall back in ſome Diſorder. The Czar himſelf running to rally them, had his Hat ſhot through, and Prince *Menzikoff* had no leſs than three Horſes killed under him: Whereupon *Charles* made no doubt but he ſhould gain the Battle.

The Battle of PULTOWA.

The Czar's Hat ſhot through.

WHEN the *Ruſſian* Foot were come out of their Lines, and a Diſpoſition was made for

a general Engagement, *Peter* was in the Centre of his Army; he had yet no higher Title than Major-General and ſerved under General *Czeremetoff*; but on this Occaſion, he went on a fine *Turkiſh* Horſe, from Rank to Rank among his Men, as their Sovereign to encourage, and promiſe them Rewards. *Charles*, on his Side, put his Army in the beſt Diſpoſition he could, and endeavoured to ſit his Horſe; but finding himſelf unable, he got into his Litter again. The Battle was renewed about Nine of the Clock, and almoſt at the Beginning of it the King of *Sweden*'s Litter was ſhatter'd to Pieces with a Cannon Ball, and he himſelf overturn'd. When the *Swedes* ſaw their King fall, they immediately gave Way, and all were put to the Sword. *Charles*, if he had been able, would have rallied ſome of his Regiments, but they were too cloſely purſued by the *Ruſſians*. The Generals *Renchild*, *Hamilton*, *Stakelberg*, and the Prince of *Wirtemberg* were taken Priſoners, as were afterwards Count *Piper*, and moſt of the Officers of the Chancery, who had quitted the Camp, and wander'd about not knowing what was become of their King.

When Peter was told, that the King of *Sweden*'s Litter was found all broke to Pieces in the Field of Battle, he expreſſed an extraordinary Concern for the Fate of that Prince, who he thought was ſlain, and whoſe Bravery he always admired. *Charles*, tho' no Way able to defend himſelf, was yet unwilling to fly, till perſuaded by his Chancellor, *Mullern*, to croſs the *Dnieper*, and go into *Turky*, that he might eſcape falling into the Hands

Hands of the Enemy, and where, perhaps, he might get Aſſiſtance to renew the War. But before the King of *Sweden* could liſten to this Advice, he was willing, for the firſt Time, to try what might be effected by Negotiation; and therefore, in the Interim between his own Defeat, and the Surrender of the remaining Part of his Forces at *Perewoloczna*, whither Prince *Menzikoff* was poſted after them, he ſent to let his Czariſh Majeſty know, he would accept of the Peace he had ſeveral Times offer'd him, and if that was denied, deſired to go freely out of his Country, and retire to *Poland*. The Czar anſwer'd, that the King of *Sweden* had thought too late of coming into the propoſed Treaty, the Face of Affairs being greatly altered: And that, as he had penetrated into his Country, without conſidering the Conſequences, it was his Buſineſs at preſent to think which Way he ſhould get out of it.

CHARLES XII. finding, that his pretended Moderation had no Effect upon the Czar, prepared to follow the Advice of his Chancellor, and made the beſt of his Way into *Turky*; but coming to the *Bog*, there not being a ſufficient Number of Boats to carry all his People over, about five hundred Men were left on this Side the River, who were ſoon after taken Priſoners by General *Walkowiſki*, even in ſight of the King of *Sweden*, juſt landed on the other Side. The Czar had ſent this General in purſuit of the *Swedes*, and, having now learned what was become of the King, did not much doubt of his being brought Priſoner to him with the reſt; for he ſaid to

ſome

ſome of the *Swediſh* Generals, his Priſoners, that *he wanted his Brother* Charles *to keep them Company*; *but he had ſent* Walkowiſki *to fetch him.*

THE CZAR, being ſoon after informed, by Prince *Menzikoff*, of the Succeſs he had at *Perewoloczna*, where *Leuwenhaupt* and the reſt of the *Swediſh* Generals had yielded to him without ſtriking a Blow, went himſelf to that Place, where the unhappy Fate of ſo many brave Men very ſenſibly touched him, and he more than once expreſſed his Diſapprobation of the Conduct of a Prince who could ſacrifice, in ſuch a Manner, to his Ambition, ſo many faithful Subjects, of whom he ought to have been the Father and Protector. The greateſt Part of the *Swediſh* Priſoners were diſperſed in the Czar's Dominions, and great Numbers ſent to *Siberia*, which Country, a wild and barren Place before, received great Improvement from their inhabiting there, and ſetting up divers Trades and Manufactures for their Support. The Priſoners were treated with great Civility by his Czariſh Majeſty, who treated ſome of them at his own Table, with that Affability which was ſo natural to him, where he drank a Health *to his Maſters in the Art of War*. *Renchild* aſking who thoſe were that his Majeſty was pleaſed to honour with ſo great a Title? "It is you yourſelves, "Gentlemen, the *Swediſh* Generals," replied the Czar. "Then, ſaid *Renchild*, is not your "Majeſty a little ungrateful to treat your "Maſters ſo ſeverely?" Upon this his Majeſty ordered all their Swords to be returned to them, and to *Renchild* he gave one from his own

own Side, as a Token of the Eſteem he had for him for his Fidelity to his Maſter. *Peter* likewiſe ſhewed a great Regard for Count *Piper*, and that none of the Priſoners of Diſtinction might want any Thing, he divided them among his Generals: And after taking this Care of his Enemies, next thought how he ſhould reward the Valour and good Conduct of his own Officers, on which Account he made ſeveral very conſiderable Promotions, among which he did not forget himſelf, and as he had taken a *Swediſh* General Priſoner in the Heat of the Engagement, and had had a Ball ſhot through his Hat, he was made a Lieutenant General.

WHILE his Czariſh Majeſty was at *Perewoloczna*, the Rebel *Coſſacks* came to him to make their Submiſſion, and he was pleaſed to pardon them on Condition that they laid down their Arms: At the ſame time he promiſed a Reward of ten thouſand Roubles to whoever ſhould bring in *Mezeppa* dead or alive. It is eaſy to imagine how the News of this important Victory was received at *Moſcow*, in which Capital, in Hopes of ſoon ſeeing their Monarch, the Defender and Preſerver of the Liberty of the North, thirty Triumphal Arches were erected in the Streets, through which it was ſuppoſed he would paſs; but Affairs of greater Importance called him elſewhere.

The End of the Fifth BOOK.

THE

THE HISTORY OF *RUSSIA*,

To the End of the Reign of the

Empreſs CATHARINE.

BOOK VI.

The CONTENTS.

The Continuation and Concluſion of the Reign of the Emperor PETER.

AFTER ſo great Succeſs as the Czar had in the Battle of *Pultowa*, any other Prince would have inſiſted on high Terms of Accommodation with his vanquiſh'd Foe: But PETER *the Great*, who was deſirous to cultivate the Arts of Peace, for the Proſperity and Happineſs of his People, ſent very moderate Propoſals for a Treaty, which the King of *Sweden*, diſtreſſed as he was, but ſtill re-

retaining his obſtinate Temper, would give no Ear to; therefore the Czar finding that no Peace could be made but by the Force of Arms, took proper Meaſures to continue the War, and thought it would be moſt effectual to carry it into the Enemy's own Dominions. He gave freſh Orders to his Miniſters reſiding ot the Courts of *Denmark* and *Saxony*, to uſe their utmoſt Endeavours to bring the Negotiations to a Concluſion for an Alliance againſt *Charles* XII. and knowing his own Preſence would be neceſſary in *Poland*, he croſſed the *Boriſthenes*, but was taken ill at *Kiow*, where he was obliged to ſtop for ſome Time.

THE Victory at *Pultowa* was ſo compleat, and put the King of *Sweden*'s Affairs into ſuch Diſorder, that *Auguſtus*'s Friends in *Poland*, and ſome of thoſe who had retired out of the Kingdom, took freſh Courage, and ſent a Deputation to him, to invite him to re-aſcend the Throne; whereupon he enter'd *Poland*, but before he did ſo, he publiſh'd a Manifeſto to juſtify his own Conduct, particularly with relation to the famous Treaty of *Alt-Ranſtadt* and what followed upon it, which ſo much amazed all *Europe*, and which ſo highly incenſed the Czar, but who, by this Time, was ſo well ſatisfy'd of the Neceſſity of his Affairs, which drove him to accept of any Terms for the Preſervation of his People, that he was now reconciled to him: And immediately after his Recovery ſet out for *Lublin*, where he publiſhed a Declaration, ſummoning all thoſe of the adverſe Party to come in and unite themſelves with the Republick

publick of *Poland*, and their lawful King. He went afterwards and had an Interview with King *Auguſtus* at *Thorn*. The King complimented his Czariſh Majeſty on the glorious Victory he had gained, and the Czar made his Compliments to the King on his Return, without any Reproaches on the Affair of *Alt-Ranſtadt*, or any other: For theſe *Auguſtus* had prevented by the Manner in which he had treated the Czar's Plenipotentiaries at *Dreſden*, and by the Reaſons which he had alledged for all he had done in his Manifeſto. The *Saxon* Miniſters afterwards made their Compliments of Congratulation; and aſſured his Czariſh Majeſty, that they had always made their Vows to Heaven for the Succeſs of his Arms; but ſaid they had not dared to hope it would have been ſo complete. To which he anſwered, with as much Grandeur as Piety, *Your Vows, Gentlemen, were proportioned to the Weakneſs of Men; but God has given me a Victory which ſhews his own Omnipotence.*

WHILST the Czar was at *Thorn*, the Grandees of *Poland* ſent a Deputation likewiſe, to congratulate him in the Name of the Republick, on the total Defeat of his Enemy. From *Thorn* his Majeſty went to *Marienwerder*, to meet the King of *Pruſſia*, who received him at his Landing, giving him the upper Hand, and expreſſing all imaginable Reſpect. Theſe two Monarchs had ſeveral Conferences together, and afterwards held a Council with their chief Miniſters, in which was confirmed the Alliance before projected between them and the King of *Denmark*, and King *Auguſtus*. Here alſo was concluded a Treaty of Marriage

between the Czar's Niece, and the King of *Prussia*'s Nephew, the Duke of *Courland*, by which his Duchy was restored to him.

FROM MARIENWERDER the Czar went to *Mittaw* to join his Generals, and regulate the Operations of the War. On the 21st of *November* he went to his Army, and on the 25th came before *Riga*, where every Thing was ready for bombarding it, and *Peter* himself set Fire to the first Bomb. His Czarish Majesty continued not long in this Place, where no Honour was to be acquired; but hastened to *Moscow*, in which City his Subjects impatiently expected him, and to which an infinite Number of Foreigners were come to grace the Triumph of this great Monarch. He went thro' *Livonia* to *Dorpt*, and from thence to *Petersburgh*, where he gave Orders for fitting out of such Ships as were to serve in the ensuing Campaign, and at the same Time for forming such Magazines at *Narva*, as he judged necessary to carry on his grand Design in the Siege of *Riga*. He also made very considerable Remittances to the King of *Denmark*, to enable him to push on the War vigorously on that Side against *Sweden*.

ON the 21st of *December*, the Czar made his Triumphant Entry into *Moscow*, and, after the Manner of the ancient *Roman* Triumphs, had all the Prisoners taken in Battle led through the City in Procession, with the Cannon, Colours, and the Litter used by the King of *Sweden*, his Enemy. On the first Day of the new Year his Czarish Majesty treated all the chief Persons of Quality and Foreign Ministers at a very grand Entertain-

ment: And at the ſame Time had the Pleaſure to make publick the Satisfaction which the Queen of *Great-Britain* had made him for the Affront offer'd to his Ambaſſador at *London*, in the Year 1708, who was arreſted by ſome Tradeſmen there, and carried to a common Spunging-Houſe.

THE Reparation which his Czariſh Majeſty at firſt expected, for this Diſgrace done to him, in the Perſon of his Ambaſſador, being ſuch, as by the Conſtitution of *England*, the Queen could not give him, had like to have broke off all good Underſtanding between the two Courts; but at length this troubleſome Affair was ſettled, and Mr. *Whitworth*, the Queen of *Great-Britain*'s Miniſter, was inveſted with the Character of her Ambaſſador Extraordinary, to deliver her Letter in a publick Manner to his Czariſh Majeſty, to make her Excuſe for the Affront he received, and ſo the Buſineſs was ended to the Satisfaction of both Crowns.

SOON after his Czariſh Majeſty's Arrival in his Capital, was celebrated the Nuptials of his Niece *Anne Joanowna*, the fourth Daughter of his elder Brother the Czar *John*, with the Duke of *Courland*, by whom ſhe was left a Widow in a few Days after her Marriage, which Lady afterwards came to be Empreſs of *Ruſſia*. The Czar, about the ſame Time that this Solemnity was performed, received the agreeable News of the taking of *Elbing*, a conſiderable Town in *Poliſh Pruſſia*, and in the Month of *February* following, departed from *Moſcow*, in order to go into *Poland* by Way of *Peterſburgh* and *Livonia*, and deſign-

ed to ſend the Czarewitz, who had been ſome Time in *Poland*, to viſit ſeveral Courts of *Europe* before his Marriage with the Princeſs of *Wolfembuttel* which was then in Treaty: But before his Czariſh Majeſty went into *Poland*, he undertook a very bold and difficult Enterprize, which was to penetrate into the Great Duchy of *Finland*, and lay Siege to *Wybourg*; accordingly Admiral *Apraxin* was ſent before the Place in the Month of *April*, and attacked the Suburbs, which the Beſieged abandoned after having ſet Fire to two of their Magazines; the *Ruſſians* taking Poſſeſſion of the Place quitted by the *Swedes*, extinguiſhed the Flames, and ſeized on three Ships that were in the Porte. His Czariſh Majeſty came before the Town with Part of his Fleet, which brought Proviſions, Ammunition, and Artillery: A Squadron of thirteen Men of War, preſented itſelf to oppoſe their Landing, but dared not undertake any Thing. The Siege was puſhed on with Vigour, which nevertheleſs continued till *June*, when the Gariſon deſired to capitulate, as did the Town of *Riga* on the 29th of the ſame Month. His Czariſh Majeſty received this News with much Joy, and immediately gave Orders to complete the Conqueſt, by adding to it that of *Dunamudenſkantz*, ſituated at the Mouth of the *Duna*. It held out a Fortnight, and was then forced to ſurrender, the Plague deſtroying as many or more Men than the *Muſcovite* Bombs and Bullets. His Majeſty likewiſe ordered, at the ſame Time, the Sieges of *Pernau*, of *Revel*, and of *Kexolm*; theſe were of no long Continuance, and gave but little Trouble,

Wybourg beſieged.

ble, the Scourge of Heaven aſſiſting the Sword of the Czar, who having now reduced the whole Province of *Livonia* to his Obedience, began to regulate the Affairs of it, and took all neceſſary Precautions to ſecure his Conqueſts, and gain the Affections of the People, to whom he promiſed not only the Continuation of their Privileges, but likewiſe to diſcharge them from ſeveral heavy Burthens they groaned under, during the Government of the *Swedes*. He encouraged Trade and Navigation there, and invited Strangers from all Parts to repeople the Country, deſolated by the Plague and the War, nothing being neglected to render the Government of the *Ruſſians* acceptable both to Natives and Foreigners.

PETER being now Maſter of the Province of *Livonia*, it ſeemed very probable that his Forces united to thoſe of *Auguſtus*, would likewiſe ſhortly have reduced to his Obedience *Pomerania*, and the other *Swediſh* Dominions in *Germany*, if the Allies in Confederacy with *France* and *Spain* had not interpoſed, and joined in an Act of *Neutrality*, which was Signed by their Miniſters at the *Hague*, *March* the 31ſt, 1710. This Scheme of *Neutrality*, tho' calculated more for the Advantage of the King of *Sweden* than any other, was rejected by that Prince, who, to the Surprize of every Body, wrote to the Powers concerned therein, in very paſſionate Terms, reproaching them with intending to tie up his Hands, and hinder him from acting againſt the Enemy. The Czar, who was willing to come into this Act of *Neutrality*, on Condition that the *Swediſh*

Troops in *Pomerania*, ſhould return no more into *Poland*, thinking himſelf no longer bound, ſince this Refuſal of *Charles* XII. to accept it, after ſome previous Declarations, cauſed his Army to march into *Germany* to begin the Operations of the War againſt the *Swediſh* Provinces there.

CHARLES, in the mean Time, had been well received in *Turky*, which gave him Hopes of being aſſiſted with a powerful Army to make freſh Head againſt his Rival in Glory, and he was the more aſſured of this, ſince the Grand Vizier had told the *Swediſh* General Count *Poniatowſki*, that he would take the King of *Sweden* in one Hand, and his Sword in the other, and lead him to *Moſcow*, at the Head of two hundred thouſand Men. But Count *Tolſtoy* the Czar's Envoy, managed Matters ſo well at the Sublime Porte, that the Talk of this War ſoon ceaſed, and greater Honours were paid to him than any *Ruſſian* Miniſter had ever received at *Conſtantinople* before: Notwithſtanding which, the Grand Vizier, who had thus gone off from the King of *Sweden* to his Enemy, being depoſed, the next who ſucceeded him, during a very ſhort Adminiſtration, had made ſuch an Alteration in Affairs, that he determined the Grand Seignior to allow the King of *Sweden* a conſiderable Body of Men to reconduct him into *Poland*: M. *Tolſtoy* endeavoured to oppoſe this by the ſharpeſt Remonſtrances, and ſending Advice of it to the Czar, his Majeſty wrote a Letter to the Grand Seignior dated from *Peterſburgh*, the 27th of *July*, 1710, complaining of this Violation of the thirty Years Treaty of Peace concluded

concluded between him, and the late Sultan *Muſtapha* his Brother, by lending ſuch Aſſiſtance to his Enemy to bring him again into *Poland*, when he might freely paſs by divers other Routes, with Safety into his own Dominions: But this Letter made no Alteration in the Reſolutions taken at the Porte, which, ſoon after, by the Influence of the new Grand Vizier, and the Cham of *Tartary*, declared War with his Czariſh Majeſty: And in the Month of *March*, 1711, the Grand Vizier, having made the neceſſary Diſpoſitions for the Campaign, went out of *Conſtantinople* to put himſelf at the Head of the *Ottoman* Army, which was aſſembled at *Adrianople*, from whence he cauſed them to decamp and take the Route of the *Danube*. The Czar's Miniſter being impriſoned, and his Couriers ſtopt on the Frontiers of *Turky*, he could not be informed of what was done at *Conſtantinople*; but learnt ſo much by other Hands, as to be able to give Orders to be in the Field before the *Turks*. He likewiſe prepared for the Defence of *Azoph*, whither he ſent Vice-Admiral *Vander-Cruys*, with three hundred good Sea Officers, and leaving to Prince *Menzikoff* the Command of his Forces by Sea and Land in *Livonia*, *Ingria*, and *Finland*, he ſet out himſelf from *Peterſburgh* to *Moſcow*, that he might the more readily attend his new Levies, and diſpatch a numerous Army into the *Ukraine*. The Generals *Repnin*, *Allard*, and *Galliczin*, conducted in three Columns, croſs *Poland*, the beſt Part of the *Ruſſian* Troops that were in *Samogitia*, and *Lithuania*, which were ſoon increaſed to an hundred thouſand Men. The

The TURKS *declare War with the Czar.*

The CZAR *prepares for War.*

Velt Mareſchal *Czeremetoff*, who was already on the Frontiers at the Head of his Army, received thirty thouſand Men of the new Levies, the Prince *Rowmanowdowſki* had Orders to advance with the Militia againſt the *Tartars*, and beſides theſe his Majeſty had made a Treaty with *Apaka Taquin*, Prince of the *Calmuck Tartars*, who ſent him twenty five thouſand Men, for which the Czar paid him an hundred thouſand Ducats in Specie. Thus, without reckoning the Troops that remained under the Command of Prince *Menzikoff*, or the *Coſſacks*, his Czariſh Majeſty had got together an Army of an hundred and fifty thouſand Men, all regular Troops, to go againſt the *Turks*; and *Apaka Taquin* taking hold of this favourable Opportunity to fall upon the *Precopian Tartars* his Enemies, brought fifty thouſand *Calmuck Tartars* into the Field, and employed twenty two thouſand *Circaſſians* againſt the *Dorzowſki* and *Norowſki Tartars*, who are on the Borders, and occupy the Ramparts of *Crimea*. His Czariſh Majeſty now publiſhed a long Manifeſto, ſetting forth the Reaſons of his entering into a War with that perfidious Breaker of Peace, as he called him, *Achmet* Sultan of the *Turks*; but before this Declaration was made publick, the *Tartars* had began Hoſtilities; and the Cham's Son and the King of *Sweden*, both publiſhed long Manifeſto's. The Cham was at the Head of an hundred and fifty thouſand Men, his Son commanded fifty thouſand, and the Palatine *Potocky* followed them at the Head of ten thouſand more, got together from all Nations. The *Tartars*, who were Neighbours to the *Donſki*

Donſki Coſſacks, and had engaged them to revolt, began their Hoſtilities on the Side of *Azoph*, but their Campaign laſted not long; for having advanced as far as *Izium*, and pillaged the Country about it, and defeated four or five thouſand *Ruſſians*, they marched off with the Booty.

THE Irruption of the *Cham* into the *Ukraine*, was attended by worſe Conſequence; he beat ſeveral Parties of the *Ruſſians*, and ſeized on ſeveral ſmall Places, then penetrating as far as *Samara*, burnt under the Fortifications of that Town, one hundred and fifty Veſſels, deſigned to tranſport the Troops and Artillery; but the Snow that fell at that Time obliged him to retire, and towards the End of the Month of *March* he arrived at *Precop*, with much Spoil, and near twelve thouſand Slaves.

POTOCKY, the *Coſſacks* of *Orlick*, and the Cham's eldeſt Son, whoſe Title is Sultan *Galga*, advanced along the *Boryſthenes*, and not finding any Reſiſtance, the *Ruſſian* Troops being on the Banks of the *Neiſter*, and near *Moldavia*, they penetrated as far as *Niemirow*, raiſing Contributions in the Country, and then retired to the Side of *Bialocerkiew*, to which Fortreſs *Potocky* and his *Tartar* gave three Aſſaults, and loſt many Men before they could maſter the Town; but the Citadel held out till the Arrival of Prince *Galliczin*, who put theſe Maroders to Flight, and obliged *Potocky* to return to *Turky*. The *Turks*, on their Part, under the Adminiſtration of a new Grand Vizier, ignorant in the Art of War, were ſo ſlow in their Preparations, that

it

it was the latter End of *April* before their Troops were aſſembled near *Adrianople*, the Grand Seignior himſelf being in great Incertitude whether he would command his Army himſelf, or truſt it to the Care of the Vizier.

His Czariſh Majeſty, hearing of the great Equipment of the *Turks* upon the *Black-Sea*, made extraordinary Preparations on that Side, fitting out twenty Ships of the Line of Battle, at the Head of which was that of the Admiral, carrying eighty ſix Guns, with ſeveral Gallies and other Veſſels to a great Number, in which twenty three thouſand Men were embarked; but the Waters of the *Don* were ſo low, that the large Veſſels became uſeleſs, and the Succeſs of the Campaign affording as little Occaſion for the *Turkiſh* Fleet, there was nothing done on this Side.

During all theſe Preparations on both Sides, the Queen of *Great-Britain*, and the *States-General* of the *United-Provinces*, offer'd their Advice to the King of *Sweden* to make Peace; but he was reſolv'd to hear nothing of it, notwithſtanding the ill Poſture of his Affairs, not doubting but that, by the Aſſiſtance of the *Turk*, he ſhould again triumph over his Enemies. Peter, on the other Hand, ſeeing a Part of his Troops got over the *Neiſter*, into his Enemy's Country, and nobody yet to oppoſe them, could not help flattering himſelf with Hopes, that Heaven had deſtinated the Honour to him of overthrowing the formidable Empire of the *Ottomans*, and to exalt the *Croſs* in thoſe Places where the *Creſſent* had ſo long triumph'd:

But

But herein his Czariſh Majeſty was too ſanguine, and took a fatal Step, that had like to have been the Ruin of himſelf and his Country; for relying upon the Supplies promiſed him by *Brancovan*, Hoſpodar of *Walachia*, who deceived him, he ſuffer'd himſelf to be ſhut up by the *Turkiſh* Army on the Side of the River *Pruth*, in a Poſt ſo diſadvantageous, that he muſt have been inevitably loſt, had it not been for the Management and Affection of the Czarina *Catharine*, at this critical Juncture, of which we ſhall give an Account in the next Volume.

HAVING made Peace with the *Turks*, and received ſome Waggons with Proviſions from the Grand Vizier, his Czariſh Majeſty prepared to leave the *Turkiſh* Dominions, and returned to his own Country. It is reckoned that this Expedition coſt the Czar about twenty thouſand Men, beſides ſome Millions in Money and Jewels, paid for a Peace which the *Porte* did not maintain long; tho' when the Grand Seignior heard the firſt News of it, he order'd Rejoicings to be made for three Days; but the King of *Sweden* ſoon after inſpired him with ſuch Sentiments, that he twice broke it, and concluded it again with the ſame Eaſe.

WHILST the Czar ſtruggled with Fortune on the Borders of the *Pruth*, his Allies ſuffer'd not the *Swedes* to enjoy much Repoſe, but enter'd into *Pomerania*, and formed the Blockade of *Stralſund*. The Czar himſelf went firſt to *Warſow*, from thence to *Elbing*, and ſome other Places before he came to *Targau*, where, the Day after his Arrival, was celebrated the Marriage between the Czarewitz *Alexis*, then

in

in the 22d Year of his Age, and the Princeſs *Charlotta-Chriſtiana-Sophia* of *Wolfembuttel*, Daughter of the Duke of *Brunſwick-Wolfembuttel*, a beautiful young Lady in her 18th Year. After this Ceremony was perform'd, his Czariſh Majeſty went to *Croſſen* in *Sileſia*, where the Prince Royal of *Pruſſia* entertain'd him for three Days; and then, by the Way of *Riga* and *Revel*, came to *Peterſburgh*.

As the Province of *Livonia*, which his Czariſh Majeſty was now in quiet Poſſeſſion of, had formerly been looked upon as one of the Fiefs of the Empire, he offered to accept of the Inveſtiture of it from the Emperor *Charles* VI. provided he might be admitted into the Number of the Princes of the Empire, and, on that Condition, and his being allowed to have a Miniſter at the General Diet, he propoſed to furniſh his Imperial Majeſty with a Succour of twenty five thouſand Men againſt *France*; but this was refuſed, on plauſible Pretexts, the true Reaſon being the Jealouſy of the Princes of the Empire to ſee ſo powerful a Prince admitted into their College.

TEN thouſand Men of his Czariſh Majeſty's Troops kept *Stetin* block'd up; the reſt joined with thoſe of King *Auguſtus*, were before *Stralſund*, which was alſo in ſome Manner block'd up by Land. The Czar, Czarina and Czarewitz, being all come into *Pomerania*, the Czar had ſeveral Conferences with the King of *Poland*, and theſe two Monarchs went together to reconnoitre *Stralſund*, and the Iſland of *Rugen*, which they agreed to attack, but the Attempt proved unſucceſsful, and the Czar in the

the mean Time having left the Command of his Troops to King *Auguſtus*, went to *Berlin*, where he had ſome Conferences with the King of *Pruſſia*, and afterwards went to *Carelſbad* to drink the Waters. Count *Steinbock*, the *Swediſh* General, in his Abſence, made a Sally out of *Stralſund*, leaving the Defence of it to the Burghers, and a choſen Gariſon, and gave it out, that he was going to force the Enemy's Lines; but inſtead of hazarding ſo raſh an Enterprize, he took all on a ſudden the Route of *Mecklenbourg*, took Poſſeſſion of *Roſtock*, and put the whole Duchy under Contribution. King *Auguſtus* aſſembled his Troops, and the *Ruſſians*, who were diſperſed along the Lines, and marched toward *Guſtrow*, which he ſurprized and poſted his Troops near that Place, expecting the Conjunction of the *Danes*, to attack the *Swedes*; but the dangerous Conſequences of the Loſs of a Battle on either Side, made the Generals think of a Suſpenſion of Arms, which, upon a Conference between Count *Steinbock* and Count *Fleming*, was agreed to for three Months.

THIS ſeparate Agreement of the King of *Poland*, was not at all pleaſing to *Peter*, and the King of *Denmark*, who both were jealous of *Auguſtus*'s carrying on ſome private Treaty with the *Swedes*, for which Reaſon his Czariſh Majeſty haſtened into *Mecklenbourg*, to provide with all neceſſary Speed for a Junction with the King of *Denmark*, who, on his Side, had advanced in precipitate Marches as far as *Gadebuſch* with his Troops; ſome *Saxon* Squadrons joined him, but the *Ruſſians* could not do ſo before the *Swedes* had attacked the *Daniſh*

The Battle of GADEBUSCH.

nish Army, and entirely defeated it. Thoſe *Saxons* who had no Part in the Action, immediately rejoined the *Ruſſians*, that they might together be in a Condition to oppoſe the victorious *Swedes*, who they imagined would retake the Route of *Pomerania*, to penetrate into *Poland*, and facilitate the Return of their Monarch; but Count *Steinbock*, far from doing thus, which ſeemed moſt reaſonable, advanced towards *Jutland*, to take up his Quarters in *Holſtein*, as he had been directed by the Regency at *Stockholm*. The Czar deliberated with himſelf for ſome Time, whether he ſhould attack *Steinbock* in his March, or not; but reſolved, at length, to go towards *Pomerania*, and afterwards agreed with the King of *Denmark* to open the next Campaign with the Attack of *Rugen*, and the Siege of *Stralſund*.

WHILST PETER expoſed himſelf to the greateſt Fatigues to deal with his Enemies on all Sides, new Troubles were formed in *Turky*, and new Enemies attacked his Troops in *Poland*; at the ſame Time, the Fame of this great Monarch's wonderful Actions reaching the Centre of *Aſia*, brought to his Court an Ambaſſador of *Perſia*, who made his publick Entry into *Moſcow*, and there waited his Majeſty's Return. On the 23d of *February*, his Czariſh Majeſty took leave of the King of *Denmark*, to whom he intruſted the Care of his Troops, after having earneſtly recommended to his Generals to obſerve a ſtrict Diſcipline in the Army. He went next to *Hanover*, and was received with all imaginable Marks of Reſpect at the Court of the Elector, where he took frequent Opportunities to converſe

verſe with the Princeſs *Sophia*, the Electreſs Dowager, for whom he had conceived a great Eſteem. As ſoon as he arrived at *Peterſburgh*, he got together about three hundred Veſſels, on which, in the Month of *May*, he embarked about twelve thouſand Men, and made a Deſcent into *Finland*, where he took *Abo*, in which Town he found much Proviſion, but the greateſt Booty was a large Quantity of Books, which he ſent to *Peterſburgh* to furniſh his new Library there. *The Czar takes Abo.*

AFTER the taking of *Abo*, PETER returned to *Peterſburgh*, leaving Orders with his Generals to follow the *Swediſh* Army that was on the Side of *Thavaſthus*, which Place the *Swedes* defended very courageouſly for ſome Time, and then quitted it to retire among the Bogs and Mountains with which this Country abounds; and, having thrown ſome of their Artillery into the Water, they poſted themſelves at the advantageous Paſſage of *Pulkona*, where the *Ruſſians* attacked them and got the Victory.

THE Troops commanded by Prince *Menzikoff* in *Pomerania*, had as great a Share of Glory, and thoſe in *Holſtein* were no ſmall Aſſiſtance to the King of *Denmark* in reducing *Tonningen* and General *Steinbock*. Prince *Menzikoff* had for ſome Time blocked up *Stetin*, with an Army of twenty four thouſand *Ruſſians*, and afterwards that Town was ſequeſtered into the Hands of the King of *Pruſſia*, with the reſt of the High *Swediſh Pomerania*, as *Holſtein* had been into the Hands of the King of *Denmark*, and ſo the Northern Allies were obliged to withdraw their Troops out of the

the *Swediſh* Provinces in *Germany*. Prince *Menzikoff* in his Retreat, coming into the Territories of *Hambourg*, obliged the Citizens to pay him two hundred and fifty thouſand Crowns, to prevent the military Executions he threaten'd them with; likewiſe made the City of *Lubeck* pay him an hundred thouſand, and the City of *Dantzick* an hundred and fifty Thouſand. With theſe Contributions the Prince returned to *Peterſburgh*, where he gave an Account to the Czar of all he had done in his Abſence. *Peter* was pleaſed with the Succeſs of his Arms, but could not at firſt approve of the Sequeſtration of *Pomerania*, becauſe it ty'd up his Hands from doing any thing more there; but the King of *Pruſſia* ſo well anſwered the Objections he made to it, that he ſoon after ratify'd the Treaty made with Prince *Menzikoff*.

THE Emperor, and the Powers intereſted in the War of the North, had agreed to hold a Congreſs at *Brunſwick*, whither the Regency of *Sweden*, conſented to ſend their Plenipotentiaries to treat of a general Peace; but this came to nothing. And the Czar, in the mean Time, keeping in View, his great Deſign of perfecting the Eſtabliſhment of his new City of *Peterſburgh*, cauſed a thouſand Families to come thither from *Moſcow*, offering alſo great Advantages to all Foreigners that ſhould ſettle there, and declared that all Goods uſually ſent to *Archangel* to be ſold to Strangers, or bartered for other Commodities, ſhould from thenceforth be ſent to *Peterſburgh*, requiring all Merchants and others to acquaint their Correſpondents in foreign Parts with this Regulation,

The Czar endeavours to remove the Trade from ARCHANGEL *to* PETERSBURGH.

gulation, that they might not be at unneceſſary Expences in ſending their Ships to *Archangel:* However, the Commerce of the Merchants was not entirely tranſplanted to *Peterſburgh* till ſome Years after, when the War was at an End, and the Navigation of the *Baltick* more open.

THE SWEDES, at this Time, fitted out a Fleet to ſuccour *Finland*, where Prince *Galliczin* had not been idle ſince the Battle of *Pulkona*, and to obſerve the *Ruſſians* in the Dread they were in of their undertaking to make ſome Deſcent on the Iſland of *Aland*, or even in *Sweden* itſelf. This Fleet commanded by Admiral *Watrang*, gained ſome Advantages at firſt, but that of *Ruſſia* coming up with them obtained a complete Victory. The Czar himſelf ſerved as Rear-Admiral under Admiral *Apraxin* in this Fleet, which conſiſted of thirty Ships of the Line, eighty Gallies and a hundred Half Gallies, without reckoning a great Number of flat Boats called *Schampavies*. The firſt Conſequence of this Victory was the taking the Iſland of *Aland*, where the Czar landed ſixteen thouſand Men; after which he returned to *Peterſburgh*, into which City he made a moſt triumphant Entry, graced by the *Swediſh* Rear-Admiral, *Ehrenſchild*, his Priſoner, and all the Trophies taken from the Enemy. The Czar proceeding in this manner to the Fortreſs, the Vice-Czar *Romadonofſki*, ſitting on a Throne ſurrounded by the Senate, cauſed him as Rear-Admiral, to be called before the Aſſembly, and received at his Hands a Relation in Writing of the Victory obtained. *Romadonofſki* and the Senators, taking the ſame

PETER *a Rear-Admiral in his own Fleet, obtains a Victory over the* SWEDES.

into Conſideration, propoſed ſeveral Queſtions to *Peter*, the *Ruſſian* Rear-Admiral, after which, they unanimouſly declared him Vice-Admiral of *Ruſſia*, in Recompenſe of his faithful Services done to his native Country.

The Czar made Vice-Admiral of RUSSIA.

NOTWITHSTANDING his *Swediſh* Majeſty was now returned to his Dominions, and headed a formidable Army againſt him, nothing could make *Peter* neglect any Opportunity of improving the State of his Affairs, and the Manners of his People at Home. For the ſake of the Ladies he had made an Order at this Time, that ſuch of the Nobility who were of Age, and in a Condition to travel, and were marry'd, ſhould take their Wives along with them, by which Means both Sexes might become equally poliſhed. About the ſame Time, a Scheme or Draught of a Bridge was laid before him, which ſome thought would be very convenient to be built over the *Neva* to join *Peterſburgh* to the *Terra-firma* of *Ingria*, from whence there was no Paſſage but by Boats and Oars; but his Czariſh Majeſty was ſo far from approving this Project, that he forbad even the Uſe of Boats and Oars, and ordered that, for the future, no one ſhould croſs the River but in Boats with Sails, being reſolved to make his People learn Navigation whether they would or no. He employed great Part of his Time this Year [1714,] in fortifying the Citadel of *Peterſburgh*, in raiſing other publick Edifices and in building Ships; he gave Orders, that whoever built Houſes at *Peterſburgh*, ſhould make the Wall of Brick, and cover the Roofs with Tiles: And to encourage able Artificers, from all Parts of *Europe*,

rope, to come and ſettle in his Dominions, he ſent to his Agent in *France*, to procure the beſt Workmen, promiſing them among other Advantages, to have their Houſe Rent free, and that they ſhould be exempt from all Taxes for ten Years. He next made a grand Inquiſition into all kind of Frauds committed by the great Men in *Ruſſia*, and puniſhed them according to their Demerits, ſome in their Perſons, and ſome only in their Purſes.

ON the 3d of *January*, 1715, his Czariſh Majeſty ſent to conduct the great Globe of *Gottorp*, over the Snow to *Riga*, by the Help of large Rollers, from whence it was to be brought by Sea to *Peterſburgh*: This Machine, made after a Deſign of *Tycho Brahe*, was ſo large that twelve Perſons could ſit conveniently round a Table within Side of it to make celeſtial Obſervations, by turning it round. The Czar had ſeen this Curioſity at *Gottorp*, and was ſo wonderfully pleaſed with it, that he begg'd it of the King of *Denmark*, and put himſelf to a great Expence to bring it to *Peterſburgh*.

THERE were no uſeful Arts and Sciences, that *Peter* did not encourage, and many Books were already produced by the Preſs which he had ordered to be ſet up at *Moſcow*, and theſe were ſuch as he had given Directions for himſelf, ſuch as the Apothegms of great Men, collected into three Volumes, together with ſhort ſelect Sentences, which by their conciſe and lively Turn, he thought would be more proper to form the Manners of his People, than formal and tedious Treatiſes of Morals.

PETER, for very good Reaſons, had aboliſhed the Patriarchal Dignity, or rather reunited it to the Crown, and to render the Character of the antient Patriarch ridiculous, and make it deſpiſed by the People, who before paid greater Reſpect to it than to the Crown itſelf, he created one *Sotoff* his Jeſter, *Mock-Patriarch*, whom, at the Age of Eighty four, he married to a buxom Widow of about Thirty, and the Nuptials of this extraordinary Couple were ſolemnized by the Court in Maſquerade.

THE Armies being now come into the Field in *Pomerania*, and his *Pruſſian* Majeſty having likewiſe ſent thither a large Body of Troops, he publiſhed a Manifeſto concerning his taking *Swediſh Pomerania* in Sequeſtration, and the March of his Army to prevent the Danger that threatened his own Dominions, and the *German* Empire: But when the *Pruſſian* and *Holſtein* Troops were ready to enter *Stetin* and *Wiſmar*, Count *Meyerfeldt*, Governor General of the *Swediſh Pomerania*, would not agree to it, ſo the King of *Pruſſia* declined concerning himſelf any farther with that Affair at preſent: And the Czar, and the King of *Poland*, purſued their former Reſolution to make themſelves Maſters of all the *Swediſh Pomerania*, and marching thither accordingly with their Armies, they poſſeſſed themſelves of the Iſland of *Rugen*, laid Siege to *Stetin*, which they attacked ſo vigorouſly, that they forced the Gariſon to reſolve to capitulate in a few Days with Prince *Menzikoff*, who commanded the Siege.

COUNT MEYERFELDT perceived, at laſt, that it would be more for his Maſter's Intereſt

to

to accept the Sequeſtration agreed to by Count *Welling*, than to ſuffer *Stetin* to fall into the Hands of the Czar, and the King of *Poland*, and therefore joined his preſſing Inſtances with thoſe of the Court of *Holſtein Gottorp*, that his *Pruſſian* Majeſty would become a Mediator, and take the Sequeſtration upon himſelf. Yet when this was done, and the King of *Pruſſia* had paid four hundred thouſand Dollars, on the King of *Sweden*'s Account, to the *Ruſſian* and *Poliſh* Armies, to compenſate the Charge they had been at, *Charles* XII. in a haughty Manner, declared, when he came to *Stralſund*, that he would make void, by Force of Arms, all that the King of *Pruſſia* had done. The *French* King's Mediation being offered in this Affair, *Peter* took that Opportunity to declare, that he would accept of no other Mediation for the Peace of the North, than that of the King of *Great Britain*, and the States-General; the firſt of whom ſeeing the common Danger to which all the Princes of *Lower Saxony* were expoſed, by having their Country made the Seat of the War, engaged, as Elector of *Hanover*, to take joint Meaſures with the Kings of *Denmark* and *Pruſſia*, for the Security of the Peace of the Empire, and act againſt *Sweden*. This produced an Agreement between that Prince and the *Danes*, by virtue of which, the latter made over the Duchies of *Bremen* and *Verden* to him.

THE Northern Allies having ſent their Forces into *Pomerania*, it was not doubted but the Czar, when he put to Sea, would join the *Danes*, that together they might make a De-

ſcent on the Iſland of *Rugen*, but having continued at *Revel* till the latter End of *June*, he then ſteered his Courſe towards *Gotland*. In the Middle of *September*, the *Ruſſian* Fleet ſailed from *Gotland* to the Coaſt of *Sundermania*, and landed fifteen thouſand Foot Soldiers, at about eight Leagues from the *Swediſh* Army, whilſt a Body of Horſe from the Army in *Finland*, went round the *Bothnick* Gulph to penetrate into the Northern Provinces of *Sweden*, which put that whole Kingdom in a Conſternation.

His Czariſh Majeſty likewiſe ordered General *Czeremetoff*, to go with twelve or fifteen thouſand Men, to ſtrengthen the Army of the Allies in *Pomerania*, and not only put an End to the tedious Siege of *Stralſund*, but to take from the *Swedes* the Town of *Wiſmar*. *Stralſund* ſurrendered at the latter End of *December*, and the King of *Sweden* himſelf had a narrow Eſcape for his Life. Prince *Galliczin* alſo obtained many Advantages in *Finland*.

PETER, in the mean Time, was giving his utmoſt Attention to Affairs at *Peterſburgh*, carrying on his Fortifications and Buildings in that City; and ſet up, at this Time, a new Academy under the Direction of a *Frenchman*, M. *de St. Hilaire*, where Riding was taught, foreign Languages, Mathematicks, and all Things proper for the Education of Gentlemen.

The Czar ſets up a new Academy at PETERSBURGH.

A Son born to the CZAREWITZ.

On the 22d of *October*, the Czar had the inexpreſſible Joy of ſeeing a Son born to the Czarewitz; but a great Damp was put to this Joy, by the Death of the illuſtrious Princeſs who brought him into the World, tho' the

Czarewitz

Czarewitz himſelf ſhewed but little Concern on the Occaſion, having on all Accounts expreſſed no Manner of Regard for this virtuous and every Way deſerving Princeſs, whom he marry'd only to pleaſe his Father, and whom, by his brutiſh Temper, he had rendered unhappy, from the Day of her Marriage to this of her Death. The Day after the Interment of this Princeſs, the Czar had the farther Satisfaction of having a ſecond Son born to himſelf of the Czarina *Catharine*, on which Account publick Rejoicings were made for eight Days together. The Birth of theſe two Princes was the more agreeable to *Peter*, as the Behaviour of the Czarewitz had been ſuch, that he was determined to ſet him aſide, unleſs he ſhew'd Tokens of Amendment.

Another Son born to PETER.

On the 4th of *December*, the Czar received Advice of the taking the Iſland of *Rugen*, upon which Occaſion, great Rejoicings were made at *Peterſburgh*; and in the Beginning of the new Year, 1716, his Czariſh Majeſty received News of an Irruption of the *Cubanſki Tartars*, in the Kingdom of *Caſan*, under the Command of the Cham's Son, which was now become almoſt an annual Cuſtom with them: But this was ſoon put a ſtop to by Colonel *Schwartz*, at the Head of his Regiment compoſed of twelve hundred *Germans*, taken from among the *Swediſh* Priſoners, who put the *Tartars* to Flight, and having took the Cham's Son, forthwith cauſed him to be hung upon a Tree.

On the 6th of *February*, the Czar and Czarina ſet out for *Germany*, by the Way of *Riga*, *Libaw*, *Memel*, and *Dantzick*, in which laſt

City they continued till the latter End of *April*, and where was celebrated the Marriage of the Princeſs *Catharine*, eldeſt Daughter of his Brother the Czar *John*, with the Duke of *Mecklenbourg*; on which Occaſion the King of *Poland* gave a ſplendid Entertainment; after which the Czar, hearing that forty five of his Gallies were arrived at *Koningſberg*, ſet out with all Expedition for that Place to review them. In his Abſence, certain Articles were delivered, by his Order, to the Magiſtrates of *Dantzick*; which chiefly imported, that they ſhould hold no Correſpondence with *Sweden*; that the City ſhould furniſh four Privateers of twelve Guns, and fifty Men each, to be maintained by them during the War, or pay two hundred thouſand Rix-Dollars in Specie: But by the Mediation of the King of *Poland*, the *Dantzickers* compounded the Matter, and were to pay but an hundred thouſand Rix-Dollars, to renounce all Commerce with *Sweden*, and to maintain four Ships that he was to furniſh them with. This Affair being ſo ſettled, the Czar at his Return, was received with great Honours. The next Day he ſet out for *Stetin*, and was met in his Way thither, at *Stolpe*, by the King of *Pruſſia*, who came thither incognito to confer with him on the Situation of Affairs in the North, Theſe Princes agreed in oppoſing the Progreſs of the King of *Sweden* into the Dominions of the *Danes*; but thought it not for the common Intereſt to aſſiſt *Denmark* in making Conqueſts on the *Swedes*, who were already weakened enough by the Loſs of *Finland*, *Livonia*, and *Pomerania*.

His

His Czariſh Majeſty went next to *Stralſund*, then to *Mecklenbourg*, to pay a Viſit to the Duke his Nephew, and afterwards had an Interview with the King of *Denmark*, in the Gardens of *Ham* and *Horn*, near *Altena*, where was concerted the Deſcent on *Schonen*, in order to oblige the King of *Sweden* to quit *Norway*, into which Country he had penetrated with an Army of twenty thouſand Men, and was advancing towards *Chriſtiana*, the Capital of that Kingdom.

In the Month of *July*, the Czar and Czarina went to *Copenhagen*, where the Court and the City uſed their utmoſt Endeavours to ſhew them all Manner of Diverſions, while they waited for the Execution of the grand Project, of which they promiſed themſelves the greateſt Succeſs. His Czariſh Majeſty, during his Stay in *Denmark*, which was near three Months, viſited the Colleges, the Academies, and converſed with the Learned. He went out almoſt every Day, coaſting the two Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Sweden*, meaſuring the Bays, and ſounding the Depths, and laid down the whole ſo exactly on Charts, that the leaſt Bank of Sand did not eſcape him. And he who was the firſt of all the *Ruſſians*, who had any Knowledge of the Sea, received the higheſt Mark of Honour, from the moſt experienced Nations in Maritime Affairs, by having the *Britiſh* and *Dutch* Fleets joined to thoſe of *Ruſſia* and *Denmark*, put under his Command, which he declared gave him as great a Satisfaction as ever he had in his Life.

Peter commands the united Fleets of four Nations.

Notwithstanding the great Preparations that had been made for this Deſcent on *Schonen*,

Schonen, the Czar thought proper to lay it aſide, which it is ſuppoſed, he was prevailed upon to do, by Baron *Gortz*, who was become chief Miniſter and Favourite of *Charles* XII. and who had projected a ſtrange Revolution in the Affairs of *Europe*, which was to be brought about, by making Peace with his Maſter, and *Peter Alexowitz*. The Plan was too flattering to the Ambition of both thoſe great Princes, to be reſiſted by either of them. Baron *Gortz* perſuaded the King of *Sweden*, that he would have ample amends made him, for ſuffering the Czar to enjoy the Conqueſts he had made on the Eaſt and North of the *Baltick*, by having the Honour of replacing *Staniſlaus* on the Throne of *Poland*, by ſetting the Crown of *England* upon the Head of the pretended King, the Son of *James* II. and by reſtoring the Duke of *Holſtein* to that Duchy; beſides that being united to the Czar, there was nothing they might not undertake.

THE CZAR, on his Part, was ſecretly diſcontented with the Allies, who were all for preventing his having any Footing in *Germany*, and who were jealous of his Power. I muſt here take Notice of one Part of this extraordinary Scheme, which I did not mention in my Life of *Peter*; it has been related by ſome, that Baron *Gortz* laid his Plan before Cardinal *Alberoni*, who was then chief Miniſter at the Court of *Madrid*, and was charmed with the Project of ſetting the Crown of *England* upon the Head of the Pretender, which *Gortz* was to effect, by ſending to the Pirates at *Madagaſcar*, who had been rejected by every other Nation, but had now intreated the Protection

Protection of the King of *Sweden*, making an Offer to bring ſixty Ships into his Service, with an immenſe Treaſure. This the King accepted of, on Condition, that they made the Deſcent into *Scotland*, where they were to be joined by the diſaffected Party in *Great Britain*, who required but the Aſſiſtance of ten thouſand Men, to accompliſh their Deſign of dethroning King *George* I. and to that End, advanced conſiderable Sums, which *Gortz* received in *Holland*, after he had been privately in *France*, negotiating the Purchaſe of Ships, and Ammunition. But ſome Hints of this Affair, being communicated to the King of *Great Britain*, as it was thought, by the Duke of *Orleans*, then Regent of *France*, Count *Gyllembourg*, the *Swediſh* Envoy, was put under an Arreſt in *London*, and his Papers were ſeized, by which a Diſcovery was made of the whole Plot. The Czar diſowned, that he had any Knowledge of it, and a long Memorial was delivered to Mr. *Stanhope*, by M. *Weſſelowſki*, the Czar's Miniſter in *England*, to juſtify his Maſter, with which the King of *Great Britain* was, or ſeemed to be contented.

ABOUT this Time his Czariſh Majeſty came to the *Hague*, from whence he went by the Way of *Brüſſels*, *Ghent*, and *Bruges*, to *Dunkirk*, to view the *Ris-Bank* there, deſigning to make one of the ſame Kind at *Cronſlot* or *Peterſburgh*. On the 7th of *May*, he arrived at *Paris*, and ſpent ſome Time in *France*. "He "had nothing more eſſential to learn, ſays "Monſieur *de Fontenelle*, nor to tranſport to "his Country, but it ſtill remained for him "to ſee *France*, a Country where Learning

" has flouriſhed, and where the Agreement " of Society has been carried to a greater " Height than in any other Part of the " World. The Czar, *continues he*, was great- " ly pleaſed with the Perſon of our King, " who was yet an Infant; he was ſeen walk- " ing in the *Louvre*, leading him by the " Hand, and taking him almoſt in his Arms, " to defend him from the admiring Crowd.

" ON the 19th of *June*, 1717, he did the " Academy of Sciences the Honour to viſit " them, they entertained him with all they " had that was new or curious in Experiments " and Machines." And he afterwards, at his own Requeſt, became a Member of that Society.

HIS Czariſh Majeſty having been at *Verſailles*, *Fontainebleau*, and *Marly*, and ſeen every Perſon and Place worthy his Notice in *France*, went to *Namur*, *Liege*, and the *Spaw*, where he drank the Waters, from which he received ſo great Benefit, that when he left the Place, he order'd a Marble Monument to be erected, on which was the following Inſcription in Letters of Gold.

PETER I. *by the Grace of God, Emperor of the* Ruſſians,
Religious, happy, invincible,
Reſtorer of Military Diſcipline,
And firſt Planter of all Sciences and Arts among his People;
Who having by his own Induſtry
Built a moſt powerful Fleet of Ships,
Having infinitely augmented his Armies,
And having ſecurely ſettled in the very Blaze of War, his Realms, as well hereditary as acquired, went abroad;
And having ſearch'd into the Manners of the ſeveral Nations of Europe,
Came through France *to* Namur *and* Liege,
To theſe Waters at Spa,
As to the Haven of Health:
And having happily drank of thoſe moſt healthful Springs,
Particularly that of Geronſtere,
Was reſtored to his former Strength,
And his deſired Health,
In the Year 1717, 22*d of* July.
Thence returning through Holland
To his hereditary Dominions,
Ordered this eternal Monument of his Gratitude to be erected. 1718.

IT is no Secret, that, while *Peter* was at the Court of *France*, he made a Propoſal, to pour a numerous Army into the Heart of the Empire, which ſhould be at the Service of that Crown, if *France* would pay the Subſidies he required; but this was rejected, as inconſiſtent with the Engagements ſhe was under, by

by her Alliance with his *Britannick* Majeſty, ſigned at the *Hague*, on the 4th of *January*, 1717. However, his Czariſh Majeſty, during his Stay at *Paris*, concluded a Treaty of Friendſhip with *France*, in which the King of *Pruſſia* was included, and, being much preſſed to it by the Regent, he promiſed to withdraw his Forces from *Mecklenbourg*. On his Return from *Paris*, the King of *Great Britain* ſent Sir *John Norris*, and Mr. *Whitworth* to him at *Amſterdam*, to thank him for having declared, that he would withdraw his Forces out of the Empire, and to aſſure him, that it would be a great Satisfaction to him, to live with him in the ſame Friendſhip and Union as formerly.

ON the 19th of *September*, his Czariſh Majeſty, and on the 22d the Czarina, arrived at *Berlin*, the latter being met at ſome Diſtance from the City, by the Queen of *Pruſſia*, and the Markgravine. Their Czariſh Majeſties were lodged at *Monbijoux*, and magnificently entertained by the *Pruſſian* Court, whither the Duke and Ducheſs of *Mecklenbourg* came to pay them a Viſit; here their Majeſties continued three Days, and then took the Route of *Dantzick*, with which City, a few Days before, Prince *Dolgoruki*, and the other *Ruſſian* Miniſters had ſettled an Agreement, which put an End to all Differences between the Czar, and them, and which his Majeſty ratified on his Arrival.

FROM DANTZICK his Majeſty went by the Way of *Koningſberg*, *Riga* and *Revel*, to *Peterſburgh*, where he arrived on the 21ſt of *October*, 1717, after an Abſence of ſixteen Months, and found the Complaints of his People

People very high againſt the Miniſters, whom he had intruſted with the Government during his Abſence: He therefore employed the remaining Part of the Year in redreſſing, with indefatigable Application, the great Diſorders committed in the State, in puniſhing the Authors of them, and making new Regulations in his Affairs.

AT the ſame Time he preſented the young *Great Prince*, Son of the Czarewitz, with his Picture ſet with Diamonds, and as he gave early Proofs of a martial and lively Genius, he was not only declared a Serjeant of the Guards, and cloathed accordingly, but taught the military Exerciſe, which he ſoon learned to the great Satisfaction of the Czar, who had much Affection for him, notwithſtanding the juſt Reſentment he had conceived againſt the Czarewitz his Father, who was in all Reſpects of a Character oppoſite to his own, indocile, ſluggiſh, vicious, an Admirer of the antient Cuſtoms, of a brutiſh Diſpoſition, a Frequenter of bad Company, and ſo diſobedient to his King and Father, that, in his Abſence, he had made his Eſcape out of the Kingdom, in Breach of the Laws thereof, which made it High-Treaſon for any one to travel into foreign Parts, without the Czar's Licence.

ON the 4th of *February*, 1718, the diſagreeable News arrived at *Peterſburgh*, of the ill Succeſs of the Expedition near the *Caſpian* Sea, commanded by Prince *Alexander Bekewitz*, who was ſent by the Czar to take Poſſeſſion of the River *Daria*, where the Gold Sand is found, and to diſcover Mines in the Moun-

Mountains of *Great Tartary*, at the Head of three thouſand Men; but theſe were cut off by the *Tartars*, and the Prince himſelf butchered in a moſt barbarous Manner. It was firmly believed, that the Czar would take the firſt Opportunity of revenging himſelf on theſe *Tartars*; but this, and all other Affairs were laid aſide, for one which his Majeſty had more at Heart than any Thing elſe, which was an Enquiry into the Crimes, and to provide an adequate Puniſhment for the Diſobedience of his Son, who had behaved ſo ill, and who was now brought home to *Moſcow*, by M. *Tolſtoy*, whom the Czar had ſent to fetch him from *Naples*.

THE CZAR being determined to proceed to do Juſtice upon him, in a ſolemn Manner, appointed a Day, when he was brought publickly into the Czar's Preſence in the great Hall, where he preſented to his Father, ſtanding in the midſt of the great Men of the Kingdom, a Writing, containing a Confeſſion of his Crimes, imploring his Mercy, and begging he would ſave his Life. His Majeſty granted his Requeſt, but told him he had cut himſelf off from the Hopes of inheriting his Crown, which he obliged him to renounce, by ſigning a formal Inſtrument drawn up for that Purpoſe: Which done, the Miniſters, Boyars, Officers, and others preſent, ſwore upon the Goſpel, and ſubſcribed an Oath, by which they owned the Legality of his Majeſty's Decree; acknowledged his ſecond Son *Peter Petrowitz*, to be undoubted Succeſſor to the Crown, and engaged to ſtand by him with their Lives and Fortunes. The ſaid Oath was

The CZARE-WITZ ALEXIS *renounces the Succeſſion to the Crown.*

afterwards adminiſter'd to all the publick Officers, and other Inhabitants of *Moſcow*, and Orders were ſent for doing the ſame all over the *Ruſſian* Empire.

SEVERAL other Perſons were involved in the grand Inquiſition made at this Time, as Adherents to the Czarewitz, and the Adviſers of his late Eſcape, among which were his Mother, the repudiated Czarina *Ottokeſa Federowna*, and her Father Confeſſor; *Maria Alexowna*, the Czar *Peter*'s Siſter of the half Blood, *Alexander Kikin*, Commiſſioner of the Admiralty, and once the Czar's chief Favourite; Prince *Waſſili Wolodimirowitz Dolgoruki*; *Peter Matuewitz Apraxin*, the great Admiral's Brother, the Czarewitz of *Siberia*, the Boyar *Stepan Gleboff*, *Doſſifei* Biſhop of *Roſtoff*, the Treaſurer of the Monaſtery of *Suſdal*; of whom the Boyar *Gleboff*, Biſhop *Doſſifei*, *Kikin*, the Treaſurer of the Monaſtery, and another *Ruſſian*, were executed in the Publick Market Place of the City of *Moſcow*, on the 26th of *March*, 1718, *Gleboff* was empaled alive, and the others broke on the Wheel; the Corpſe of the Biſhop was burnt, but his Head, and three others, were ſet upon Poles, on the four Corners of a ſquare Wall erected for that Purpoſe.

EUPHROSINE, the Czarewitz's Miſtreſs, was ſet at Liberty, in Conſideration of the open Confeſſion ſhe made; this was a *Finlandiſh* Woman of a mean Extraction, with whom the Czarewitz lived in an infamous Manner, in the Life-time of his virtuous Princeſs, which, with his other ill Uſage of her, was ſuppoſed to have help'd to ſhorten her Days.

THIS Piece of Juſtice executed at *Moſcow*, his Czariſh Majeſty went to *Peterſburgh*, where he arrived on the 4th of *April*, and immediately went to the Dock, ordering the Men of War new built there, to be launched as ſoon as the Harbour was clear of Ice.

ABOUT the latter End of *May*, the firſt Conference was held between the Plenipotentiaries of the Czar, and the King of *Sweden* at *Aland*. The *Ruſſian* Fleet was ready at the ſame Time, to put to Sea from *Cronſlot*, which the Czar intended to command in Perſon, and likewiſe deſign'd an Interview with the King of *Pruſſia* at *Memel*, but was prevented by an important Affair, that required his Preſence at *Peterſburgh*. This was a Diſcovery of freſh Circumſtances, relating to the Conſpiracy of the Czarewitz, which obliged him to eſtabliſh a ſecond High-Court of Juſtice, to enquire into that Buſineſs, which, after a mature Examination into every Particular of his Guilt, pronounced him worthy of Death, and drew up their Sentence in Writing, which was ſigned by one hundred and twenty five of his Judges.

THE unfortunate Prince was brought out of the Fortreſs into Court, on the 6th of *July*, where he was obliged to repeat the Confeſſion of his Crimes, and to hear the Sentence of Death read to him, after which he was ſent back into Cuſtody; and the next Morning early, News was brought to the Czar, that the violent Paſſions of his Mind, and the Terrors of Death had thrown him into an Apoplectick Fit. About Noon, another Meſſenger brought Word, that the Prince was in great

great danger of his Life, and afterwards a third informed his Czariſh Majeſty, that he was paſſed all Hopes of Recovery, and greatly deſired to ſee his Father. The Czar, attended by ſome of the principal Perſons of his Court, went to ſee his dying Son, who, at the Sight of his Father, burſt into Tears, and, with his Hands folded, told him, That he had grievouſly offended both Heaven and him; that he hoped not to recover of his Indiſpoſition, and even if he ſhould, yet was unworthy of Life; therefore begg'd his Majeſty, for God's Sake, to take from him the Curſe he had laid upon him at *Moſcow*; to forgive him all his heavy Crimes; to impart to him his paternal Bleſſing, and to cauſe Prayers to be put up for his Soul. During theſe moving Words, the Czar, and the whole Company, were in Tears. His Majeſty returned a pathetick Anſwer, and repreſented to him in a few Words, all the Offences he had committed againſt him, and then gave him his Forgiveneſs and Bleſſing, after which, they parted with abundance of Tears and Lamentations, on both Sides, and the Czarewitz expired the ſame Evening. *The Czarewitz* ALEXIS *dies.*

HIS Czariſh Majeſty the next Day cauſed a circular Letter to be ſent to his Miniſters abroad, with ſome Account of the Czarewitz's Death, in order to prevent the falſe Reports which might be ſpread thereof; many not believing that he died a natural Death; ſome giving out, that he was obliged to take a poiſoned Draught in his Priſon, and others, going ſo far as to charge his Czariſh Majeſty, with the Cruelty of whipping him to Death,

with his own Hands: But certainly, the great Caution with which he proceeded againſt him, and the many Inſtances he gave of his paternal Affection towards him, and his Willingneſs to excuſe and reclaim him, are ſufficient to ſhew the Improbability of his having treated him with ſuch Inhumanity, notwithſtanding he had conſpired againſt his *Life*, and what was dearer to him, that Country for which he had ſo often hazarded his *Life*, and for the Improvement of which he had beſtowed more Pains, and undertaken more wonderful Deſigns, than were ever conceived by any Prince in the World before him.

As to the other Perſons, of all Degrees, of every Age and Sex, who were embarked with the Czarewitz in his Conſpiracy againſt his Father, they were delivered up to the Severity of the Law; ſome were racked, ſome beheaded, others hanged, and many were impaled alive. Thoſe who were not condemned to Death, received the *Knout*, and the *Batoags*; and not a few were baniſhed into *Siberia*, for the Remainder of their Days. The divorced Czarina, Mother of the unhappy Czarewitz, and the Princeſs *Mary*, were both cloſely confined, the firſt in the Caſtle of *Sleutelbourg*, and the other in a Monaſtery on the Banks of the Lake *Ladoga*.

THE *Grand Inquiſition* being finiſhed, relating to the Diſorders within his own Dominions, his Czariſh Majeſty had Leiſure to purſue what was proper to be done with regard to his foreign Affairs, and to attend to the Conferences in which his Miniſters, and thoſe of *Sweden* were engaged, in the Iſland of *Aland*.

land. His Czariſh Majeſty went with his Fleet to *Abo*, to be nearer the Negotiations, and influence them the more; but when every body expected that the finiſhing Stroke was ready to be put to the Peace, between his Czariſh Majeſty and the King of *Sweden*, all Hopes of it were blaſted by the Death of the latter, which happened in the Night, between the 29th and 30th of *November*, 1718, before the Town of *Frederickſhall* in *Norway*. The Death of this Prince quite changed the Face of Affairs in the North. Baron *Gortz*, his great Favourite, being ſoon after executed, the Czar ſaw all his Projects of Peace, and the Ceſſion of thoſe Places he would have had the quiet Poſſeſſion of, as concerted by *Gortz* and *Oſterman*, overthrown, unleſs the *Swediſh* Nation, intimidated by the Proſpect of a Continuance of that War, which had been already too long and bloody, ſhould conſent to receive thoſe Laws he was willing to impoſe upon them; therefore his Majeſty ſignify'd by his Miniſters to *Ulrica*, the new Queen of *Sweden*, the Deſire he had that the Congreſs of *Aland* might go on. *The Death* CHARLE XII.

In the mean Time, ſeveral more Perſons were executed at *Peterſburgh*, on Account of the Czarewitz's Conſpiracy, the chief of which were *Abraham Fedrowitz Lopuchin*, Brother to the divorced Czarina *Ottokeſa*; *James Puſtinoi*, the Czarewitz's Confeſſor, and *Aſſonaſhief*, his Maſter of the Horſe.

In the Beginning of *February*, 1719, his Czariſh Majeſty ordered Counſellor *Oſterman* to come to *Peterſburgh* for new Inſtructions, but he was not ſent back to *Aland* till *April*,

when the Queen of *Sweden* came to a Reſolution of naming Baron *Lilienſted*, to ſupply the Place of Baron *Gortz*, at the Congreſs, where he arrived in the Month of *June* following. During which Time, his Czariſh Majeſty had been at *Olonitz* to drink the Waters, and at his Return went to *Ladoga*, ſituated at the Mouth of the River *Wolkofa*, which Town he rebuilt, and made a very large City from an inconſiderable Village; deſigning to have a Caſtle there, and a Magazine of Proviſions for the Uſe of a prodigious Multitude of People, which he had drawn from the ſeveral Parts of his Empire to cut a Canal as far as *Sleutelbourg*, and make a Communication between the River *Wolkofa*, and the *Neva*, and thereby prevent the dangerous Paſſage of the Lake *Ladoga*, in croſſing which above an hundred Ships were loſt every Year.

A new Canal of Communication cut between the WOLKOFA, *and the* NEVA.

PETER, upon his Return to *Peterſburgh*, being informed of a Treaty concluded between the Emperor, the King of *Great Britain*, as Elector of *Hanover*, and the King of *Poland*, took it ſo very ill of the laſt, that he wrote a Letter to him, complaining of his Ingratitude, after what he had done to ſerve him, and expoſtulating with him for endeavouring to incite the Emperor of *Germany*, the *Ottoman Porte*, the Cham of *Tartary*, and other Powers to take up Arms againſt him, and for ſuffering falſe Reports to be ſpread, as if he intended to tear the Duchy of *Courland* from the Protection of *Poland*, and to diſmember other Provinces from the ſaid Kingdom.

THIS

THIS Letter was anſwered by *Auguſtus*, who ſaid, that Copies of it were diſperſed and made publick, in a Manner contrary to Cuſtom and the Nature of true Friendſhip, before the Original was delivered to him. He juſtified all he had done, and deſired his Czariſh Majeſty to ſhew him more Reſpect, or he ſhould look upon his indecent Behaviour as hoſtile, and be forced to obviate it with the Aſſiſtance of his Friends in a proper Manner; for that no body ought to blame him for endeavouring to maintain a good Underſtanding and mutual Benevolence, not only with the Emperor and the King of *Great Britain*, but with all the Powers of the World beſides, for his own and his Kingdom's Preſervation. He aſſured him, that the Perſon he had ſent to *Conſtantinople*, did not negotiate any Thing relating to publick Affairs, but was there to aſſiſt the Merchants of his Dominions with his Advice, and to buy ſeveral Goods for his Houſhold, nor did he pretend, he ſaid, to excite the *Ottoman Porte* againſt his Czariſh Majeſty. Nor had the Senators and Miniſters of State, in their late Conference held at *Warſaw* with the *Tartarian* Envoy, made any Propoſals to him relating to an Invaſion of his Czariſh Majeſty's Dominions; but when he, of his own Motion, and without being aſked, offered, in the Name of the Cham of *Crim Tartary*, to aſſiſt the Republick with ten thouſand Men, againſt all who ſhould threaten to invade it in an hoſtile Manner, he was anſwered, that he did not deſire thoſe Auxiliaries ſhould enter his Territories; but that in caſe of inevitable Neceſſity, it would be more

acceptable to him, that they ſhould be employ'd to make a Diverſion in the Enemy's Country; yet nothing was concluded.

In the ſame Letter, the King of *Poland* aſſured his Czariſh Majeſty, that he never had, nor ever would do any thing prejudicial to him, nor contrary to their Friendſhip, founded upon Neighbourhood, and ſtrengthened by Alliances, provided his Czariſh Majeſty would, on his Part, reciprocally fulfil all the Conditions expreſſed in the Conventions between them, and eſpecially reſtore *Livonia* and *Courland*, two Provinces incorporated with the Republick of *Poland* from antient Times; that he would alſo withdraw his Troops out of all the Provinces of the Kingdom; give Satisfaction for all the Injuries ſo often repreſented by his [*Auguſtus's*] Miniſters; pay the many Millions ſtipulated by Treaties, but yet unpaid, and reſtore what had been extorted from the City of *Dantzick*, and the Territories of the Republick, contrary to Treaties; forbear to excite Miſunderſtandings and Differences between him, and the States of the Republick. On theſe, and ſome other Conditions named, he ſaid nothing ſhould be dearer or more acceptable to him, than a ſincere Union, and conſtant Friendſhip with his Czariſh Majeſty.

However Peter, by this Anſwer of the King of *Poland*, and the Engagements that Prince had entered into, found himſelf deſerted by his Allies, yet when M. *Oſterman* returned to *Aland*, in the Month of *April*, it was leſs to negotiate than menace the *Swedes*, for he was ordered to declare, *that unleſs they accepted*,

accepted, in two Months Time, of the Conditions propoſed, they muſt expect a Viſit from forty thouſand Plenipotentiaries, who would force them to it with Sword in Hand. But the *Swedes* thought they had little Cauſe to dread theſe Threats, when Sir *John Norris* came, as he did ſoon after, into the Road of *Copenhagen*, with a Squadron of *Engliſh* Men of War, and the Lord *Carteret* arrived at *Stockholm*, in the Character of Ambaſſador Extraordinary from the King of *Great Britain*.

His Czariſh Majeſty, finding this Change of Affairs, went about executing the Deſign he had been projecting, of making a Deſcent on *Sweden*, which he did in ſuch a Manner, that Admiral *Apraxin* for his Part only, in the Expedition, burnt and deſtroyed ſix good Towns, eleven Caſtles or Palaces of Brick, one hundred and nine of Wood, belonging to Noblemen, eight hundred twenty ſix Villages and Hamlets, three Mills, and ten Magazines, two Mines of Copper, and five of Iron.

Major General Lesly, alſo, reduced to Aſhes two Towns, twenty one Caſtles, or Noblemens Houſes, five hundred and thirty five Villages and Hamlets, forty Mills, ſixteen Magazines, and nine Mines of Iron, for one of which, it was ſaid, the *Swedes* offered three hundred thouſand Rix-Dollars to ſave it from Ruin. They deſtroyed the Corn and Forage, and killed all the Cattle and Horſes that they could not carry off. They put on Board their Veſſels all the Iron they were able, and the reſt, to the Number of eighty thouſand Bars, they threw into the Sea.

The

THE CZAR's Deſign, in all theſe Burnings and Devaſtations, was to bring *Sweden* to his own Terms, to which Purpoſe, he likewiſe ſent *Oſterman*, charged with a Commiſſion to *Stockholm*; but he was ſtopt half a League ſhort of that City, whither the Court of *Sweden* ſent ſome Miniſters to him, who found, that, agreeable to the Project of Peace at *Aland*, *Peter* demanded nothing leſs than the abſolute Ceſſion of *Eſthonia*, *Ingria*, and of *Carelia*, compriſing the Towns of *Revel*, *Wybourg*, *Narva*, and *Kexholm*, with the Ceſſion of *Livonia* for forty Years, his Czariſh Majeſty being willing, for the preſent, to reſtore only *Finland*.

THESE Propoſitions were rejected with Scorn, the Congreſs of *Aland* broke up, the Miniſters retired, and the *Engliſh* Squadron, which till then had remained in the Road of *Copenhagen*, ſailed towards the Ports of *Sweden*, but found the *Ruſſians* had retired to their own Harbours eight Days before. This Retreat of the Czar was generally thought to be owing to the Approach of the united Fleets of the *Engliſh* and *Swedes*; but *Peter* publiſhed an Account at *Revel*, which was ſent into ſeveral Parts of *Europe*, to confute any falſe Reports that might be ſpread, as it was ſaid, by thoſe who envy'd the Glory of his Majeſty's Arms; whereby he would have made it appear, that the Inſtances of the Queen of *Sweden*, and the advanced Seaſon of the Year, were the only Reaſons that determined him to put an End to the Operations of the War for that Year, and to bring back his Forces into his own Ports.

ON

ON the 8th of *September*, Mr. *Berkeley*, Son of the Lord *Berkeley* of *Stratton*, ſet out from *Stockholm*, with Letters from the Lord *Carteret* and Sir *John Norris*, to the Czar, offering his *Britannick* Majeſty's Mediation, for making Peace between his Czariſh Majeſty, and the Queen of *Sweden*; but when Mr. *Berkeley* carry'd theſe Letters to the *Ruſſian* Plenipotentiaries, they would neither undertake to ſend them to the Czar, nor give him a Paſſport for *Peterſburgh*; but General *Bruce*, one of the ſaid Plenipotentiaries, contented himſelf to anſwer my Lord *Carteret*'s Letter; and deſired Leave to tell him, that the Contents of thoſe Letters were ſo ſingular, and little agreeable to the ſtrict Ties, the Alliances, and the Friendſhip, that ſtill ſubſiſted between their Czariſh and *Britannick* Majeſties, that he could not prevail upon himſelf to do what he deſired, without having firſt received the Czar's Orders.

UPON this Anſwer being given, the Sieurs *Jefferies* and *Weber*, the King of *Great Britain*'s Miniſters, received orders to leave *Peterſburgh*, and retire to *Dantzick*; which was enough to ſhew his *Britannick* Majeſty's Diſpoſition to the Czar. Beſides, *Peter* had learned that Admiral *Norris* had Orders to join *Sweden*, in oppoſing the Operations of the *Ruſſian* Fleet. Whereupon, the Czar cauſed all the *Engliſh* Merchants in his Dominions to be arreſted, and threatened to confiſcate all their Effects, which amounted to above fifty Millions, if the *Britiſh* Nation made War upon him. At the ſame Time, to caſt all the Blame on the Court of *Great Britain*, his Czariſh Majeſty declared his Intentions to

King

King *George* I. by a very warm Memorial, preſented by M. *Weſſelowſki*, the *Ruſſian* Reſident at *London*, charging him with Breach of Treaties, and Violation of Friendſhip. This was anſwered by his *Britiſh* Majeſty, both as King of *Great Britain*, and Elector of *Hanover*; which Anſwers were not without a Reply from the Czar, but Order of Time obliges us to refer that to the Cloſe of the next Year.

His Czariſh Majeſty, in the mean Time, ever watchful over the Welfare of his People, this Year ordered that Peſt of Society, the *Jeſuits*, to be baniſhed his Dominions; and that he might help to ſoften the natural Moroſeneſs of the *Muſcovites*, ſet up Aſſemblies, and encouraged Plays and Opera's at *Peterſburgh*; tho' the latter were Entertainments, that he had no great Reliſh for himſelf: But theſe, and all other his Deſigns, had like to have been finiſhed this Year by a violent Fit of the Cholick, which threatened the Life of this mighty Prince, while he was at *Revel*, whither he went to haſten the Equipment of his Fleet, and complete the Fortifications of that Place; but the Vigour of his Conſtitution, and the Help of Medicine, reſtored him to his People, to add more Glories to a Reign already replete with Wonders.

With the new Year [1720,] his Czariſh Majeſty began to make new Preparations for the War, ſeeing himſelf abandoned by all his Allies, and forced to maintain it alone with *Sweden*, ſupported by a *Britiſh* Fleet, favoured by the Kings of *Pruſſia* and *Denmark*, and ready to make her Peace with *Poland*. The King of *Great Britain* alſo, as firmly united with

with the Regent of *France*, as with the Crown of *Sweden*, had engaged him to pay the Subſidies which were due to it from the Moſt Chriſtian King; ſo that at the Time when *Sweden* was at the loweſt Ebb of Credit, ſhe received ſix hundred thouſand Crowns from the Court of *France*, with Aſſurances, that the Subſidy, for the future, ſhould be regularly paid: This Succour, joined to thoſe of *England* and *Hanover*, made the *Swedes* take freſh Courage, and gave his Czariſh Majeſty to underſtand, that he was not to expect Peace, but by Force; which occaſioned *Peter* to make new Efforts, by re-aſſembling his Troops in *Finland*, augmenting his Fleet, and making all Kind of Preparations to be in the Field before his Enemy.

BESTUCHEF, the Czar's Reſident, in the mean Time, preſented a Memorial to his *Britannick* Majeſty, which was a Reply to the Anſwers to the Memorial of *Weſſelowſki*, which Piece contained ſuch Reflections on the *Britiſh* Miniſters, and was ſo little reſpectful to the King himſelf, that the Reſident was ordered to depart the Kingdom. As ſoon as the Seaſon of the Year permitted, the *Britiſh* Fleet arrived in the *Sound*, under the Command of Sir *John Norris*, who was ordered to join the *Swediſh* Fleet, in ſupport of the Mediation offered by his *Britannick* Majeſty, for the Reconciliation of the Czar, and the new King of *Sweden*, whoſe Wife had reſigned her Crown to him: But *Peter*, not at all inclined to accept of this Mediation, choſe rather to treat of Peace with *Sweden* directly, to which a Way was paved by a Miniſter's arriving at *Peterſ-*

Peterſburgh from *Sweden*, to notify the Acceſſion of the Prince of *Heſſe-Caſſel* to the Throne. This Miniſter, in the Speech he made to his Majeſty, at his Audience, aſſured him, that his Maſter earneſtly deſired to conclude a firm and laſting Peace with him, and to maintain a conſtant Friendſhip and good Neighbourhood. The Czar anſwered, that he heartily wiſhed the King of *Sweden* Joy, on his Acceſſion to the Throne, thanked him for this Notification of it, and ſaid, he was always very far from being againſt concluding a laſting Peace with *Sweden*, and had ſtill the ſame Inclinations.

ON the 7th of *Auguſt*, the *Swediſh* Vice-Admiral, in the *Baltick*, approaching with his Squadron to reconnoitre the *Ruſſian* Fleet, commanded by Prince *Galliczin*, and not thinking the Number of Ships ſo large as it was, attacked them, and was beaten, having two Frigates taken from him, and two other ran aground, with the Loſs of one hundred and fifty Pieces of Cannon, and ſix hundred Men killed and taken Priſoners, beſides three hundred wounded. The Czar, on this Victory, ordered a Naval Triumph at *Peterſburgh*, cauſed a Medal to be ſtruck to perpetuate the Glory of the Action; preſented Prince *Galliczin* with a Sword ſet with Diamonds, to the Value of thirty thouſand Florins, and diſtributed a Sum of Money among the Officers, and Sailors, who had ſignalized their Valour.

THE Land Forces were not inactive this while, but burnt the new Town of *Uma*, in *Lapland*, and penetrating into the Country, burnt and deſtroyed two Gentlemens Houſes,

forty

forty one Villages, containing above a thouſand Houſes; ſeventeen Mills, an hundred and thirteen Magazines, and other Buildings.

DURING theſe Hoſtilities, his Czariſh Majeſty, to return the Compliment he had received from the King of *Sweden*, ſent the Adjutant General *Romanzoff* to *Stockholm*, to felicitate that Prince on his Acceſſion to the Throne, and to let him know, how true an Eſteem he always had for his Perſon, and how earneſtly he deſired to find in him the ſame Inclination to Peace that he had himſelf: Beſides this Commiſſion, he had Orders, if he found a favourable Opportunity, to propoſe an Exchange of Priſoners, and a Suſpenſion of Arms; but though no Effects of this immediately appeared, yet it was plain, by what happened in the Beginning of the next Year, that his Voyage to *Stockholm* had not been uſeleſs. The Talents he was Maſter of, had made Count *Horn* ſo ſenſible of the Czar's pacifick Diſpoſition, that Prince *Miſerſki*, who ſucceeded M. *Romanzoff*, had the Cartel granted, which was refuſed to the other.

THE SWEDISH Miniſtry now began to be convinced of the Czar's Sincerity in his Deſire of Peace, ſince, being on the conquering Side, and continually gaining Advantages over them, he did not ſeem to be under a Neceſſity of courting his Enemies to make Peace: But *Peter*'s Greatneſs of Soul was not confined to the ordinary Maxims of Policy; he ſaw in the Midſt of his Conqueſts, that his People wanted Peace, and was reſolved to undertake any thing to procure it for them. In ſhort, his Czariſh Majeſty having accepted the Mediation

diation of *France*, *Nieſtadt* was ſoon after appointed for the Place where the Congreſs was to be held, for a Treaty between the two Crowns.

WHILE this Negotiation was carrying on, his Majeſty received the agreeable News, that his Miniſter at *Conſtantinople*, had changed the laſt Treaty concluded with the *Porte*, into a Treaty for a perpetual Peace, the Ratifications of which he immediately diſpatched. About the ſame Time, he examined into ſeveral Diſorders that had crept into the Offices for the Receipt of Money, and made ſuch a Reformation therein, that he not only eaſed his People, but gained above an hundred thouſand Roubles a Year, to the Imperial Treaſury. At the ſame Time alſo, the general Tariff was prepared, which was afterwards introduced into all the Ports of *Ruſſia*; but no Buſineſs more employed his Care, than the perfecting the Canal begun below *Ladoga*, which was to make a Communication between the *Baltick Sea*, and the River *Wolga*, which falling into the *Caſpian Sea*, he was in Hopes would enable him to open a Trade with *China*, the *Indies*, and *Perſia*, and ſupply them with *European* Commodities. For this Purpoſe, he ſent certain Geographers and Aſtronomers, to take an exact Survey of the *Caſpian Sea*, of which they made a Chart, which ſhewed the Form of that Sea to be very different from what it had been repreſented to be by former Geographers. This Chart he ſent to the Royal Academy of Sciences at *Paris*, who gratefully received the Preſent, and ordered it to be preſerved in the Archives of the Academy.

SOON

Soon after this, a Peace was concluded between *Ruſſia* and *Sweden*, to the great Joy of both Nations; his Czariſh Majeſty thereupon ordered all the *Swediſh* Priſoners to be ſet at Liberty in *Siberia*, and the other remote Provinces of the Empire, and ſignify'd to them, that as it was very likely, that the *Swedes* would diſband Part of their Forces, and that perhaps, they would find no Employment in their own Country, he was willing to give them the ſame Rank in his Troops, that they had in the Service of *Sweden*; but that they ſhould be obliged to make a Declaration before the chief Officers of their own Nation, of their Acceptation of ſuch Offers, that it might not be ſaid, he had detained them contrary to their Inclinations, or againſt the Terms of the Treaty. His Czariſh Majeſty's Generoſity went ſo far as to give Letters of Recommendation to ſeveral of thoſe who returned Home, of that Valour, and of their Fidelity to their King and Country, which he had been a Witneſs to; and the King of *Sweden* paid ſuch Regard to his Recommendation, that, among others, he raiſed Rear-Admiral *Ehrenſcheild* to the Rank of Admiral on that Account: And *Peter*, at the Departure of that brave Priſoner, made him a Preſent of his Picture ſet with Diamonds. Seventeen hundred *Ruſſian* Priſoners were alſo ſet at Liberty, and ſent back from *Sweden*, where great Rejoicings were made on Account of the happy Concluſion of the Peace, which, tho' dear bought, was a valuable Purchaſe to them, as it had put an End to a War, which had al-

Peace concluded between RUSSIA *and* SWEDEN.

moſt brought them to the Brink of Deſtruction.

PETER, on his Part, ordered a Day for a Publick Thankſgiving, on which their Czariſh Majeſties went in the Morning to the great Cathedral, where, after the Liturgy, the Treaty of perpetual Peace, as concluded between the Czar, and the Crown of *Sweden*, was read in Preſence of the Miniſters of the Emperor, the Kings of *France*, and *Pruſſia*, and of the States General of the United Provinces; after which, the Archbiſhop of *Pleſkow* made an Harangue, in which he rehearſed all the glorious Exploits of his Czariſh Majeſty, and the Favours he had heaped upon his Empire and Subjects, in the Courſe of his Reign, adding, at the ſame Time, that he juſtly deſerved the Titles of *Father of his Country*, and *the Great*. This Harangue ended, the Senate advanced in a Body, and Count *Goloſkin*, Great Chancellor, made him a Speech, deſiring he would be pleaſed to accept of the Title of PETER THE GREAT, FATHER OF HIS COUNTRY, AND EMPEROR OF ALL RUSSIA.

THEN the whole Senate thrice repeated, *Long live* PETER *the Great, Father of his Country, and* EMPEROR *of all* RUSSIA, and the whole Aſſembly teſtify'd their Applauſe, join'd by the Sound of Trumpets and Kettle Drums: At the ſame Time, the Cannon were diſcharged from the Ramparts, the Admiralty, and a hundred and twenty five Gallies, that arrived the ſame Day from *Finland*. The Conduits in the Streets ran with Wine; the Night concluded with Illuminations, and Fireworks:

And

And the publick Rejoicings continued in the City of *Peterſburgh* for fifteen Days.

BARON SCHAFIROFF, the Vice Chancellor, after this, had Orders to acquaint all the Miniſters of foreign Princes, that the Title of Emperor, which his Majeſty had been requeſted, by his faithful Subjects, his Senate, and the States of his Empire to take upon him, was no new Thing, but what had been formerly given to his Predeceſſors, by ſeveral Powers of *Europe*, and ſhewed them, at the ſame Time, a Treaty made between the Emperor *Maximilian* I. and *Baſile Iwanowitz*, which was ſtill preſerved in the *Ruſſian* Archives, wherein it appeared that the Emperor ſtiled *Baſile*, EMPEROR and Dominator of all *Ruſſia*. The Subject of this Treaty, was an offenſive and defenſive Alliance, made in the Year, 1514, between thoſe Monarchs, againſt *Sigiſmond* King of *Poland*, as mentioned in the Beginning of this Volume, Page 22. PETER *takes upon him the Title of* EMPEROR.

HIS Czariſh Majeſty, not contented with the Declaration made to the foreign Miniſters at *Peterſburgh*, cauſed his own Miniſters abroad, to demand it of the Powers to whom they were ſent; ſome of whom conſented to it without any Difficulty, and ſome waited till others had ſhewn them the Example. The King of *Pruſſia*, the *States General*, and the *Grand Seignior*, were the firſt who acknowledged his new Title; but the King of *Denmark* had not the ſame Complaiſance.

THE Peace of *Neiſtadt* having removed all Obſtacles out of the Way of the Deſign, that *Peter* had to tranſfer the Trade from *Archangel* to *Peterſburgh*, the *Ruſſian* Emperor now renewed *The Trade removed from* ARCHANGEL *to* PETERSBURGH.

renewed the Orders he had formerly given; and to ſtop the Complaints of the Merchants, upon the Account of their being forced to change their Settlement, he ordered the Commiſſioners of Trade, to prepare convenient Store-Houſes, and Lodgings for them in the laſt City. This Regulation was followed by another of a very different Sort, but well worthy the ſincere Piety of ſo great a Monarch, which was his ordering the Holy Scriptures to be tranſlated into the *Ruſſian* Language, that his People might draw thoſe Advantages from the pure Fountain of true Religion, as might prevent their continuing in the many Errors and Superſtitions they were fallen into; and he expreſsly commanded all the Clergy in his Dominions, to preach no Doctrine but what was conformable to thoſe Scriptures.

HAVING made ſo many uſeful Regulations ſince the Peace, his Imperial Majeſty reſolved to go and ſhare Part of the publick Joy with his good Subjects at *Moſcow*, where it was likewiſe neceſſary to reform ſome Things. As his Imperial Majeſty was deſirous to enter this his antient City in Triumph, and, as the People were apprized of his Intentions, moſt magnificent Preparations were made for that Purpoſe; his Majeſty made his publick Entry into the City, at the Head of the *Preobrazinſki* Guards, as their Colonel, being preceded by a Company of Grenadiers, and followed by the two Lieutenant Colonels, Prince *Menzikoff*, and M. *Bouturlin*; the ſecond Regiment of Guards, and the four Regiments of *Ingria*, *Aſtracan*, *Le Fort*, and *Boutirſki*. He was

PETER's *triumphant Entry into* Moscow.

was received with the Sound of Trumpets, Drums, and a Diſcharge of the Artillery. Having paſſed thro' one *Triumphal* Arch, at the ſecond, he was complimented by the Archbiſhop of *Novogorod*, Vice-Preſident of the Synod, at the Head of the Secular, and Regular Clergy, in a Speech, which his Majeſty received graciouſly. At the third triumphal Arch, erected by Order of Prince *Menzikoff*, he ſtopt, for ſome Time, to ſatisfy the Curioſity of the Populace, who gave inexpreſſible Demonſtrations of their Joy: At the fourth, erected by the Magiſtrates, he was received by Prince *Troubiſki*, Preſident of the Magiſtracy, and by the whole Body of Magiſtrates, accompanied by a great Number of eminent Merchants, all whom his Imperial Majeſty aſſured of his Favour and Protection.

NOTWITHSTANDING the Feaſts, Balls, and other Diverſions that followed, his Imperial Majeſty held frequent Councils about the Affairs of State; and being deſirous, as his ſecond Son, *Peter Petrowitz*, was dead, to ſettle his Succeſſion upon a Prince who might follow his Maxims, and bring the great Deſigns to Perfection, which he had begun, eſpecially with regard to the civilizing his People, and reſcuing them from the barbarous Ignorance they were plunged in, he ordered publick Notice to be given, by Sound of Trumpet, to all Officers, civil and military, all natural born Subjects, and foreign Merchants inhabiting the Capital of *Moſcow*, to repair, on a certain Day, to the Caſtle Church, where as many as were in Town, being accordingly come, a Propoſal was delivered to them in

Print, ſignifying, "That it was his Imperial "Majeſty's Pleaſure, that every Man ſhould "ſwear, and give it under his Hand, that "he would not only approve the Choice his "ſaid Majeſty ſhould make of a Succeſſor, "but moreover, acknowledge the Perſon his "Majeſty ſhould propoſe for that End, as "his Emperor and Sovereign."

ALL the Grandees of the Empire were commanded to repair to *Moſcow*, to ſign this Declaration upon Pain of Death, and Confiſcation of their Eſtates, except thoſe of the Kingdoms of *Aſtracan*, and *Siberia*, who, being at ſo great a Diſtance, were to ſubſcribe before their reſpective Governors.

THE People very readily took the Oath required, and eagerly preſſed to ſubſcribe to the Will of their Emperor, well aſſured, that he would make Choice of no one but what was worthy to ſucceed him. This Point ſettled, *Peter* prepared for new Conqueſts, which the Troubles in the Eaſt, and the Peace he had concluded with *Sweden*, gave him an Opportunity to make.

SEVERAL RUSSIAN Merchants having been pillaged, and maſſacred by the *Leſgians*, a People of *Perſia*, and the *Ruſſian* Caravan from *China*, treated in the ſame Manner by the *Uſbecks*, who were Allies of *Myrr-Maghmud*, known in *Europe* by the Name of *Myrr-Weis*, and who had raiſed himſelf to abſolute Power, by obliging his Prince *Schah-Huſſein* IV. to declare him his Prime Miniſter, and Protector of *Perſia*, the Emperor *Peter* thought it proper to ſend an Ambaſſador into *Perſia*, to carry his Complaints either to the *Schah-*

Schah-Huſſein, or to *Myrr-Maghmud*, if it was true, that he had entered *Perſia* as an Enemy, ſince the *Ruſſians* had no Miſunderſtanding with the *Emir* of *Candahar*, which was the Title the Uſurper had borne before.

THE Ambaſſador of *Ruſſia*, upon his entering into *Perſia*, found the Country in a Confuſion not to be deſcribed; wherefore, he went directly to the Camp of *Myrr-Maghmud*, whom Fortune and Victory obſequiouſly followed. He had immediate Audience, for how ambitious ſoever this Rebel was, and whatever great Titles he affected, he was always free of Acceſs. The Ambaſſador declared to him the Subject of his Commiſſion, remonſtrating to him, that as his Troops joined with the *Uſbecks*, had maſſacred, without any Reaſon, the Subjects of the Emperor, his Maſter, and had robbed them of the Merchandize and Treaſures that they had brought from *China*, the Emperor of *Ruſſia* having no Quarrel with thoſe of *Candahar*, could not but look upon ſuch a Violence as contrary to the Law of Nations, and therefore had a Right to demand a proper Satisfaction.

MYRR-MAGHMUD returning an inſolent Anſwer to theſe Remonſtrances, *Peter* was no ſooner informed of it, than he gave Orders in all the Eaſtern Provinces of his Dominions to aſſemble his Troops; he armed the *Coſſacks* and the *Calmucks*, and built at *Aſtracan*, and along the *Wolga*, Barks, Gallies, and other neceſſary Veſſels for an Expedition on the *Caſpian Sea*. It was not the Contempt ſhewn by *Myrr-Maghmud* in ſending back his Ambaſſador, nor the Maſſacre of his People in

Perſia, that alone excited the *Ruſſian* Monarch to this Undertaking; but the Deſign of eſtabliſhing an uſeful Commerce, which was what he had always conſidered as the Baſis of the Grandeur and Power of his Empire, and was the great Spring of moſt of his Enterprizes. His Imperial Majeſty therefore reſolved to tranſport his Army to the Frontiers of *Perſia*, which he was reſolved to command in Perſon, and which conſiſted of above an hundred thouſand Men, among whom were above thirty thouſand of thoſe warlike Troops who had been in every Campaign during the War with *Sweden*. ON the 24th of *May*, the Emperor of *Ruſſia* ſet out, with his Empreſs, for *Colomna*, with Deſign to continue their Voyage to *Aſtracan* by Water. The Grand-Admiral *Apraxin*, Lieutenant-General *Bouturlin*, Prince *Trubeſkoi*, the Hoſpodar *Demetrius Cantemir*, and the Privy Counſellor *Tolſtoi*, being gone before.

PETER *ſets out on his Expedition to* PERSIA.

THE TURKS were no ſooner informed of the Preparations that were making in *Aſtracan*, and the other Eaſtern Provinces of the *Ruſſian* Emperor, but they took Umbrage at them; and the Baſhaws who commanded on the Frontiers of *Perſia*, and of *Georgia*, gave Advice to the *Porte*, that the Emperor of *Ruſſia* had formed a Project to ſubdue the laſt named Province, and to make himſelf Maſter of the *Caſpian-Sea*. The Grand Vizier made theſe Suſpicions known to the *Ruſſian* Miniſter at *Conſtantinople*, and ſent an Aga to his Imperial Czariſh Majeſty to diſſuade him from the Enterprize; but *Peter* took care to ſatisfy both the *Turks* and the *Perſians* of his real Deſigns,

in

in a Manifeſto, which he publiſhed and diſtributed along the Borders of the *Caſpian Sea*, wherein he declared, "That he came not "with his Land and Sea Forces on the Fron- "tiers of *Perſia*, with any Intention to reduce "ſome of the Provinces of that Kingdom to "his Obedience, but only to maintain the "lawful Poſſeſſor of them on his Throne, "and to defend him powerfully, together "with his faithful Subjects, againſt the Ty- "ranny of *Myrr-Maghmud*, and alſo to draw "Satisfaction from the ſaid *Myrr-Maghmud*, "and his *Tartars*, for the Miſchiefs and Rob- "beries by them committed within the *Ruſſi- "an* Empire."

MOREOVER the *Schah-Huſſein*, drove from his Capital by *Myrr-Maghmud*, had ſent three Expreſſes ſucceſſively to his Imperial Majeſty, to implore his Aſſiſtance, on Conditions too advantageous to the *Ruſſians*, for ſo wiſe a Prince as *Peter* to neglect. He himſelf publiſhed a Journal of this Expedition, from the Time of his ſetting out from *Aſtracan*, to his Arrival at *Derbent*, which Town with thoſe of *Terki*, and *Baku*, the moſt conſiderable on the Coaſt of the *Caſpian-Sea*, ſurrendered to him, the People receiving him joyfully where- ever he came, ſo that he made himſelf Maſter of the Provinces of *Dageſtan* and *Schirvan*.

THE Power of the *Ruſſians* in ſubduing ſo great a Part of the Country, ſomewhat diſmayed *Myrr-Maghmud*, who had a great Number of Enemies in the Boſom of *Perſia*. The Rebel alſo not able to confide in his *Tartars*, endeavoured to procure a ſtronger Support from *Conſtantinople*, and brought the Grand

Grand Seignior to the Point of declaring War with the *Ruſſians*, had not the good Offices of M. *de Bonac*, the Ambaſſador of *France*, prevented it, upon an Aſſurance that *Peter* would puſh his Conqueſts no farther, which was all that the *Porte* required, without the immediate Reſtitution of *Derbent*, as had been before demanded.

HOWEVER important theſe Affairs were, and how much ſoever his Attention was required to maintain a ſufficient Force on the Frontiers of *Poland* and *Finland*; yet theſe did not prevent the Emperor *Peter* from having a watchful Eye on the State of Affairs at Home, for he was no ſooner returned, after a Year's Abſence from *Moſcow* and *Peterſburgh*, than he diſcovered new Criminals, among ſome of the principal Perſons of the Regency, who were found guilty of Concuſſions, and condemned to ſevere Puniſhments; among the reſt Baron *Schafiroff*, the Emperor's Firſt Miniſter, and once his Favourite, was condemned to Death; but, on account of his paſt Services, had his Sentence altered, after he was brought to the Scaffold, and was only ſent into Baniſhment.

FROM Moscow his Imperial Majeſty went to *Peterſburgh*, where he viſited the Docks, and Ship-Yards, to ſee the Condition his Shipping was in, intending to put a numerous Squadron to Sea the next Summer, that he might conſtantly keep his Marine in play. In this Review he found ſeveral Pinks and Ships of Burthen, that had been taken from the *Swedes* in the laſt War, to which he joined others built in the Ports of *Livonia*, and diſtributed

diſtributed them among the Cities of *Peterſburgh*, *Riga*, *Revel*, *Wybourg*, and his other conquer'd Places, in order to have them always employed in Trade. Twelve Men were to be conſtantly kept in pay on board each Ship, eight being to be furniſhed by his Imperial Majeſty, and the other four by the Magiſtrates, who were to maintain the whole Number: But in caſe one of the Ships given by his Majeſty ſhould be loſt, or become unfit for Service, the Magiſtrates were bound to provide a new Ship in lieu thereof, of the ſame Kind and Burthen. By this Method he hoped to accuſtom his People, by little and little, to Trade and Navigation.

IN this Year [1723,] the States of *Sweden* granted the Title of *Royal Highneſs* to the Duke of *Holſtein*, which was very agreeable to *Peter*, who intended to give one of his Daughters to that Prince, and as *Sweden* had now recognized his own Title of EMPEROR, as well as *Pruſſia*, he thought it could be no longer refuſed by the King of *Denmark*, for which Reaſon he ſent an Order to his Miniſter at *Copenhagen*, to renew his Inſtances on that and other Articles; ordering at the ſame Time, the Equipment of the *Ruſſian* Fleet, and embarked on board it himſelf, ſo that the *Danes* expected to have been attacked; but the Czar deceived the Expectation of all the Speculatiſts, and contented himſelf with only exerciſing his Fleet, without going out of the Gulph of *Finland*, and then returned to *Peterſburgh*. In which City, ſoon after arrived *Iſmael Beck*, Ambaſſador Plenipotentiary from the Schah *Tahmas* or *Tahmaſed*, Son of the depoſed *Huſſein*,

Huſſein, Schah of *Perſia*; this Miniſter, knowing all that his Maſter had to fear from the *Turk* and *Myrr-Maghmud*, had frequent Conferences with his Imperial Majeſty's Miniſters to ſolicit a quick and powerful Succour. He was a Man of Spirit and not ignorant of the Intereſts of both Empires, but thought very juſtly that he ſhould never be able to obtain the Alliance he demanded, and the Succours his Maſter's Affairs had ſo much need of, without propoſing very advantageons Conditions to the *Ruſſians*, which he did accordingly, and concluded a Treaty with his Imperial Majeſty, whereby *Derbent*, *Baku*, the Provinces of *Ghilan*, *Mazanderan*, and *Aſtarabat*, were yielded to *Peter* for ever.

THE PORTE was very ſoon informed of this Treaty, with which ſhe was not at all ſatisfy'd, and look'd upon the Emperor of *Ruſſia*'s thus uniting with the Schah *Tahmas*, as an oblique Declaration of War againſt her; but the *Ruſſian* Miniſter at *Conſtantinople*, and the Marquis *de Bonac*, the *French* Ambaſſador, immediately giving Notice to *Peter* of the Diſpoſition that appeared in the Divan to declare War againſt him, he communicated in Form to the *Porte*, the Treaty he had made with the young *Schah*, inviting his Highneſs the Grand Seignior to accede to it, declaring that he would religiouſly obſerve his Treaties with the *Sublime Porte*, and that he had no other View than to aſſiſt a Prince inſulted and perſecuted by a rebellious Subject. This Declaration had ſuch an Effect, that the Divan was brought to conſent to appoint Commiſſaries to treat of a Convention between the two Empires,

Empires, with regard to the Affairs of *Perſia*, by which both the Czar's and the *Turks* Conqueſts were confirmed to them, and the latter put in Poſſeſſion of the Provinces of *Erivan*, *Tauris* and *Caſbin*.

THE Emperor PETER having thus eſtabliſhed Peace on every Side of his wide extended Empire, began to think of putting the Deſign in Execution, which he had long formed of cauſing his beloved Empreſs *Catharine* to be crowned in his antient City of *Moſcow*, of which I ſhall ſpeak in the next Volume: And that Solemnity over, his Imperial Majeſty purſued his uſual Endeavours to encourage the Commerce of his Subjects, and to advance their Skill in all uſeful Arts and Sciences. He alſo made many wiſe and neceſſary Regulations, and, as Monſ. *de Fontenelle* ſays, *dared* to retrench the Churches and Monaſteries that were too rich, and brought from thence ſeveral Millions of Roubles into the Publick Treaſury.

The Empreſs CATHARINE *crowned.*

AT the latter End of this Year [1724,] his Imperial Majeſty invited the foreign Miniſters, and others, to the Ceremony of betrothing the Princeſs *Anna Petrowna* to the Duke of *Holſtein*. The Emperor himſelf joined the illuſtrious Pair, by exchanging the Rings, giving them a Kiſs, and wiſhing them a long Life; after which the Archbiſhop of *Novogorod* gave them his Bleſſing in a few Words. Great Rejoicings were made on this Occaſion; but a ſudden Damp was put to the publick Joy by the Apprehenſions of the greateſt Calamity, that could befal the Nation, *viz.* the Loſs of that great Prince who

ANNA PETROWNA *the Emperor's Daughter betrothed to the Duke of* HOLSTEIN.

was

was truly the *Father of his Country*; for on the 16th of *January*, his Majesty was attended with a violent Cold, which brought on him a Fit of the Cholick, followed by a Strangury, which was occasioned by an Abscess in the Neck of his Bladder. He continued in great Pain for twelve Days, and then expired, on the 28th of *January*, 1725, giving all the Tokens of a perfect Resignation to the Will of Heaven, and all along behaving with the same Courage and Piety that accompanied all his Actions.

Peter falls sick.

Dies.

THE CZAR *Alexis Michaelowitz's Letters to the Duke of* Holstein, *relating to the delivering up* Timoska Ankudina.

IN the Name of Almighty God, who does all in all, and protects all Nations in good Consolations, from Him, who, by the Grace, Providence, Power, Virtue, Operation, and good Pleasure of God, to be magnify'd in the blessed Trinity, and glorious in all Eternity, hath been chosen, and holds the Scepter of the true Christian *Faith, to govern and preserve, with God's Assistance, in Peace and Quiet, without Troubles, the great Empire of the* Russians, *with all the Provinces thereunto annexed, by Conquest or otherwise. We the Grand Seignior,* Czar, *and Great Duke,* Alexei Michaelouits, *Conservator of all the* Russes, *&c. To the most mighty* Frederick, *Hereditary Prince of* Norway, *Duke of* Sleswick, Holstein, Stormarie, *and* Ditmarse, *Count of* Oldenbourg, *and* Delmenhost, *Health. In the Year* 1644. *or, according to the Calculation of* Muscovy, *in the Year* 7152. *the mentioned* Timoska

moska Ankudina, *and* Koſtka Konichou, *having robbed our Treaſure, to avoid the Death they had deſerved, departed the Countries under our Juriſdiction, to go to* Conſtantinople, *where they profeſſed the* Turkiſh *Religion. There they did ſo great Miſchief in a ſhort Time, that they were forc'd to fly, and to retreat into* Poland *and* Lithuania, *where they endeavoured to ſow Diviſions between the neighbouring Princes. To that End they went to* Theodat Chmielniſki, *General of the* Coſaques, *whom the King* John Caſimir *of* Poland, *our Brother, commanded to put thoſe Robbers into the Hands of* M. Germolitzowi, *Gentleman of his Chamber, who had Order to ſend them to* Muſcovy, *under the Conduct of* M. Peter Proteſiowi, *a Gentleman of our Retinue, as the ſaid* Chmielniſki *had made known to our* Czaarick *Majeſty. But theſe Robbers and Traitors got to* Rome, *where they embraced the* Latin *Religion. Afterwards they paſſed through ſeveral other Provinces of* Europe, *where they changed their Names, ſo as* Timoſka, *ſometimes, aſſumed that of* Zuſki, *and ſometimes that of* Sinenſis, *while* Koſtka *went under the Name of his Servant, till ſuch time as both having been known at* Stockholm, *by ſome of our Merchants of* Novogrod, *and other Places, and thereupon ſecured, one at* Reuel, *the other at* Narva, *the Governours of thoſe two Places made ſome difficulty to deliver them up to us, without expreſs Order from the Great Queen of* Sueden. *But when we had deſired the ſaid Great Queen of* Sueden, *to put thoſe Traitors into the Hands of the Gentleman whom we had ſent expreſsly for that Purpoſe, it happened that at his coming to* Reuel, *with the Orders of the ſaid Great Queen, the Governour*

had already ſuffered one of them to make his Eſcape, ſo that he could bring along with him but only the ſaid Koſtka. *We have underſtood ſince, that the other has been taken and impriſoned in the Country of* Holſtein, *wherefore we have thought fit to ſend to your Highneſs our* Poſlanick, Baſili Spilki, *accompany'd by ſome of our Subjects, with Letters from our* Czaarick *Majeſty, to intreat you, that you will be pleas'd to deliver up unto them, and to ſend to us thoſe Traitors.*

The Letters were dated the laſt of *October*, 1652. after which the Great Duke ſent another of the 5th of *January*, 1653, to the ſame effect, ſave that, at the End of the Letter, were added the Lines following. *Since that Time, there came to us, in the Month of* December *laſt*, Peter Micklaf, *of* Novogorod, *who hath informed us, how that, in purſuance of your Orders, the ſaid Traitor had been ſecured in your Ducal City of* Neuſtat, *and that upon the Remonſtrance made to you by the ſaid* Micklaf, *you had tranſlated him to* Gottorp, *to be there kept under a good and ſure Guard. Wherefore we ſend back again unto you the ſaid* Micklaf, *with Letters from our* Czaarick *Majeſty, to entreat you to deliver up the ſaid Traitor to him and* Baſili Spilki, *that he may have no further Opportunity to eſcape, and raiſe new Troubles in the World. In acknowledgment wherof our* Czaarick *Majeſty ſhall ſerve your Highneſs, in ſuch Occaſions as ſhall preſent themſelves. This Robber and Traitor to our* Czaarick *Majeſty, named* Timoſka, *is of very mean birth, the Son of a Linen-Draper that dealt only in coarſe Cloaths, named* Demki Ankudina, *of the Suburbs of* Vologda; *his Mother is called* Salmaniſka, *and his Son, who is yet living,* Tereſka.

reſka. Timoſka *was an under Officer in the* Nova Zetvert, *and he hath robb'd our Treaſury, hath kill'd his Wife, and, with his own Houſe, hath burnt ſeveral other Houſes that were near his, whereby many of our Subjects have been ruined. Wherefore knowing that he could not avoid Death otherwiſe than by Flight, he got away in the Manner we have mentioned. Given at our* Czaarick *Reſidence of* Moſcow, *the third of* January, *in the Year of the World's Creation,* 7161. *and of the Birth of our Saviour,* 1653. *After this, he alſo writ a third Letter, of the* 17*th of* October *the ſame Year, upon which the Priſoner was delivered up to thoſe, whom the Great Duke had appointed to receive him.*

The Sentence of Death read before Stenko Razin, *on the Place of Execution,* June 6, 1671. *(as mentioned in Page* 247.*)*

" THOU Villain and Renegado Rebel, " *Donſki Coſſack Stenko Razin*, in the " Year 7175, *alias* 1667, abandoning the " Fear of God, and forgetting thy Duty and " Oath, whereby thou art bound to his Ma- " jeſty, the Great Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz*, " Emperor of the *Greater* and *Leſſer*, and " the *White Ruſſia*, haſt rebelled againſt his " ſaid Majeſty; and having raiſed other " *Coſſacks*, haſt marched with them to the " River *Volga*, there to act thy villanous " Deſigns: And coming there, thou haſt " done great Miſchief to much People, ta- " king the *Naſaiſky* great Boats, laden with " Salt-fiſh and Salt, belonging to the Pa- " triarch, Cloyſters, and others; as alſo the

" Boats of many Merchants: Which Vio-
" lence and Robbery, thou haſt acted as far
" as to the very Walls of *Aſtracan*.

" AGAIN, *thou Villain*, haſt, betwixt *Aſtra-*
" *can* and the *Sorneiner*, robbed, killed, and
" thrown into the Water, the Waywood of
" the Great Czar, *Simon Bellemiſch*, who was
" ſent to ſpeak with thee. The like Villa-
" ny thou haſt committed upon the *Muſco-*
" *vian* Officer *Suſover*, that was likewiſe diſ-
" patched to thee for the ſame End.

" WHEN out of *Aſtracan* to the Town
" *Jayck* were ſent a Waywood, and two *Ruſ-*
" *ſian* Colonels, with ſome Soldiers, to confer
" with you in an amicable Way, and to per-
" ſuade you to deſiſt from your villainous
" Attempts, and to beg his Majeſty's Par-
" don, thou didſt hang both the Colonels,
" and betake thyſelf with the *Coſſacks* to Sea,
" from *Jayck*, and return from Sea into the
" *Volga*, ruining all Places of Fiſhery, and
" burning the Habitations of the *Tartars*.

" THOU *Villain*, haſt alſo been under the
" Town *Tarchi*, and haſt exceedingly en-
" damaged the adjacent Places; as alſo Part
" of the Dominions of the King of *Perſia*.
" Being upon the *Caſpian Sea*, thou didſt rob
" the Subjects of *Perſia*, and take away the
" Goods of Merchants, and their Lives alſo.
" Thou haſt alſo ruined ſeveral Towns in
" *Perſia*, and thereby cauſed great Difference
" between the two Empires. Beſides, the
" Soldiers of *Aſtracan*, upon thy Orders, have
" killed their Colonel, and joined themſelves
" to thee, doing great Miſcheif in many
" Places.

" AN.

" AN. 7177, *alias* 1669, the Governor of " *Aſtracan*, Knez *Jwan Simonowitz Proſo-* " *roſſky* ſent againſt you the Waywood Knez " *Simon Leibof*, with his Majeſty's Army, " who had girt you all about; which, *thou* " *Villain*, ſeeing, didſt diſpatch to that Way- " wood two of thy chief Confederates, pray- " ing in the Name of all the *Coſſacks*, that " his Majeſty would pleaſe to pardon them, " promiſing, that thereupon you would re- " turn Home, and act no more Miſchief, but " ſerve the Czar with all Fidelity, without " occaſioning any Difference between his Ma- " jeſty and the King of *Perſia*, as alſo with- " out taking any thing upon the *Volga*, or the " *Caſpian Sea:* Whereupon thoſe two *Coſſocks* " having taken an Oath in the Name of the " whole Body, and ſent to his Majeſty ſeven " Perſons to implore his Pardon (which was " granted) and your Forces being permitted " to go with Safety from *Aſtracan* to the " River *Don*, the Place of your Dwelling; " notwithſtanding all this, *thou Villain*, haſt " forgot the Grace and Favour of the Great " Czar, and haſt by the Way exerciſed on " the *Volga*, great Robbery, and coming to " *Tzaretſa*, beaten the Waywood, and com- " mitted enormous Outrages.

" AN. 7178, *alias* 1670, *thou Villain*, toge- " ther with thy Companions, forgetting the " Fear of God, and deſerting the Holy Ca- " tholick Apoſtolick Church, didſt, when " you were upon the *Don*, ſpeak blaſphemous " Words againſt our Lord Chriſt, and pro- " hibit to build Churches, and to perform " Divine Service in thoſe that were in Being;

" driving away all the Prieſts, and making " ſuch People as would marry, inſtead of " practiſing the uſual Ceremonies of Mar- " riage, to go round about a Tree.

" THOU *Villain*, alſo, ſlighting the Grace " of the Great Czar, vouchſafed to thee and " thy Aſſociates, haſt afreſh rebelled againſt " his Majeſty, and returned to the River *Vol-* " *ga*, acting the like Villanies, with robbing " and killing as formerly, and particularly " plundering and putting to Death ſome ho- " neſt ancient *Coſſacks*, that refuſed to join " with you, and to approve of your Actions.

" THOU haſt likewiſe killed and caſt in- " to the Water, thoſe that by the Great Czar " were ſent with Letters of Pardon to the " Captain *Cornelius Jacolowitz*, and to other " *Donſky Coſſacks*; and cauſed the reſt to be " ſo beaten, that they died of it.

" MARCHING from the River *Don* with " thy confederate *Coſſacks*, and coming to the " Town of *Tſaretza*, thou haſt fraudulently " perſuaded the People of that Place, that " the Czar's Army was coming to put them " all to the Sword; whereas on the contrary, " his Majeſty's Army went to aſſiſt that Town " againſt thee and thy villanous Practices: " Upon which ungrounded Perſuaſions, the " ſaid Town ſurrender'd themſelves to thee, " and receiv'd thee amongſt them. Enter- " ing into it, thou haſt put to the Sword " the Commander *Turgonova*, and all thoſe " Citizens, that would not be Partakers in " your Villanies, and thrown them into the " Water; and thereupon thou didſt march " out againſt the Army of the Great Czar,

" and

" and by Fraud rout the ſame, and didſt
" fling into the Water their Colonel *Jwan*
" *Lapatin*, and their Lieutenant-Colonel *Te-*
" *dor Jeckſchym*, and others, after having put
" them to very great Torments. Beſides,
" thou haſt taken away the Czar's Boats la-
" den with Rye, and robbed many Mer-
" chants; and after that thou didſt march to
" the Town *Tzornojaar*, and there kill the
" Governour *Jwan Sergeof*, and all Officers,
" and many *Moſcovian* Soldiers.

" Coming before *Aſtracan*, thou madeſt
" ſome of thy villanous *Coſſacks* enter into it,
" and by them induce the Soldiers to deliver
" up the Town, and the Boyar and Way-
" wood into thy Hands, which was done ac-
" cordingly; the *Aſtracan* Soldiers thereupon
" joining themſelves with thee, and upon
" thy Orders pulling the Boyar Knez *Jwan*
" *Simonowitz Proſoroffky*, out of the Church,
" whom thou didſt caſt down headlong from
" an high Steeple, commanding alſo his
" Brother, together with many Noblemen,
" Officers, Soldiers, and Merchants, after
" grievous Tortures, to be put to Death; and
" robbing the Houſes of God, Churches,
" and Monaſteries, as alſo the Czar's Trea-
" ſure, and many Houſes of the principal
" Citizens, and burning all the Papers of
" State in the Chancery, with the Addition
" of ſuch Scoffing, as cannot be parallel'd.

" MOREOVER, thou haſt cauſed, without
" any Shame, many Prieſts, Monks, and
" Nuns, to be ſtripp'd naked, and many
" other People beſides. Thou haſt alſo com-
" manded moſt inhumanly to be beatten ve-

" ry many, to make them confeſs where " they had hid their Treaſure, without ſpa- " ring little Children. Further, thou haſt " put to Death ſome of the chief Merchants " of the King of *Perſia*, and many other Mer- " chants, Strangers, *Perſians*, *Indians*, *Turkiſh*, " *Armenians*, and *Boucharen*, who upon the " Account of Traffick, were at that time in " *Aſtracan*; robbing them of their Goods, " and occaſioning Matter of Diſcontent to " the Great Shach of *Perſia*.

" AGAIN, *thou Villain*, haſt been inſatiable " of Blood, and continued to ſpill the moſt " innocent; and thou haſt not ſcrupled to " hang up by their Legs upon the Wall " both the innocent Children of the Boyar, " Knez *Jwan Simonowitz Proſorofſki*, and " after great Torture, to worry the one, and " ſo to beat the other, that thou thought- " eſt he could not live. And thou haſt " alſo cauſed the Clerks, that ſerved the " Great Czar, and would not conſent to thy " Deſigns, to be put to painful Deaths, com- " manding them to be hanged up by their " Ribs.

" BESIDES, *thou Villain*, after having kill'd " in *Aſtracan* many good People, haſt deliver'd " many Wives and their Daughters to be " abuſed by your confederate Miſcreants; " commanding alſo the Prieſts that they " ſhould marry none at the Metropolitan's " Order, ſcoffing at the Church of God, " and the Ordinances of the Holy Apoſtles, " and annulling the Sacrament of Marriage, " and throwing ſuch Prieſts as refuſed to " comply with thee, into the Water.

" THOU *Villain*, haſt alſo robbed the Trea-
" ſure of the Great Czar in *Aſtracan*; and
" after an Effuſion of much Blood, thou didſt
" march out of that City to *Tſarietza*, and
" thence up the River to *Tſaratof*, whoſe In-
" habitants ſurrendred themſelves unto thee;
" and there thou didſt rob the Corn-Monies
" of his Majeſty, and great Store of Provi-
" ſion, and putting to Death the Waywood
" *Koeſmakoteſin*, and many Noblemen.

" FROM *Saratof*, *thou Villain*, perſiſting in
" thy malitious Deſigns, didſt come to the
" Town *Samarof*, which alſo was ſurrendred
" to thee, and whence thou didſt carry away
" the Czar's Treaſure, putting to the Sword
" the Governor *John Alſienofſky*, and many
" Noblemen and Citizens that would not
" take your Part.

" FROM *Samarof*, thou Miſcreant, didſt
" proceed to the Town *Simbierſke*, to which
" thou laidſt a Siege, and tookſt it by Storm,
" doing much Miſchief there. Thou didſt
" alſo ſend to many other Towns ſome of
" thy villanous Companions, by falſe Wri-
" tings bearing them in Hand, that the eldeſt
" Son of our Great Czar, of glorious Memo-
" ry, our Czarawitz *Alexis Alexewitz*, Great
" Duke of the Greater, Leſſer, and the White
" *Ruſſia*, was yet living, and that thou by
" Order of his Majeſty, waſt come to put to
" Death as Traytors, all Boyars, Councellors,
" Noblemen and Officers, being in his Ma-
" jeſty's Service; whereas, on the contrary,
" the ſaid Son of our Great Czar departed
" this mortal Life, and paſs'd into the ever-
" laſting Reſt of Heaven; and that in his

" Palace, in the Preſence of his Lord Father, " in the Year 7178, *alias* 1670. the 17th of " *January*; his Corps being buried in *Moſcow* " in the Cathedral of *S. Michael*, amongſt his " Progenitors, the very next Day after his " Death, likewiſe in the Preſence of his Lord " Father the Great Czar, and of the Lords " the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, *Payſy*, and the " Patriarch of *Moſcow*, *Joſeph*, and of many " Metropolitans, Arch-Biſhops, Biſhops, Ab- " bots, and Prieſts; which Departure of our " Lord *Czarewitz* of glorious Memory, is not " only notorious here, but in other Kingdoms " alſo. But *thou Traytor* didſt deviſe this " with a Deſign to diſcompoſe the People, " and to occaſion the ſhedding of innocent " Blood.

" THOU haſt alſo craftily given out, as if " the Monk *Nikow* was with thee; whereby " thou haſt ſcandalized many; for this *Nikow* " was, by the Order of the Great Czar, ac- " cording to the Condemnation of the Patri- " arch, depoſed from his Office, and ſent to " *Beelooſer* into the Cloyſter *Verapond*, where " he yet is.

" MOREOVER, thou didſt alſo like a Vil- " lain, ſend thy Aſſociates and Traytors into " the Army of the Boyar *Knez Jurge Alexe-* " *witz Dolgoroeck*, to intice them to join in " Rebellion with thee; which Deſign yet, by " the good Providence of God, hath been " fruſtrated.

" BUT, *thou Villain*, lying about the Town " *Simbierſke*, waſt not able with all thy " Storming and Cheating to effect any thing; " foraſmuch as by the Goodneſs of God Al- " mighty,

" mighty, and the Aid of our bleſſed Lady " the Mother of God, the Comfort of the " Chriſtians, and upon the Interceſſion of the " Holy Father and Wonder-worker *Sergius*, " and by the military Strength, and the Proſ- " perity of our Great Czar *Alexis Michalowitz*, " Great Duke of all the Greater, Leſſer, and " the White *Ruſſia*, as alſo of the Highborn " Lord our Czarewitz and Great Duke *Jwan* " *Alexewitz*; and likewiſe by the prudent and " careful Conduct, and the Valour of the " Soldiery of our Great Czar; *Thou Villain* " and *Traytor*, with thy Confederates and A- " bettors, haſt been, near the Town *Simbier-* " *ſke*, and in many other Places, diſcomfited, " and with a few of thy Company didſt then " eſcape, and retreat downwards.

" In many other Places have the Inhabi- " tants, upon thy villanous Sollicitations, re- " belled, and kill'd their Governours, and " thrown them into the Water: And *thou* " *Villain* haſt joined thyſelf to the Villany of " thy Brother, and you together have fallen " into divers Frontier-places, where you have " ſhed much innocent Blood, and done great " Miſchief.

" In which your deviliſh Practices, you " perfidious *Villains*, *Stenko* and *Frolka*, toge- " ther with your Companions, did contemn " and deride the Church of God, not under- " ſtanding the Grace of the moſt Holy Mo- " ther of God, the Hope of Chriſtians, and " of the Holy Wonder-worker *Sergius*; de- " ſigning the Ruin of the Imperial City *Moſ-* " *cow*, and of the whole *Moſcovian* Empire.

" You,

" You, with all your Adherents, went ſo " far in your Wickedneſs, that you refuſed " to obey the Laws of our Great God, who " is Glorious in Trinity, and ſlighted the " Mother of our Lord Jeſus Chriſt, the Hope " of the Chriſtians; putting all your Confi- " dence in your deviliſh Practices: In which " villainous Deſign you have been engaged " ſince the Year 7175 (1667.) unto the Year " 7179 (1671.) *April* 4th; during which " Time you have ſhed ſtore of innocent " Blood, without ſparing that of poor harm- " leſs young Children.

" *April* 4th of the Year 7179. (1671) " through the great Mercy of the Almighty, " and by the wiſe Conduct and the Valour of " the Army of the Great Czar, *Alexis Micha-* " *lowitz*, *Thou Villain* waſt taken Priſoner, " and haſt been brought to his Majeſty, and " in the Examination and upon the Torture " haſt confeſſed thy Crimes: For which thy " abominable Attempts and Practices, com- " mitted againſt God Almighty, and againſt " our Great Czar, *Alexis Michalowitz*, Great " Duke and Defender of all the Greater, " Leſſer, and the White *Ruſſia*, for thy Re- " bellion and Treaſon, and for the Ruin and " Deſolation cauſed by thee to all *Ruſſia*, the " Great Czar hath commanded, and the Bo- " yars have aſſented, that thou ſhouldſt be " condemned to be Quartered."

The End of the Firſt VOLUME.

INDEX

INDEX

TO THE

FIRST VOLUME

OF THE

HISTORY of RUSSIA,

To the END of the REIGN of the

Empreſs CATHARINE.

A.

ABO, taken by *Peter* I. *p.* 351
Academy, a new one ſet up at *Peterſburgh* 358
Accaour, a Town of *Ruſſia* that yielded to the Rebel *Stenko Rezin* 242
Adrianople, the *Ottoman* Army aſſembled there 343
Aland, the Congreſs there 372, 373
——breaks up 378
Alberoni, Cardinal, Baron *Gertz* lays his Scheme for dethroning the Kings of *England* and *Poland* before him 362
Alexander, the Succeſſor of *Jeroſlaus* II an Account of his Reign 10
——dies with the Reputation of a Saint *ibid.*
——a Church built in Honour of him by *Peter* the Great *ibid.*
Alexis

Alexis Michaelowitz crowned 190
——marries 193
——the Oppreſſions of his Favourites 205, 206
——ſet upon by the People to hear their Complaints againſt *Pleſſou* one of his Favourites 207
——ſpeaks to the People himſelf to pacify them, and prevails upon them to pardon *Moroſou* another of his Favourites 214
——ſends an Envoy to *Chriſtina* Queen of *Sweden*, concerning the Diſorders committed on the Frontiers of the two States 215
——offers the *Polanders* to employ an Army in their Service, if they will give him the Crown of *Poland* 219
——makes War with *Poland* 220
——recovers the former Conqueſts of *Ruſſia* 221
——Studies the Peace and Happineſs of his People 225, 226
——cauſes an Epitome of the ſeveral Sciences to be tranſlated into the *Ruſſian* Tongue *ibid.*
——and the Laws of ſeveral Provinces to be collected into one Body *ibid.*
——builds two new Suburbs to the City of *Moſcow ibid.*
——greatly improves his Country *ibid.* & 227
——an Inſurrection raiſed in his Reign by *Stenko Razin*, a *Coſſack* Chief *ibid.* to 247
——makes an Alliance with *Michael* King of *Poland* 248
——his rude and haughty Anſwer to the Grand Seignior 250
——ſends to all the Princes of Chriſtendom to league againſt the *Turks* 253
——his Ambaſſadors well received at *Rome* and other Courts 254
——is diſſatisfy'd with the King of *Poland* 255
——reconciled and generouſly aſſiſts him with a powerful Army 256 to 258
——endeavours to get the Crown of *Poland* for his Son, upon the Death of *Michael Wieſnowiſki* 259, 260
——reſolving to put himſelf at the Head of his Army againſt the *Turks*, cauſed his Son *Theodore* to be acknowledg'd his Succeſſor 266
——dies 267
——his Wives and Children *ibid.*
Alexis Petrowitz, Son of *Peter*, goes with his Father to *Leopold* 320
——ſent to viſit ſeveral Courts of *Europe* 340
——married to the Daughter of the Duke of *Brunſwick Wolfembuttel* 348
——his ill Character and Behaviour 367
——his Crimes enquired into 368
——renounces the Succeſſion to the Crown *ibid.* & 369
——dies

——dies 371
Allard, one of the *Ruſſian* Generals 343
Alt-Ranſtadt the Treaty there ſigned between *Charles* XII. and King *Auguſtus* 318
Amilianow, a Merchant, his Avarice occaſions a Tumult in *Pleſkow* 216
Amſterdam, *Peter* enters that City incognito 293
Ankudina, ſee *Timoſka*
Anne Joanowna fourth Daughter of the Czar *John*, married to the Duke of *Curland* 339
Anjou, *Henry* Duke of, elected King of *Poland* 69
Apaka Taquin, a Prince of the *Calmuck Tartars*, *Peter* makes a Treaty with him 344
Apraxin, Admiral, ſent before *Wybourg* 340
——*Peter* Rear Admiral under him 353
——does great Damage to the *Swedes* 377
Apraxin, *Peter Matuewitz*, the great Admiral's Brother, his Daughter marry'd to *Theodore* 277
——involved in the Affair of *Czarewitz Alexis* 369
Apriſnes, a Guard of *Ruſſian* Muſqueteers ſo called 31
——broke 101
Arch-Angel, *Peter* endeavours to remove Trade from thence to *Peterſburgh* 352
——which he effects 387
Areſkine, Dr. the Czar's chief Phyſician, firſt Director of the Diſpenſary at *Moſcow* 323
Argamaks, *Perſian* Horſes ſo called 182
Arſumas, cruel Executions in that Town 243
Arſa, a Town in *Ruſſia*, yielded to the Rebel *Stenko Razin* 242
Aſtracan, taken by *John Baſilowitz* the Tyrant 34
——a vaſt Body of *Turks* and *Tartars* march to that City 61
——driven from thence by the *Ruſſian* Commander there 62
——delivered up to the Rebel *Stenko Razin* 239
——reſtored to the Czar 247
——the Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz*'s Miſtreſs and natural Son ſent thither where they both die 267
——*Peter* builds Gallies and Veſſels there for his Expedition to the *Caſpian* Sea 391
——ſets out with his Empreſs for that City 392
Augdo taken by *Everd Horn*, the *Swediſh* General 176
Auguſtus II. choſen King of *Poland* 292
——his Right ſupported by the Czar *Peter* *ibid.*
——has an Interview with *Peter* at *Birſen* 304
——drove to great Streights 305
——behaves with much Bravery, but loſes the Battle of *Cliſſau* *ibid.* 306
——is depoſed 309
——ſeizes and confines the Princes *James* and *Conſtantine Sobieſki* 310
——commands the Czar's Army,

Army, and makes *Peter* a Colonel 315, 316
——forced to renounce his Crown, and acknowledge *Stanislaus* as lawful King of *Poland* 318
——is invited to re-aſcend the Throne 336
——agrees to a Suſpenſion of Arms with *Sweden*, which was not at all agreeable to *Peter* 349
Azoph, beſieged by *Peter* 289
——ſurrendered to him 290

B.

Balthi, a famous Cham of the *Tartars* 9
Baſile Demetrowitz ſucceeds his Father *Demetrius* 13
——taking Advantage of the Miſery to which *Timur-Beck* had reduced the *Tartars*, he drives them out of *Ruſſia* *ibid.*
——having ſome Suſpicion of his Wife's Virtue, he leaves his Son, at his Death, only the Principality of *Uglitz*, and all the reſt of his Dominions to his Brother *Gregory* *ibid.*
Baſile II. ſucceeds his Uncle *Gregory*, whoſe Sons take up Arms againſt him 14
——falls into the Hands of his Enemies who baniſh him, and put out both his Eyes *ibid.*
——brought back by the Boyars, where he reigned till the Time of his Death, with the Sirname of *Czicmnoy* or the Blind *ibid.*
Baſile Iwanowitz III. ſucceeds his Father, and changes his Name from *Gabriel* 17
——contents himſelf at firſt with the Title of Adminiſtrator as long as his Nephew lives *ibid.*
——loſes a great Battle in *Livonia* 19
——reunites *Pleſkow* to his Empire 20
——makes himſelf Maſter of *Smolenſko* 21
——receives a Letter giving him the Title of Emperor from *Maximilian* I. Emperor of *Germany* 22
——forced to abandon his Capital and conſents to pay an annual Tribute to the *Tartars* 24
——is ſoon revenged on them 25, 26
——dies 27
——his Wives and Children *ibid.* 28
——the Conqueſts he made along the Coaſts of the Frozen Sea *ibid.* 29
Battori, Stephen, Prince of *Tranſilvania*, elected King of *Poland* 69
——endeavours to bring *Magnus*, King of *Livonia*, over to his Intereſts 71
——makes War with the *Ruſſians* 75
——takes *Polocsk* 77
——and makes other Conqueſts *ibid.* 78 to 92
——concludes a Peace with the Czar 93
——dies 104
Batturin the Capital of the *Hettman* of the *Coſſacks* burnt

burnt to the Ground 328
Bekewitz, Prince *Alexander*, his unfortunate Expedition to the *Caſpian Sea* 367
Berlin, the Czar *Peter* and the Czarina arrive there 366
Bielki, the Knez *Bogdan*, Tutor to *Demetrius* the Son of *John Baſilowitz*, his Character 100
——ambitious Deſigns 101, 102
——overthrown *ibid.*
Birſen, *Peter* and *Auguſtus*, have an Interview there 304
Black Ruſſia, what Part of the Country ſo called 8
Bog, King of *Sweden* comes to that River in his Way to *Turky* 332
Boris, ſee *Gudenow*
Boriſthenes, or *Dnieper*, *Igor* Maſter of all the Country along the Eaſtern Borders thereof 3
——King of *Sweden* paſſes that River to run headlong on his own Ruin 326
Brugman of *Hamburg*, Ambaſſador from the Duke of *Holſtein* to the Czar 225
Brunſwick, the ineffectual Congreſs there 352
Bulgaria, antiently called *Thrace*, *Swatoſlas* enters that Province 5
Buſmanoff, *Peter*, goes over with a Part of the *Ruſſian* Army to the falſe *Demetrius* 129
——ſent to receive the Bride of *Demetrius* coming from *Poland* 140
——is killed by Conſpirators 142

C.

Camiſkinka, the River 297
Carmarthen, Marqueſs of, the Czar *Peter* much pleaſed with his Converſation 295
Caſan, beſieged by *John Baſilowitz* the Tyrant 30
——taken 33
Caſimir, elected King of *Poland* 219
——irritates the King of *Sweden*, by imprudently endeavouring to prevail upon *Chriſtina* to proteſt againſt her Abdication 221
——quits the Throne of *Poland* 248
Chancellour, *Richard*, goes with an *Engliſh* Ship to *Archangel* 36
——carry'd to *Moſcow* and well received by the Czar *John Baſilowitz* 37
——makes a ſecond Voyage to *Ruſſia*, and at his Return drowned on the Coaſt of *Scotland* *ibid.*
Charles, Duke, his Miſunderſtanding with his Brother *John* King of *Sweden* 105
——becomes Regent in the Abſence of his Nephew *Sigiſmund* King of *Poland* 110
——endeavours to keep his Nephew out of the Throne of *Sweden* 115
——makes an Alliance with the Czar *Boris Gudenow* *ibid.*
——becomes King of *Sweden*

den by the Title of *Charles* IX. 116
——makes an Alliance with the Czar *Zuski* *ibid.*
——dies 173
Charles Philip, second Son of *Charles* IX. King of *Sweden*, proposed to succeed *Wladislaus* as Czar of *Russia* 172
——invited into that Kingdom 174
——but misses the Crown *ibid.*
Chmielnisti, General of the *Cossacks*, protects *Timoska Ancudina* the Impostor 196
Christina Queen of *Sweden*, an Envoy sent from *Russia* to her 216
Cisna, a River in *Russia*, the City of *Wolodimir* built thereon 6
Cissau, the Battle fought near that Place 305
Cuerniew, *Nicholas*, one of the two Jesuits who directed the Impostor *Demetrius* in every Thing 137
Colville, Captain, the first who carry'd an *English* Ship into the Harbour of *Cronslot* 311
——the Czar *Peter*'s extraordinary Behaviour towards him 312
Constantine, Emperor of *Constantinople*, sends Presents to *Wolodimir* II. and acknowledges him for Czar 7
Copenhagen, the Czar *Peter* and the Czarina there 361
Coresch, a Town belonging to the *Drewlians*, near which they destroy'd *Igor* 2
——the Princess *Olha*, in this Town caused five thousand of the Chief of the *Drewlians* to be massacred in revenge of her Husband's Death 4
Corsa, the Name of one of the Idols worshipped at *Kiew* 6
Cossacks, their Original 121, to 123
——they join the *Poles* to support the false *Demetrius* 125
——propose to put themselves under the Protection of the *Russians* 188, 189
——revolt from the *Poles* 218
——seek Protection from the *Turk*, and some from the Czar 219
——two Sorts, the *Zaporoski* and the *Donski* 227
——the *Zaporoski Cossacks* revolt from *Poland* 248
——the *Donski Cossacks* employed by *Peter* in the Siege of *Azoph* 289
——above fifty thousand in *Black Russia* to join the Party of *Augustus* 314
——thirty or forty thousand join the Czar at *Smolensko* 317
Couvanski, President of the Strelitzes, his Ambition 280
——and Punishment 281
Cronslot, or *Cronstadt*, the Fort so called built by *Peter* 307
Croomy upon the *Occa* besieged 126
Croy, Duke *de*, commands the Army of the Czar *Peter*

Peter 302
Czar, the Meaning of that Word 7
Czarnanapata, the Rencounter there 326
Czcherin, the Residence of the Rebel *Coſſack Doroſenko* 260
—— ſet Fire to 261
Czeremetoff the Archbiſhop of *Roſtow*'s Letter to him 166
—— his artful Management to get his Nephew *Michael Theodorowitz* on the Throne of *Ruſſia* 167, 168
Czeremetoff, the Velt Mareſchal in *Lithuania* 313
—— goes into *Pomerania* 358

D.

Dageſtan, *Peter* makes himſelf Maſter of that Province 393
Daniel, the Succeſſor of *Alexander*, ſome Account of his Reign 10, 11
Dantzick, *Peter* comes thither 293
—— continues there three Months, and celebrates the Marriage of his Niece and the Duke of *Mecklenbourg* 360
Demetrius, the Son of *George* 10
Demetrius Michaelowitz 11
Demetrius Iwanowitz *ibid.*
Demetrius, the ſecond Son of *John Baſilowitz* the Tyrant, left under the Tutelage of the Knez *Bielki* 100
—— aſſaſſinated 106
Demetrius, the firſt Impoſtor of that Name in the Houſe of a *Lithuanian* Nobleman, pretends himſelf to be the real Son of *John Baſilowitz* 117
—— ſent into *Poland* to the Palatine of *Sendomir*, who promiſes him his Aſſiſtance 118
—— ſome Particulars related for, and againſt the Truth of what has been ſaid of the Story of this *Demetrius* 119, 120
—— the *Coſſacks* declare in his Favour 121
—— his Army put to flight 125
—— but loſes not his Courage *ibid.*
—— gains a Battle, and gives Quarter to the Soldiers, to ingratiate himſelf into their Favour *ibid.* 126
—— regarded as an Impoſtor by the *Ruſſians* 127
—— a great Number of *Ruſſians* go over to him 129
—— is received into *Moſcow* 130
—— proclaimed Czar *ibid.*
—— ſends a pompous Embaſſy into *Poland* 131, 132
—— baniſhes about ſeventy Families allied to the Czar *Boris* 132
—— the People diſſatisfy'd with him *ibid.*
—— ſeizes the Knez *Zuſki*, who was at the Head of the diſcontented Party 133
—— and pardons him *ibid.*
—— forgets nothing to gain the Affection of the Peo-

ple *ibid.*
—— causes a new Species of Money to circulate among them *ibid.*
—— ſends for the Czarina, Widow of *John Baſilowitz*, to court *ibid.* 134
—— the Manner of his receiving her *ibid.*
—— marries a *Poliſh* Lady 136
—— the People murmur againſt him 139
—— takes the imprudent Reſolution of diſbanding his foreign Guards *ibid.*
—— is ſeized by the Conſpirators againſt him 143
—— killed 144
Demetrius, a ſecond Impoſtor of that Name ſtarts up 152
—— the Town of *Putivl* declares for him 153
—— vaniſhes 154, 155
Demetrius, a third Impoſtor of that Name *ibid.*
—— is favoured by the Palatine of *Sendomir*, to revenge himſelf on *Zuſki* 157
—— acknowledged by the Widow of the firſt *Demetrius*, Daughter of the Palatine of *Sendomir*, for her Huſband 158
—— is abandoned by the *Poles* 159
—— maſſacred 160
Demetrius, a fourth Impoſtor takes that Name *ibid.*
—— ſends an Ambaſſador to the King of *Sweden* 161
—— hanged 171
Demetrius, a fifth Impoſtor of that Name, pretending to be the Son of the ſecond *Demetrius* 171
—— drowned with his Mother *ibid.*
Demſko, Ankudina, the Father of *Timoſka* 194
Derbent ſurrendered to *Peter* 393
Dolgorucki, the Knez *George Alexiowitz*, hangs the Brother of *Stenko Razin* 227
—— beats that Rebel's Forces tho' they fought with great Bravery 243
Doroſenſko, a Chief of the *Zaporoſki Coſſacks*, occaſions great Diſorders in the Kingdom of *Poland* 248 to 250
—— ſets Fire to *Czeberin*, and is ſhut up in the Caſtle by the *Ruſſians* 261
—— preſſes the Grand Seignor to ſend an Army into the *Ukraine* 264
—— the Grand Seignor ſends him Succours *ibid.*
—— which being cut off, he is ſo much exaſperated, that he joins with the *Turk*, and lays waſte almoſt all the *Ukraine ibid.*
—— taken 270
—— his Character *ibid.* 271
Dorzowſki Tartars 344
Doſſifei, Biſhop of *Roſtoff*, concerned in the Czarewitz's Conſpiracy 369
Drewlians, the ſame who are now called *Donſki Coſſacks* 3
—— deſtroy *Igor* in an Ambuſcade *ibid.*
—— ſeverely puniſhed for it by the Princeſs *Olha* his Widow 4

Dunamudenſkautz taken by *Peter* 340
Dunkirk, *Peter* goes to view that Fortreſs 363

E.

Elbing, a conſiderable Town in *Poliſh Pruſſia*, taken by *Peter* 339
Elboff, *Simeon Iwanowitz*, Commander in Chief of an Expedition againſt the Rebel *Stenko Razin* 237
Emperor, that Title given to the Czar *Baſile Iwanowitz*, by *Maximilian* I. Emperor of *Germany* 22
—— *Peter* takes that Title at the Requeſt of the Senate 386, 387
—— *Peter* demands the Recognition of it from foreign Powers *ibid.*
Eric XIV. comes to the Throne of *Sweden* 46
—— depoſed 60
—— put to Death by his Brother King *John* 68
Eudocia, the beautiful Daughter of a poor Nobleman, married to the Czar *Michael Theodorowitz* 178 to 180
Euphroſine, Miſtreſs of the Czarewitz *Alexis*, makes an open Confeſſion of what ſhe knows concerning his Behaviour 369

F.

Felin in *Livonia*, beſieged by the *Ruſſians* 45
Fort, M. *Le*, taken in favour of the Czar *Peter* 286
—— his Death 300
Frederick, Duke of *Holſtein Slefwick*, ſends an Ambaſſador to *Michael Theodorowitz* 187
France, the Czar *Peter* goes thither 363
Fredrickſhall in *Norway*, *Charles* XII. killed there 373
Frolka, Brother to *Stenko Razin* taken 246
—— obtains the Czar's Pardon, on a Promiſe to diſcover where his Brother had hid his Treaſure 247
Furſtemberg, *William* of, Grand Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order 45
—— defends himſelf againſt the *Ruſſians*, at the Siege of *Felin* 46
—— carried to *Moſcow* *ibid.*

G.

Gabriel, Son of *John Baſilowitz* the *Victorious*, ſucceeds his Father, and takes the Name of *Baſile* 17
Gadebuſch, the Battle there 349
Galliczin, Prince, the Favourite of the Princeſs *Sophia* 280
Gardie, *Peter de la*, the *Swedes* under his Command, do much Miſchief to the *Ruſſians* in *Livonia* 68
Gardie, *Pontus de la*, married to the Daughter of *John*, King of *Sweden* 84
—— his Conqueſts in *Livonia* *ibid.* & 85
—— periſhes unfortunately

at Sea 104
Gardie, Pontus de la, commands a Body of Troops ſent by the King of *Sweden* to the Succour of the Czar *Zuſki* 158
—— ill recompenced for it 171, 172
—— forces the *Ruſſians* of *Novogorod* to offer the Crown to the Son of the King of *Sweden* 173
George, Danielowitz, ſucceeds his Father *Daniel* 11
Gortz, Baron, chief Miniſter of *Charles* XII. his Projects 362
Goſenſki, Alexander, Ambaſſador from *Sigiſmund* I. King of *Poland*, arrives at *Moſcow* 141
—— refuſes to aſſiſt at the Czar's Nuptials, unleſs the ſame Diſtinction is ſhewn him as was paid to the *Ruſſian* Ambaſſador at *Cracow* *ibid.*
Goſtomiſles, a Citizen of *Novogorod* who recommended *Rurick*, and his two Brothers to the Government of *Ruſſia* 2
Gregory Demetrowitz, left Heir to the *Ruſſian* Dominions by his Brother, notwithſtanding he had a Son of his own 13
—— at War with the *Poles*, during the whole Time of his ſhort Reign 14
—— at his Death declares his Nephew his Succeſſor excluding his own two Sons *ibid.*
Griſka Utropoja, ſaid to be the real Name of the firſt Impoſtor who called himſelf *Demetrius* 119
Gudenow, Boris, his Siſter married to the Czar *Theodore Iwanowitz* 103
—— aſſumes to himſelf the ſovereign Authority which he exerciſes in the Name of his Maſter 105
—— cauſes the Czar's Brother *Demetrius* to be aſſaſſinated that he may ſecure the Succeſſion of the Crown to himſelf 106
—— ſets Fire to the City of *Moſcow*, to take off the Attention of the People from enquiring into his murdering *Demetrius* 107, 108
—— is ſuſpected of poiſoning the Czar *Theodore* 111
—— dies 126
—— buried near the other 127
—— his Body removed by *Demetrius*, who ordered his Palace to be pulled down to the Ground 131
Gudenow, John, a Relation of *Boris*, and General of his Army, ſtops the Rapidity of *Demetrius*'s Conqueſt 124
—— deceived by General *Zapotſki* 129
—— abandoned by his Army and taken *ibid.*
Guſtavus Vaſa, King of *Sweden*, promiſes *Henry Galen*, the Grand Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order, to aſſiſt him againſt the *Ruſſians* 39
—— being diſappointed by the *Poles* and *Livonians*, drives the Enemy out of his

his own Country, and leaves his faithleſs Allies expoſed to the *Ruſſians* 40
—— dies 46
Guſtavus Ericſon, Son of *Eric* XIV. 115
—— refuſes the Daughter of the Czar 116
—— dies in Priſon *ibid.*
Guſtavus Adolphus ſucceeds his Father *Charles* IX. King of *Sweden* 173
—— has a Deſire to become Czar, and join the *Ruſſian* Empire to the Crown of *Sweden* *ibid.*
—— enters into a War with *Ruſſia* 176
—— makes an advantageous Peace with her 177
Gyllembourg, Count, put under an Arreſt at *London* 363

H.

Heer-Mieſter, the Grand General of the *Teutonick* Order ſo called 18
Helena, the Wife of *Baſile Iwanowitz* 27
Henry, ſee *Anjou*
Herman Falox, Grand Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order 10
Holland, the Republick of, ſend Ambaſſadors to the Czar *Michael Theodorowitz* 181
—— the Czar ſends an Officer, named *Leſly*, to purchaſe Arms and Ammunition there, and an Ambaſſador to demand Succours of Men and Money 185
—— the Czar *Peter* arrives there 293
—— *Peter* leaves that Country 295
—— the ſame Monarch returns thither 298
—— *Peter* comes again into that Country 363
Holowizin, the Battle there 326
Holſtein, the Duke of, the Czar *Peter*'s Daughter, *Anna Petrowna*, betrothed to him 397
Horn, *Henry*, Governour of *Revel*, defends that Town bravely 70
—— killed 177
Human, a great City of *Podolia*, beſieged and taken by the *Turks* 265

J.

Jacoloff, *Cornelius*, firſt ſtops *Stenko Razin*, and conveys him to *Moſcow* 246
Jaick, a Town taken by *Stenko Razin* 228
Jamagorod, a Town ſack'd and burnt by the *Ruſſians* 109
—— taken by the *Swedes* 174
Jaſykow, chief Favourite of the Czar *Theodore Alexowitz* 277
Jeroſlaws, one of the ten Sons of *Wolodimir* I. having vanquiſhed all his Brothers, takes upon him the Title of Monarch of all *Ruſſia* 7
Jeupalch, the eldeſt Son of *Swatoſlas* deſtroys his ſecond Brother *Olegas*, and is himſelf put to Death by *Wolodimir*

Woladimir his younger 5
Igor ſucceeds his Father *Rurick* 3
—— deſtroyed by the *Drewlians* *ibid.*
Ilmen, the People about that Lake the moſt powerful of the *Ruſſians* 9
Innocent III. Pope, the Knights of the *Short-Sword* eſtabliſhed by his Authority 8
John Danielowitz ſirnamed *Kalita*, made Prince of *Ruſſia* 11
John Baſilowitz, the *Victorious*, ſucceeds his Father *Baſile* II. 14
—— ſhakes off the Yoke of the *Tartars* 15
—— takes the Title of Great Duke *ibid.*
John Baſilowitz, the *Tyrant*, comes to the Throne of *Ruſſia* 29
—— endeavours to civilize his People *ibid.*
—— marches at the Head of his Army to beſiege *Caſan* 30
—— but is forced to raiſe the Siege by a Mutiny among his Troops 31
—— returns Home and puniſhes the Mutineers 32
—— ſends a whimſical Petition to his Secretary, to raiſe freſh Troops *ibid.*
—— takes *Caſan* 33
—— takes *Aſtracan* 34
—— cauſes himſelf to be declared Emperor of the *Tartars* 35
—— forms the Deſign of ſubduing *Livonia* 39
—— takes *Narva* 43
—— demands the Siſter of the King of *Poland* in Marriage 48
—— is groſly affronted by that Nation *ibid.*
—— takes a dreadful Oath to be revenged on them 49
—— enters into *Lithuania*, and takes the ſtrong Town of *Polocsk* *ibid.* to 51
—— is deceived by the *Poles* fair Promiſes, and returns to his own Dominions *ibid.*
—— finds the *Ruſſian* Nobles engaged in a Plot againſt him *ibid.* and 52
—— pretends an Inclination to renounce the Crown, and retire to a Cloyſter *ibid.*
—— but being intreated to return to his Capital which he had quitted, and gone as far as *Slaboda*, he conſents upon Condition that the Senate and others, take a new Oath of Fidelity and Obedience to him *ibid.* 53
—— begins to revenge himſelf on the Conſpirators, which he does in a moſt cruel and unheard of Manner *ibid.*
—— at *Novogorod*, *Pleſkow*, *Tweer* and *Narva* *ibid.* to 55
—— returns to *Moſcow*, where he orders eighteen new Gibbets to be erected, and executes his Chancellor and *Great Treaſurer* *ibid.*
—— put his own Brother, Prince

Prince *George* to Death 56, 57
—— and after the Princeſs his Wife 58
—— pretends to repent, and performs ſeveral Acts of Devotion *ibid.*
—— ſends another Army into *Lithuania* 59
—— writes an obliging Letter to *John*, the new King of *Sweden*, to keep him quiet, being informed of a new Armament, making by the *Turks*, and deſigned againſt *Ruſſia* 61
—— receives an Account of the *Turks* being beaten, and, at the ſame Time, a new Embaſſy from *John*, King of *Sweden*, which he liſtens to but cooly, having formed the Deſign of bringing all *Livonia* under his Subjection 62, 63
—— finding the *Livonians* have an Averſion to the *Ruſſians*, he propoſes to make *Magnus*, Brother to the King of *Denmark* their King 64
—— obliges *Magnus* to pay him an annual Tribute, and acknowledge him for his Protector 66
—— ſends an Army into *Livonia*, to put his new King in Poſſeſſion of the Throne he had given him *ibid.*
—— diſcovers ſeveral Conſpiracies againſt him at *Moſcow*, and puniſhes the Authors of them *ibid.* 67
—— commands an Army himſelf of eighty thouſand Men in *Livonia*, takes ſeveral Places, and then goes to *Novogorod*, to the Nuptials of Duke *Magnus* 68
—— goes with his Son *Theodore* before *Revel*, but is forced to raiſe the Siege 70
—— diſcovers a Correſpondence carrying on between Duke *Magnus*, and *Stephen* King of *Poland* 71
—— inveſts *Werden*, the Reſidence of *Magnus*, ſtrips him of all his regal Ornaments, and would have put him to Death if he had not made an abject Submiſſion *ibid.* 72
—— enters into a War with *Stephen* King of *Poland* 75
—— is deſirous, after much ill Succeſs, to make Peace 79
—— applies to the Pope to become Mediator 84
—— is greatly irritated againſt ſeveral great Men, who make a Remonſtrance to him concerning the State of the Nation, and deſire him to put his eldeſt Son at the Head of his Army 91
—— kills his Son with the Blow of a Stick 92
—— his great Concern for it 93
—— his Death 96
—— his Character 97
John, Duke of *Finland*, depoſes his Brother, and takes the Crown of *Sweden* 60
—— full of the Project of re-eſtabliſh-

re-eſtabliſhing the *Roman* Catholick Religion in *Sweden* 68
——entirely governed by *Poſſevin* the Jeſuit, ſent to him by Pope *Gregory* XIII. 70
——more employed about the Affairs of Religion than War 105
——dies 110
John Alexowitz, ſet aſide in the Succeſſion, by his Brother *Theodore* 278
——proclaimed Czar, in Conjunction with *Peter* 280
——has only the Name of Czar, without any Authority 285
Jovius Paulus, the Character he gives of *John Baſilowitz* 29
Iwanogorod, built by *John Baſilowitz* the *Victorious* 42

K.

Kargapol, the Mountains thereof antiently one of the Boundaries of *Ruſſia* 8
Kettler, *Gothard*, his Coadjutor, *William* of *Furſtemberg*, reſigns the Grand Maſterſhip of the *Teutonick* Order entirely to him 45
——made Duke of *Courland* and *Semigal* 47
Kexholm, taken by *Pontus de la Gardie* 172
Kiow, formerly a Sovereign Prince of that Province 9
——conquered by the *Poles* 11
Kokenhauſen, taken by *Joh.* *Baſilowitz* 68
Kowur, *John*, Governour of *Reſan*, his good Behaviour in preſerving the Place 25
Kurſel, *Nicholas*, endeavours to make himſelf Maſter of *Revel*, but fails in his Attempt 65
——his Head cut off *ibid.*

L.

Ladoga, the City of, taken by *Pontus de la Gardie*, the *Swediſh* General 172
Lapotinſcki, *Baſile*, ſent Ambaſſador from *Stephen Battori* King of *Poland*, to the Czar *John Baſilowitz* 73
——his couragious Behaviour in ſupport of his Maſter's Dignity *ibid.* 74
Leopold, the Emperor of *Germany*, *Peter* has a private Audience of him 298
Leſly, Major General 377
Lexno, the Battle there 328
Lintſki, *Michael*, Uncle to the Czarina *Helena*, has the Guardianſhip of his Great Nephew, *John Baſilowitz* in his Minority 28
——is committed to Priſon, and dies there *ibid.*
Lithuania, the Conqueſts of *John Baſilowitz* the *Victorious* in that Province 15, 16
——the ſame Prince lays a great Part of that Country waſte 21
——*Demetrius*, the firſt Impoſtor of that Name, entertained by *Adam Wiſniowieſki*

nowiecki, a great Lord of that Province 119
—— the *Russians* enter into the very Heart of this Province, and besiege *Vilna* 220
—— the *Swedes* by Treaty with *Poland*, appropriate that great Duchy to themselves 222
—— the Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz*, proposes to unite *Poland* and that Duchy to *Russia* 259
—— *Peter* orders Troops to advance towards that Duchy, to keep it in the Interest of *Augustus*, just then elected King of *Poland* 292
—— *Peter* and *Augustus* meet at *Birsen*, a small Town in that Province 304
—— *Peter* enters that Province at the Head of his Army 313
—— *Charles* XII. drives the *Russians* from thence 317
—— the King of *Sweden* being in Motion to enter that Province, *Peter* hastens thither to oppose him 324
Livonia, the Christian Religion not being established there, Pope *Innocent* III. allowed the Knights of the *Short Sword*, the third Part of what they conquered from the Infidels of that Province 8
—— the *Russians* always desirous to add this Province to their Empire 18
—— desolated by Civil Wars 39
—— annexed to the Crown of *Poland* 47
—— divided among four Powers *ibid.*
Lowitz, *Andrew*, a Jesuit, in the Court of *Demetrius*, whom he consulted in every Thing 137
Lublin, the Assembly met there, declare the Throne of *Poland* vacant 321
Lutzen taken by *John Basilowitz* 71

M.

Achmet Girey, Cham of the *Crim Tartars*, Son and Successor of *Mendli Girey* 23
—— comes to *Moscow*, and endeavours to seize on that Capital, by the help of *Jaskowitz*, a *Polish* Lord 24
Madagascar, the Pirates there offer their Service to the King of *Sweden* 363
Magnus, Duke of *Holstein*, Brother of the King of *Denmark*, pretends to a Part of *Livonia* 47, 48
—— made King of *Livonia* 64
—— marries a Princess of the Blood of *Russia* 68
—— enters into a private Treaty with the King of *Sweden* 71
—— which is discovered by the Czar *ibid.*
—— is stripped of his Regal Dignity, and makes an abject Submission 72
Malusha, the Mother of *Wolodimir* I. prevails upon her

her Son to be baptized 6
Maximilian of *Auſtria*, elected King of *Poland* 104
—— obliged to renounce the Crown 105
Mazeppa, Hettman of the *Coſſacks*, enters into a private Treaty with the King of *Sweden* 327
—— ready to deliver up his Capital to *Charles* XII. but prevented by his Soldiers 328
—— hung in Effigy *ibid.*
—— the Czar offers a Reward for taking him dead or alive 334
Mendli Gerey, Cham of the *Crim Tartars* 23
Menefius a *Scotchman*, Governour to *Peter* 283
Menzikoff, Prince, has three Horſes ſhot under him 330
—— gets great Glory in *Pomerania* 351
Meſchanſkoja, the old and new, the Names of two Suburbs at *Moſcow*, built by *Alexis Michaelowitz* 226
Meyerfeldt, Count, Governour of *Swediſh Pomerania*, refuſes to ſubmit to the Sequeſtration of that Country into the Hands of the King of *Pruſſia* 356
—— afterwards agrees to it 357
Michael Wiſnowieſki, choſe King of *Poland* 248
—— dies 258
Miloſlauſki, the Boyar *Ilia Daniclowitz*, becomes Father-in-Law to the Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz* 193
—— with *Moroſow* and *Pleſſow*, governs the *Ruſſian* Empire *ibid.*
Mordvate Tartars ſeparated from the *Ruſſians* by the River *Occa* 8
Moſcow, the Reſidence of the *Ruſſian* Princes, tranſlated thither by *Alexander* the Son of *Jeroſlaws* II. 10
—— the Citadel there built by *Daniel Alexandrowitz* *ibid.*
Mullern, Chancellor, his Advice to the King of *Sweden* to croſs the *Dnieper* 331
Muſcovites, a Name given to the *Ruſſians*, by Strangers, but what they are not fond of themſelves 11
Muſtapha II. Emperor of the *Turks*, his firſt Campaign 289

N.

Nancklyn, the Czar's Ambaſſador in *Poland* 80
Naraſkin, *Cariloff*, his Daughter married to *Alexis Michaelowitz* 267
Narva, where ſituated 42
—— taken by the Czar *John Baſilowitz* 43
—— the *Swedes* make an Attempt upon that Town 70
—— beſieged by *Boris Gudenow* 109
—— the Czar *Peter* appears before it with an hundred thouſand

thouſand Men 301
—— taken by *Peter* 311
Neutrality, a Scheme entered into, to preſerve the King of *Sweden*'s Dominions in *Germany* 341
Newel taken 82
Nils Dublare, a *Swediſh* Captain, preſerves the Caſtle of *Revel* for his Maſter 65
Norris, Sir *John*, meets *Peter* at *Amſterdam* 366
—— comes into the Road of *Copenhagen* 377
—— ordered to join the *Swediſh* Fleet 381
Novogorod Welcki, the Grandeur thereof 15, 16
—— the People of that Town treated with great Barbarity 53
Nyenbuyſen, the Siege thereof miraculouſly raiſed 18
—— taken by the Czar, *John Baſilowitz* 43

O.

Occa, the River, *Ruſſia* at firſt extended no farther towards the Eaſt 8
Oſtiga, ſome of *Stenko Razin*'s Emiſſaries taken and hanged in that Town 240
Olegas, made Chief of the *Drewlians*, by his Father *Swatoſlas* at his Death 5
—— deſtroyed in an Ambuſcade laid for him by his Brother *Jewopalch ibid.*
Olha the Wife of *Igor* 3
—— governs the *Ruſſians* in the Minority of her Son *Swatoſlas* *ibid.*
—— revenges herſelf on the *Drewlians*, for the Death of her Huſband 4
—— is baptized at *Conſtantinople* by the Name of *Helena* *ibid.*
—— dies not till the 80th Year of her Age *ibid.*
—— her Memory annually celebrated by the *Ruſſians* to this Day *ibid.*
Ottokeſa Fedorowna, the Daughter of *Feodor Abrahamowitz*, married to the Czar *Peter* 284
—— divorced 288
Owezina, *John*, the Gallant of the Czarina *Helena*, Mother of *John Baſilowitz* the Tyrant, put to Death 28
Oxenſtiern, the Governour of *Revel*, made Priſoner, by *Nicholas Kurſel* 65
—— ſet at Liberty *ibid.*

P.

Pereſlaw, the Seat of the Emperor eſtabliſhed there, by *Swatoſlas* 5
Peran, the God of Fire, an Idol among the antient *Ruſſians* 6
Peter appointed Succeſſor, by his Brother *Theodore* 278
—— comes to the Throne 280
—— diſcovers a great Genius 283
—— marries 284
—— a Conſpiracy againſt his Life *ibid.*
—— enters into the Army as a Drummer 287
—— made a Serjeant *ibid.*
—— regu-

—— regulates his Revenues *ibid.*
—— repudiates his Wife 288
—— gives the firſt Riſe to Ship Building in *Ruſſia ibid.*
—— his firſt Campaign 289
—— becomes an Enſign *ibid.*
—— takes and ſinks ſeveral *Turkiſh* Veſſels 290
—— ſets out on his Travels 291
—— comes to *Holland* 293
—— enters himſelf as a common Carpenter in the *Eaſt India* Company's Ship Yard 294
—— comes to *England* 295
—— returns to *Holland*, and goes from thence to *Vienna* 297, 298
—— another Conſpiracy formed againſt him, obliges him to go Home again *ibid.*
—— ſettles his Army and Navy 299
—— buries his great Favourite M. *le Fort* 300
—— declares War with the King of *Sweden* 300, 301
—— appears before *Narva*, with 100,000 Men *ibid.*
—— becomes a Lieutenant 302
—— reforms the Cuſtoms, and Manners of his People 303
—— retrenches the Equipages of the Boyars, and other great Men 304
—— beats the *Swedes* in *Livonia* 306
—— takes *Nottebourg ibid.*
—— and *Nieſchadtz* 307
—— builds *Peterſburgh* 308
—— takes *Narva* 311
—— made a Colonel 316
—— much diſpleaſed with the Behaviour of *Auguſtus* 319
—— writes to ſeveral Potentates complaining of him 321
—— goes to *Grodno* in *Lithuania* 324
—— his great Courage and Conduct in the Battle of *Lezno* 328
—— and in the Battle of *Pultowa* 330
—— receives a Deputation from the Grandees of *Poland*, to congratulate him on the Defeat of his Enemy 337
—— goes to meet the King of *Pruſſia* at *Marienwerder ibid.*
—— makes his publick Entry into *Moſcow* 338
—— receives publick Satisfaction from the Queen of *Great Britain*, for the Affront put upon his Ambaſſador at *London* 339
—— penetrates into the great Duchy of *Finland*, and lays Siege to *Wyburg* 340
—— becomes Maſter of the whole Province of *Livonia* 341
—— cauſes his Army to march into *Germany* 342
—— prepares for War with the *Turks* 343
—— makes great Preparations on the *Black Sea*, which were uſeleſs 346
—— takes a falſe Step in going into the Enemy's Country,

Country, where he is like to be utterly ruined, being ſhut up by the *Turkiſh* Army on the Side of the River *Pruth* 347
—— makes Peace with the *Turks* *ibid.*
—— goes to *Warſaw*, *Elbing*, and *Targau*, where is celebrated the Marriage of his Son the Czarewitz *Alexis* *ibid.*
—— goes into *Pomerania*, and has ſeveral Conferences with the King of *Poland* 348
—— confers with the King of *Pruſſia* at *Berlin* 349
—— goes into *Pomerania*, and to *Hanover* 350, 351
—— makes a Deſcent into *Finland*, and takes *Abo* 351
—— made a Rear-Admiral in his own Fleet, and obtains a Victory over the *Swedes* 353
—— made Vice-Admiral 354
—— ſets up a Preſs at *Moſcow*, and encourages Arts and Sciences 355
—— commands the united Fleets of four Nations 361
—— diſcontented with the High Allies, is ſuppoſed to have entered into the Projects of Baron *Gertz* 362
—— diſowns his having any Knowledge of them 363
—— goes to the *Hague* *ibid.*
—— to *France* 364
—— to the *Spaw* 365
—— to *Berlin* 366
—— arrives at *Peterſburgh* 367
—— proceeds againſt the Czarewitz, his Son, in a judicial Way 368
—— obliges him to renounce the Succeſſion *ibid.*
—— goes to ſee his Son in his laſt Minutes 371
—— cauſes a circular Letter to be ſent to all Miniſters abroad, giving ſome Account of the Czarewitz's Death *ibid.*
—— orders a new Communication to be cut between the Rivers *Wolkoſa* and *Neva* 374
—— is diſobliged by the Kings of *Great Britain*, and *Poland* *ibid.*
—— writes to the latter, complaining of his Ingratitude *ibid.*
—— finds himſelf deſerted by his Allies 376
—— makes a Deſcent in *Schonen* 377
—— baniſhes the Jeſuits 380
—— reſolves to make Peace for the Good of his People 383, 384
—— takes upon him the Title of Emperor 387
—— makes a triumphant Entry into *Moſcow* 388, 389
—— makes his People ſwear that they will acknowledge the Perſon he appoints for his Succeſſor 390
—— ſets out on his Expedition to *Perſia* 392
—— returns to *Moſcow* and *Peterſburgh* 394
—— crowns his Empreſs *Catharine* 397
—— betroths

——betroths his Daughter *Anna Petrowna*, to the Duke of *Holſtein* *ibid.*
——falls ſick, and dies 398
Peeciegians, or *Huns*, their Barbarity to *Swatoſlas*, Prince of *Ruſſia* 5
Pleſkow, a Province of *Ruſſia* 2, 5
——yielded to the Grand Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order 10
——retaken by Prince *Alexander* *ibid.*
——a Deſcription of that City 20
——the Citizens maſſacred in a barbarous Manner 54
Plettenberg, *Walter*, Grand General of *Livonia*, the great Victory he gained over the *Ruſſians* 19
——makes Peace with them for fifty Years 20
——obtains the Dominion of *Livonia*, from the Grand Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order 38
Poloczk, the Palatinate and Town 49
——ſurrendered to *John Baſilowitz* 50, 51
Pomerania, ſequeſtered into the Hands of the King of *Pruſſia* 351
Poniatowſki, Count, the *Swediſh* General, what the Grand Vizier ſaid to him, relating to *Charles* XII. 342
Potocky, the Palatine, at the Head of ten thouſand Men, joins the *Turks* and *Tartars* againſt *Peter* 344
——is obliged to return to *Turky* 345
Proſoroffſki, Governour of *Aſtracan*, deſtroyed by *Stenko Razin* 239
Pultowa beſieged 329
——the memorable Battle there 330

R.

Radzivil, *Nicholas*, Palatine of *Troki*, commands the *Lithuanian* Army 59
Radzivil, *Chriſtopher*, commands the *Poliſh* Army 90
——loſes a fair Opportunity of taking the Czar *John Baſilowitz* Priſoner, for want of good Spies *ibid.* 51
Razin, *Stenko*, a Chief of the *Coſſacks*, his Revolt againſt the Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz* 227
——his Depredations and Cruelty 228
——ſubmits to the Czar, and is pardoned 229
——his barbarous Uſage of a *Perſian* his Captive 230
——revolts again 231
——caſts the Governour of *Aſtracan* headlong from a Church Steeple 239
——pretends that the young Czarewitz, lately deceaſed, was alive, and with the Patriarch, accompanying him in his rebellious Expeditions 242
——forced to fly for Refuge to the Wilderneſs of *Steep* 246
——delivered up to the Czar *ibid.*
——put to Death 247

Riga, *Peter* comes thither 291
—— the Governour refuſes to ſhew him the Fortifications *ibid.*
—— *Peter* comes before it with his Army 338
—— capitulates 340
Romadonoſſki, the Vice-Czar, receives *Peter* on a Throne, and queſtions him concerning the Victory he had gained at Sea 353, 354
Romanoff, *Theodore Nikititz*, firſt Couſin to the Czar *Theodore*, deſigned by him for his Succeſſor 112
—— forced into a Convent *ibid.*
—— his Family at this Day on the Throne of *Ruſſia* *ibid.*
Roſcloff, *Athanaſius*, *Iwanowitz*, High Treaſurer, ſent Ambaſſador into *Poland*, by the Impoſtor *Demetrius* 131
Rurick, the firſt Prince of *Ruſſia* 2

S.

Samuelcrick, *John*, Hettman of the *Coſſacks*, depoſed 283
Sap-Girey, choſe King of *Caſan* 23
Schacoſki, the Knez *Gregory*, raiſes up a falſe *Demetrius* 152, 153
—— is thrown into Priſon, and dies 155
Scheale made King of *Caſan* by the Aſſiſtance of the Czar, whoſe Siſter he had married 23
—— is depoſed *ibid.*
Selim II. Emperor of the *Turks*, forms the Deſign of ſubduing all *Tartary* 61
Short-Sword, Knights thereof, their Original 8
—— joined to the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order *ibid.*
Sigalei, a *Tartar* Prince, who commanded the Czar's Army, commits all Acts of Cruelties in the Dioceſe of *Dorpt* 41
Sigiſmund Auguſtus, King of *Poland*, the Czar *Baſile Iwanowitz* declares War with him 20
—— *Maximilian* I. Emperor of *Germany*, makes an Alliance with *Ruſſia* againſt him 21, 22
—— the Grand Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order ſends to him to deſire Succours 39
—— deceives his Ally *Guſtavus Vaſa* 40
—— forms a Conſpiracy againſt the Czar 51
—— ſpirits up all the Enemies he can againſt the Czar 67
—— dies 69
Sigiſmund, the Son of *John*, King of *Sweden*, ſucceeds *Stephen Battori*, as King of *Poland* 104
Sinaus, one of the Brothers of *Rurick* 2
Sobieſki, *John*, Grand General, intruſted with the entire Command of the Crown Army of *Poland* 256
—— obtains a glorious Victory

tory over the *Turks* at *Cecbim* 257
——chosen King of *Poland* 260
Sophia, a Daughter of the Prince of *Moreu*, one of the Wives of *John Basilowitz*, the *Victorious* 16
Sophia, Half-Sister to *Peter*, gets the Administration of the Government into her own Hands 280
——conspires against the Life of her Brother 284
——confined in a Monastery, where she dies many Years after 285
Stephen, Weywode of *Moldavia*, his Daughter married to *John Basilowitz* the *Victorious* 17
Stolpe, the King of *Prussia* meets the Czar there 360
Strelitzes, what 280
——mutiny 281
——their Name abolished 299
Strechnew, *Lucyan*, his Daughter married to the Czar *Michael Theodorowitz* 178
——his Character 180
Swatoslas, the Son of *Igor* 4
——treacherously slain by the Prince of the *Peucingians* 5

T.

Tartars commit incredible Ravages in *Hungary* 9
——render the *Russian* Princes tributary to them *ibid.*
——*Alexander* endeavours to shake off their Yoke 10
——*Basile* I. succeeds partly therein 13
——*John Basilowitz* accomplishes it 15
——come again into *Russia*, and oblige the Czar to consent to pay them an annual Tribute 24
Teutonick Order becomes powerful by being united to the Knights of the *Short Sword* 18
——entirely defeat the *Russians* in *Livonia* *ibid.*
Theodore Iwanowitz succeeds his Father, *John Basilowitz*, the *Tyrant* 101
——his Coronation 103
——married to the Sister of the Knez *Boris Gudenow* *ibid.*
——renews the Truce with *Sweden* 104
——is alarmed at the very Name of a War 108
——dies 111
Theodore Borissowitz, made Czar 127
——his Character *ibid.*
——his Imprisonment and Death 130
Theodore Alexowitz comes to the Throne of *Russia* 269
——continues his Father's Designs upon the *Ukraine* with great Vigour *ibid.*
——recovers that Province 270
——sends to demand Succours from *Poland* 271
——which are deny'd him 272
——makes a Treaty with that Crown *ibid.*
——makes Peace with the *Turks* 276
——does

—— does several Things for the Benefit and Improvement of his Country *ibid.* 277
—— marries *ibid.*
—— dies 278
—— declares *Peter* his Successor *ibid.*
Timoska Ankudina, the Son of a Linen Draper of the City of *Wologda*, pretends to be the Son of the Czar *Zuski* 193
—— his Character 194
—— and Behaviour 195 to 201
—— endeavours to make himself away *ibid.*
—— put to the Torture 202
—— a second Time 203
—— executed 204
Timur-Beck or *Tamerlane*, defeats the Great Cham *Tochat-Mitch* 12
—— the Riches of his Camp 13
Tochat-Mitch, the Great Cham of *Tartary*, many Advantages gained over him, by the Great Duke *Demetrius Iwanowitz* 12
—— he marches against and gets the better of *Demetrius* *ibid.*
Toropiecz taken by the *Poles* 82
Touchi, several Princes of his Race in *Tartary* 12, 13
Trochanioton, *Peter Tichonowitz*, Brother-in-Law to *Morosou*, and one of the Instruments of his Oppressions 205
Truvor, one of the Brothers of *Rurick* 2

U.

Uglitz, the Principality thereof 13
—— *Basile Basilowitz*, banished thither *ibid.* 14
Ukraine, inhabited by the *Cossacks* 121
—— its Riches and Extent 122
—— the miserable Condition it was fallen into *ibid.* 123
—— the Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz* has an Army of an hundred and fifty thousand Men there 257
—— the *Turks*, by Treaty, surrender to *Poland* all that Part of this Province which lies West of the *Dnieper*, and reserve the Southern Part to themselves 270
—— the *Poles* give up their Pretensions to that Province to the *Russians* 282
—— *Charles* XII. in that Province 329
Utropoja, *Grischa*, a *Muscovite* Monk, said to be the Person who called himself *Demetrius* 119

W.

Waragi, or *Waragians*, a People so called, who gave the first Sovereigns to *Russia* 1
Waretskoi-Morie, a Country on the Coasts of the *Baltick-Sea* 1, 2
Wasilogorod, the Fortress built by *Basile Iwanowitz* 26

tory over the *Turks* at *Cochim* 257
—— choſen King of *Poland* 260
Sophia, a Daughter of the Prince of *Morea*, one of the Wives of *John Baſilowitz*, the *Victorious* 16
Sophia, Half-Siſter to *Peter*, gets the Adminiſtration of the Government into her own Hands 280
—— conſpires againſt the Life of her Brother 284
—— confined in a Monaſtery, where ſhe died many Years after 285
Stephen, Weywode of *Moldavia*, his Daughter married to *John Baſilowitz* the *Victorious* 17
Stolpe, the King of *Pruſſia* meets the Czar there 360
Strelitzes, what 280
—— mutiny 281
—— their Name aboliſhed 299
Streſchnew, *Lucojan*, his Daughter married to the Czar *Michael Theodorowitz* 178
—— his Character 180
Swatoſlas, the Son of *Igor* 4
—— treacherouſly ſlain by the Prince of the *Peucingians* 5
—— *Baſile* I. ſucceeds partly therein 13
—— *John Baſilowitz* accompliſhes it 15
—— come again into *Ruſſia*, and oblige the Czar to conſent to pay them an annual Tribute 24
Teutonick Order becomes powerful by being united to the Knights of the *Short Sword* 18
—— entirely defeat the *Ruſſians* in *Livonia* *ibid.*
Theodore Iwanowitz ſucceeds his Father, *John Baſilowitz*, the *Tyrant* 101
—— his Coronation 103
—— married to the Siſter of the Knez *Boris Gudenow* *ibid.*
—— renews the Truce with *Sweden* 104
—— is alarmed at the very Name of a War 108
—— dies 111
Theodore Boriſſowitz, made Czar 127
—— his Character *ibid.*
—— his Impriſonment and Death 130
Theodore Alexowitz comes to the Throne of
—— contri
Defe

T.

Tartars commit in
dible Ravages in
gary
—— render the
Princes tributa
—— *Alexande*
to ſhake

——does several Things for the Benefit and Improvement of his Country *ibid.* 277
——marries *ibid.*
——dies 278
——declares *Peter* his Successor *ibid.*
Timofey Andronow, the Son of a Linen Draper of the City of *Wologda*, pretends to be the Son of the Czar *Zuski* 193
——his Character 194
——and Behaviour 195 to 201
——endeavours to make himself away *ibid.*
——put to the Torture 202
——a second Time 203
——executed 204
Timur-Beck or *Tamerlane*, defeats the Great Cham *Tochat-Mitch* 12
——the Riches of his Camp 13
Tochat-Mitch, the Great Cham of *Tartary*, many Advantages gained over him, by the Great Duke *Demetrius Iwanowitz* 12
——he marches against and gets the better of *Demetrius* *ibid.*
T——by the *Poles*

U.

Ucraine, the Principality thereof 13
——*Basile Basilowitz*, banished thither *ibid.* 14
Ukraine, inhabited by the *Cossacks* 121
——its Riches and Extent 122
——the miserable Condition it was fallen into *ibid.* 123
——the Czar *Alexis Michaelowitz* has an Army of an hundred and fifty thousand Men there 237
——the *Turks*, by Treaty, surrender to *Poland* all that Part of this Province which lies West of the *Dnieper*, and reserve the Southern Part to themselves 239
——the *Poles* give up their Pretensions to this Province to the Russians 240
——*Charles XII.* in this Province 349
Utropja, *Geisa*, a Hungarian Monk, said to be the Person who called himself *Demetrius* 119

W.

Wenden, the States of *Livonia* assembled there 41
Willoughby, Sir *Hugh*, discovers that Part of *Greenland* called *Spitzberg* 35
—— his unfortunate End 36
Wiskow, *John*, Chancellor to the Czar *John Basilowitz*, put to Death 55
Wladislaus, Son of *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, chosen Czar 160
—— succeeds his Father *Sigismund* III. as King of *Poland* 185
—— concludes a Peace with the Czar *Michael Theodorowitz* 188
Wokbow, seven hundred Women and Children thrown into that River 53
Wolkosa, a Communication cut between that River and the *Neva* 374
Wolodimir I. the natural Son of *Swatoslas*, flies for Shelter from his Brother *Jewpalch* to the *Waragians* 5
—— obtains Succours, besieges his Brother in *Kiow*, and puts him to Death *ibid.*
—— becomes Master of all the Country possessed by his Father *ibid.* 6
—— gives himself up to a Life of Ease and Luxury *ibid.*
—— embraces Christianity, and is baptized by the Name of *Basile* *ibid.*
—— marries the Sister of the Emperor *Basile* *ibid.*
—— builds the City of *Wolodimir* *ibid.*
—— institutes the Feast of the Princess *Olha*, his Grand-Mother *ibid.*
—— dies, and is placed among the Number of the Saints *ibid.*
Wolodimir II. Son of *Wsewolode*, brings the State to the Subjection of one Prince again, and takes, as his Grand-Father had done, the Title of Monarch 7
Wotschoi, the People of *Ingria*, so called in the *Russian* Language 2
Wsewolode, one of the five Sons of *Jeroslaws*, rules in the Province of *Pereslaw* 7
Wsewolode II. succeeds his Father *Wolodimir* II. *ibid.*
Wybourg, besieged by the Czar 340
—— taken *ibid.*

Z.

Zalyscia, a Peace concluded there between *Russia* and *Poland* 93
Zana-beck, Cham of *Tartary* 11
Zatotski, General of the false *Demetrius* 128
Zawolocz taken by the *Poles* 82
Zemisces, *John*, Emperor of the East, would have married the Princess *Olha*, but is rejected by him 4
Zeretbinow, appointed Governour of *Astracan* 35
—— his Bravery against the *Turks* and *Tartars* 62, 63
Zuski, the Knez, stops the Conquests

INDEX.

Conquests of the false *Demetrius* . . 124
—— conspires against the Czar 132
—— is pardoned 133
—— enters into a second Conspiracy 138, 139
—— shoots the Czar *Demetrius* thro' the Head 144
—— chosen Czar 145
—— deposed, and dies of Grief 160

FINIS.



(60)
2V

L-65 151 G E 80



This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.

NEW BOOK
CANCELLED

WIDENER

WIDENER

WIDENER
BOOK D